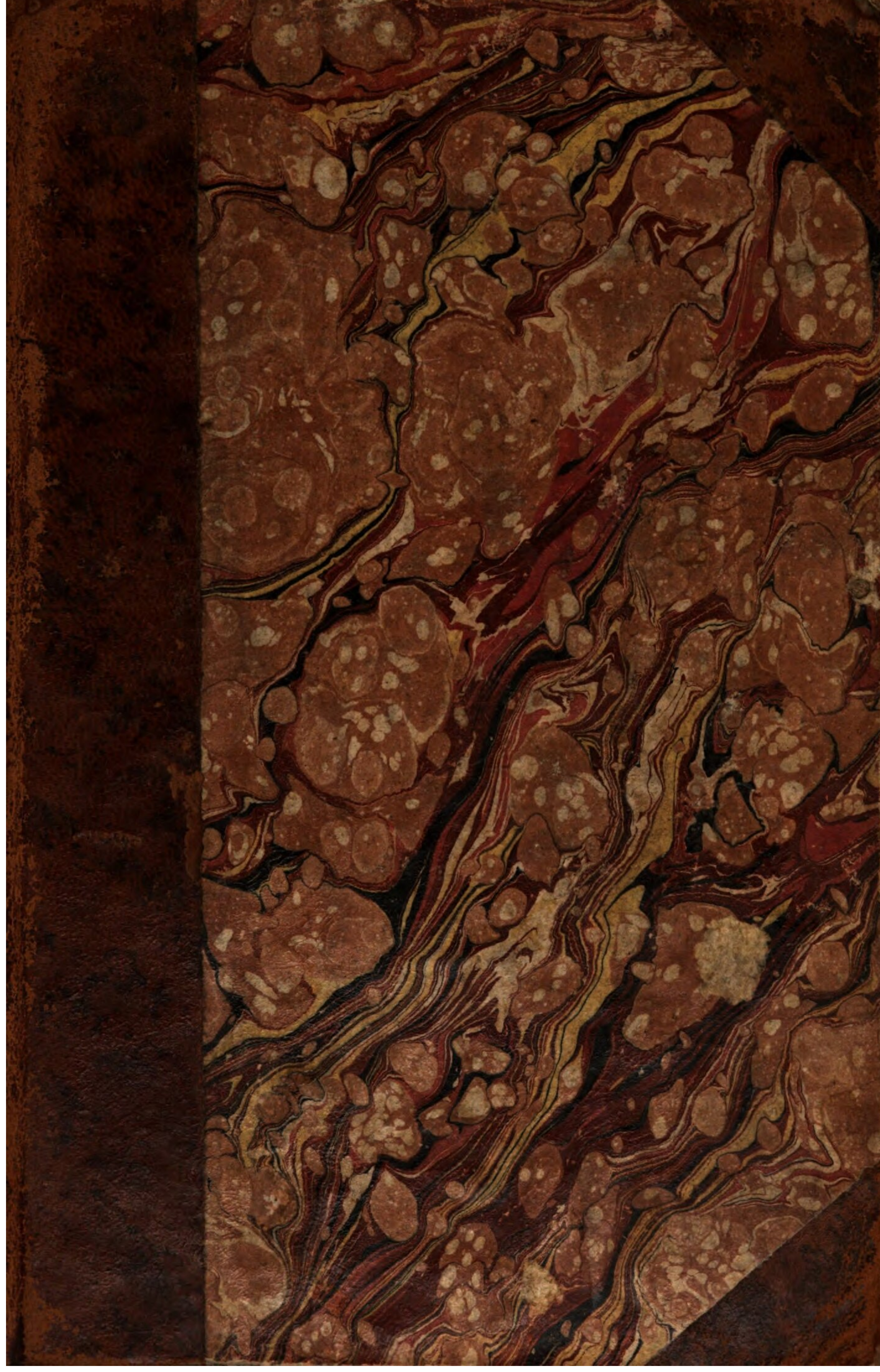




44

1069



<36606321600014

<36606321600014

X Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

CAPT. COOK
VOYAGE
IN THE YEARS

1776. 1777. 1778. 1779. 1780.

VOL. I.

copy

C
AN
AUTHENTIC
NARRATIVE
OF A
VOYAGE

PERFORMED BY
Captain COOK and Captain CLERKE,
IN HIS MAJESTY'S SHIPS

RESOLUTION AND DISCOVERY,
During the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779 and 1780;

IN SEARCH OF A
NORTH - WEST PASSAGE
Between the Continents of ASIA and AMERICA.

INCLUDING
A faithful Account of all their DISCOVERIES, and the
unfortunate Death of Captain COOK.

ILLUSTRATED WITH
A CHART.
VOL. I.

ALTENBURG,
Printed and sold by GOTTLIEB
EMANUEL RICHTER.
1788.

Go1/47/250



Bayerische
Stadtbibliothek
München



C O N T E N T S.
O F T H E
F I R S T V O L U M E.

C H A P. I.

The ships put in commission — fall down to Long Reach — proceed to Plymouth — the Resolution sails for the Cape of Good Hope — the Discovery follows some time after her arrival there — both ships leave the Cape, and proceed to the southward — discover Marions Isles — and the island of Desolation — proceedings there, and departure — some account of the island. I

C H A P. II.

The ships proceed to Van-Diemen's Land — arrival in Adventure Bay — meet with no good water — catch plenty of fish — parties sent to cut wood — some of the natives make their appearance — description of them — are frightened by the discharge of a musquet, and run into the woods — pay us another visit — a farther description of them, and of Adventure Bay. 9

CHAP.

C H A P. III.

Departure from Van-Diemen's Land—arrival at New Zealand—some of the natives venture along-side—appear suspicious and distrustful—the tents erected on shore—brew spruce beer—filthiness of the New Zealanders—Tiu-arrooa's attachment to Captain Cook and Omai—Kihoorah, the chief, who killed the unfortunate Mr. Rowe, visits the ships; is disliked by his countrymen—the Discovery drags her anchor in a squall—preparations for leaving New Zealand—Tiu-arrooa and another boy beg to accompany Omai—the mother of the former inconsolable—our departure. 15

C H A P. IV.

Pass through Cook's Straits—discover an island—affords a pleasing prospect—are seen by the natives—two of them come off in a canoe—the boats sent to look for a landing-place—but return without success—some account of the natives—leave the island—discover two more—the natives very readily come on board—description of them—the arrival of a chief—he enters into a league of friendship with us—our boats sent on shore, attended by a number of canoes—the king of the island sends Captain Clerke a pig and some coconuts—the return of the boats—are not able to land—the ships stand off and on for the night. 18

C H A P. V.

The boats again sent on shore—they return without any supply—the behaviour of the King—promises them provisions, but deceives them—Omai sends five of his countrymen—leave Watieu and proceed to the Small Island—procure a stock of grass for the cattle and some cocoa-nuts—arrive at Harvey's Island—description of the natives—are great thieves—the boats sent to open a trade with them—but return without success—Captain Cook determines to proceed to the Friendly Isles, by way of Palmerstones Isle—and bears away accordingly.

25

C H A P. VI.

Hot sultry weather, with thunder and lightning—arrive at Palmerston's Island—find no anchorage for the ships—the boats sent on shore—account of this island—inhabited by numerous flocks of birds—the reef affords excellent fish—particularly large eels—description of them—many sharks—find part of a canoe, and a piece of plank upon the beach—pass Savage island—and descry the Friendly Isles—anchor off Anamooka.

30

C H A P. VII.

Captain Cook's order relative to trade—the tents erected, and markets held on shore—the Discovery parts her small bower cable—the arrival of Feenow—the Discovery parts her best bower cable

cable—Captain Cook accompanies Feenow to Happi with the ships—receives great civilities there—is entertained with boxing and wrestling matches and dances—departs from Happi—the passage to Anamooka very dangerous—arrival of Powlahow—who proves to be the king—structures on Feenow's conduct—Powlahow visits the ships—Feenow arrives and pays him homage.

35

C H A P. VIII.

The ships leave Anamooka—the passage to Amsterdam dangerous on account of the rocks—arrival there—are informed that Malla-wagga is King—the Captains visit him—but are disappointed—Malla-wagga pays homage to Powlahow—the Captains accompany Powlahow to Moa, to be present at a ceremony called Anache—account of that ceremony—arrival at Middleburgh—departure for Otaheitee.

42

C H A P. IX.

Account of the Friendly Islands—produce—animals—description of the natives—dress—houses—food—cookery—amusements—manufactures—canoes—burial places—funeral ceremonies—form of government—weapons.

51

C H A P. X.

Leave the Friendly Isles—the Discovery carries away her main-top-mast in a squall—discover an island—
some

some of the natives put off—a short description of them and the island—continue our course to Otaheitee—and anchor in Ohitapeah harbour—receive intelligence of the Spaniards having been there—who had erected a house and cross on shore—leave three of their people there, and depart for Lima—they return, and after a short stay take away those they had left—and again depart for Lima—Orette, the friend of M. Bougainville, visits us—some account of the place—the Morai of Wyeatuah—ungenerous behaviour of the Spaniards respecting us—leave Ohitapeah, and arrive at Matava Bay—Otoo visits the captains. 72

C H A P. XI.

Omai finds his sister married—her husband's behaviour—he is led into temptations, and turned out of the ship—the natives very ingenious at fabricating stories—an instance of it—the people of Otaheitee engaged in a war with those of Imaio—the cause of that war—a human sacrifice is offered to the god of war by Tohaw—some description of the place of sacrifice—Tohaw and his friends Potatow and Tapaow, sail for Imaio—Otoo's behaviour—is threatened by Tohaw—we sail for Imaio—the natives steal two of our goats—arrive at Huaheine—lose one of our quadrants—the thief taken—threatens Omai, and is again confined but makes his escape—arrival at Uriatea—two of our people leave the ships—are at length taken

taken—leave Uriatea, and steer for Bora bora—
some account of the society of Arreois. 82

C H A P. XII.

Depart from the Society Isles—discover a low sandy
island—catch many fish and turtle—nearly lose
two of the Discovery's men—leave the island—
description of it—amazing flocks of birds—pro-
ceed to the northward—see more land—anchor
off A'toui, one of the Sandwich Isles—proceed-
ings there—the Resolution drags her anchor, and
stands out to sea—the king and queen visit Captain
Clerke—the Discovery sails—both ships anchor off
Oneehow, another off the Sandwich Isles—tran-
sactions there—some account of those islands. 89

C H A P. XIII.

We depart for the northward—fall in with the north-
west coast of America—trace the coast as well as
the wind and weather permit—are put to an allow-
ance of water—discover king George's Sound—
where we anchor—the natives visit us—account
of them, and of our transactions there—departure
from King George's Sound. 110

C H A P. XIV.

Account of King George's Sound—produce—animals
—inhabitants—temper—dress—houses—food—
cookery—manufactures—canoes—fishing-tackle
—weapons—language. 128

CHAP.

C H A P. XV.

Departure from King George's Sound—the Resolution springs a leak—experience much blowing weather—continue to trace the coast—Captain Cook goes on shore—we discover Sandwich Sound—and anchor there—some of the Americans make their appearance—description of them—weigh our anchors and stand on, but the weather proving bad, are at night obliged to let them go again—more of the natives visit us, but behave insolently—account of them—proceed through the Sound—some account of it.

138

C H A P. XVI.

Leave Sandwich Sound, and continue to trace the coast—discover the river Turnagain—transactions during our course up and down the river—occurrences during our run along the coast till our arrival in Providence Bay.

150

C H A P. XVII.

Transactions and occurrences at the island of Unalaska—we depart from thence, and continue to trace the coast.

171

C H A P. XVIII.

Transactions till our departure from the Tschutschil Nofs.

190

C H A P. XIX.

Direct our course to the American shore—fall in with the ice—numerous herds of sea-horses, or morse, upon it—see land, which Captain Cook denominates Icy Cape—trace the ice—discover the Asiatic continent, which we continue to trace till we again arrive at the Tschutschis Nofs. 205

C H A P. I.

On February 14th, 1776, the Resolution and Discovery were put in commission, and the pendants hoisted. After undergoing a thorough repair, &c. in the dry dock, they were moored along side the hulk, and continued in that situation, taking in the necessary stores, till the 12th of May, when the Discovery fell down to Gallions. Some days after the Resolution followed, and anchored in Long Reach, and the Discovery having received her gunner's stores on board, proceeded to the same place, and after a short stay, both vessels fell down to the Nore, where the Resolution remained. The Discovery had orders to make the best of her way to Plymouth, but contrary winds having obliged her to put into Portland, it was near a week before she arrived there.

About a fortnight after, the Resolution anchored in the Sound. From this time to July 12th, every body was assiduously employed in completing her stock, when, in the afternoon of the same day, she weighed, and made sail for the Cape of Good Hope. The Discovery was equally prepar-

ed for sea; but Captain Clerke's affairs detained him in town a considerable time after, and he did not arrive in Plymouth till the first of August.

In the afternoon she got up her anchor, and made sail likewise for the Cape. On the 7th in the morning, they saw Cape Finisterre, bearing S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant five or six leagues, and in the afternoon of the 13th saw Porto Santo, and the next day Madeira. On the 26th and 27th, passed the islands Sal, St. Nicholas, and Bonavista, and early the next morning stood in for Porto Praya bay, as Captain Clerke was not without hopes of finding the Resolution there.

They now soon lost the N. E. trade wind, it shifting to the S. W. but upon approaching the equinoctial, it gradually veered round to the S. E. September 24th, in the evening, the corporal of marines fell overboard and was drowned. October 31st, about two in the afternoon, they saw the appearance of land, which from its bearings, &c. they strongly suspected was the Table Hill, or some of the high land near it; but the next day a heavy gale of wind arose from the S. E. and continued to blow with great violence, till the 8th of November, when it became more moderate, and shifted to the S. W. The next morning, to their great joy, they saw the Table Hill bearing E. by S. and at 11 at night, having very light airs, anchored, but immediately after a heavy squall from the southward came on, and drove the Discovery, in spite of her anchor, towards Penguin Island, which circumstance obliged her to weigh

weigh it again and make fail. At one in the morning, having stood over to the S. E. side of the bay, she came to, and at six weighed; and with the assistance of her boats got safe in about nine, when she saluted the fort with thirteen guns, which was returned with an equal number, and the Resolution, overjoyed at seeing her long expected consort, saluted with nine guns.

The daily occurrences at the Cape were so little interesting and entertaining, being nothing more than refitting the ships, repairing the rigging, receiving on board stores and provisions, as not to require a relation of them; it therefore will be only necessary to say, that by the 30th of November, both vessels were ready for sea. The next day, December 1st, at five in the afternoon, we weighed and made sail; and having saluted the fort, stood out of Table Bay. When clear of the land, we steered a S. S. E. and S. E. course, it being Captain Cook's intention to ascertain the reality of some land to the southward, which was said to be discovered by Monsieur Kerguelen, and which he had in vain sought for in his last voyage. The French charts were unluckily incorrect, for the Resolution, in her tract, passed over the very spot where it was said to exist.

As we approached the southern parts, we by degrees found great alteration in the weather, which now became very cold, with thick fogs, rain, and strong gales of wind, and coughs and colds were general in both ships. On the 16th we descried land, which, upon a nearer view,

proved to be two small islands, affording at a distance a rocky, barren, and dreary prospect, and almost furrounded with fogs; the more lofty parts were covered with snow. Upon a nearer view, we saw a few trees upon the low ground, but they were thinly scattered.

These, which were called Prince Edward's Isles, with three or four others farther to the eastward, were first discovered by Monsieur Marion in 1774 and 1775. The eastern one lies in latitude 46 deg. 35 min. S. and longitude 37 deg. 51 min. east; the western one 46 deg. 54 min. S. latitude, and 37 deg. 39 min. E. longitude.

We passed between them, and continued our course, and on the 24th at four in the morning again saw land, which proved to be that we were in quest of. Our observed latitude at noon was 48 deg. 24 min. south, and longitude 68 deg. 30 min. east. At three in the afternoon, we discovered more land to the southward, which was a continuation of the former. We now directed our course immediately for it, and at eight in the evening anchored in a small bay, about half a mile from shore. The rocks were almost covered with penguins, and numbers of shags flew round us. Captain Cook immediately ordered out one of the boats, to see if they could discover a convenient watering-place, and to make likewise some observations upon the produce of the place. She returned about an hour after, and the officer who went in her informed the captain, that there was a secure harbour,
and

and that water might be procured from a fine stream with very little trouble. He farther told him, that there were numbers of seals, sea-bears, and penguins, and brought off several of the latter, as a proof of his assertion. This account induced the captain to stay a day or two; and early the next morning, the 25th, the anchors were weighed. The wind being directly against us, we were reduced to the necessity of standing some way out to sea, that we might have a greater scope to work to windward.

The Resolution succeeded very well; but the Discovery being a good way out, it became for a time almost calm, which prevented her from getting in till near three in the afternoon, when she dropped her anchor in twelve fathom water, the bottom muddy. When moored, the southernmost point of the harbour bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.; the N. E. point E. by S. and the head of the harbour N. W. by W. our distance from shore about a quarter of a mile. The entrance, and indeed the harbour itself being very narrow, we were obliged to tack every minute.

As this place afforded a retreat for seals and sea-bears, the captain determined to embrace the opportunity of supplying the ships with blubber, which we might afterwards convert to oil at our leisure. This plan we found of the greatest use to us in the course of our voyage, as our stock would otherwise have been quite exhausted.

The next day, the 26th, parties were sent out for this purpose, and in the space of five or

six hours had filled all the hogheads we could spare. Some of our men brought several of the hearts of these animals on board, and a few declared them to be nearly as good eating as that of a bullock; but, in fact, we had not as yet experienced hungry bellies enough to induce us to relish them. On the 27th, we celebrated Christmas day, when the sailors had double allowance of grog. The next day, 28th, we filled our water casks, and brought off a load or two of long coarse grass, which grew upon some low marshy ground at the head of the harbour, for our stock. Soon after all those animals which had eaten of it began to discover evident symptoms of pain and uneasiness, and some of their bodies became tense and swelled; in short, several of them died. Captain Cook, alarmed at this, ordered every particle to be thrown away, concluding that something poisonous had been brought on board with it; but upon investigating the matter more closely, it was found that our people had cut it upon a spot where a great number of penguins had been sitting, and that a considerable quantity of their dung had been included in it. This was immediately pronounced to be the cause of their death, and several similar instances were related of cattle in England dying in consequence of eating grass on which ducks and geese had dunged. On the morning of the 29th we got under way, and proceeded along the eastern coast of this island, which is moderately low and even, and affords to appearance several very good

good harbours. Upon the approach of evening, the commodore made the Discovery's signal to take the lead, and look out for a proper place to anchor in for the night, and such a one being found, we anchored in sixteen fathom, muddy bottom, about a quarter of a mile from shore.

In this day's run, we were not without our apprehensions; being obliged to pass through many extensive fields, if I may be allowed the expression, of sea weed, [*fucus gigartinus*, Lin.] and as they generally indicate a rocky neighbourhood, we were fearful of meeting with some of those dangerous obstructions.

The ships were no sooner secured than Captain Cook ordered out the pinnace, and went on shore on the eastern side; while the Discovery's small cutter, with the master, was sent to a small island to the westward, to take the bearings and distances of the different remarkable points of land. The seals and sea-bears were more numerous than at the last place, and some of them much larger. The next morning, the 30th, we weighed, and made sail, and after coasting some time, in order to ascertain the extent of the land, we stood to the eastward, shaping our course for Van-Diemen's Land.

This island was first discovered by Monsieur Kerguelen. Christmas-harbour, which was that part of it where we first landed, and which was so called in remembrance of Christmas-day, lies nearly in latitude 48 deg. 41 min. S., and in longitude 68 deg. 52 min. east. It is easily to

be known by a remarkable pierced rock on its eastern side, which is like the gateway of some old castle. The harbour is very secure, and is surrounded by high land. If we may judge of the general produce of this place, from what we saw of it at Christmas Harbour, it is certainly as rocky, barren, and desolate an island as can well be conceived, which induced Captain Cook to call it the Island of Desolation. It does not afford a single shrub, and is covered, in some few spots only, with moss and four or five species of plants, among which is one something resembling a cabbage in its appearance. Its inhabitants are seals, sea-bears, penguins [*alca cirrhata aptenodytes antarctica*], gulls, Port Egmont hens [*larus cataractes*], quaker birds [*procellaria aquila*] petrels [*procellaria capensis, vittata*], terns, shags, ducks, and a white bird about the size of a grouse, which we called a snow bird. Its beak is strong and black, with a hollow protuberance at the base, something like that of a petrel; it has four toes; its feet are of a flesh colour. At the base of the wing is a black, hard, round knob, which projects about a quarter of an inch; its eyes are surrounded with a kind of membrane which appears as if corrugated, and is also of a flesh-colour.

We found this a well flavoured bird, which circumstance, with the great plenty of ducks and shags, induced our sportsmen to be out pretty often, but at last they became shy, and almost

almost quitted the spot. The eastern part of this island affords the same barren aspect as Christmas Harbour, and in short the whole is an assemblage of huge rocky matter, only calculated for the residence of such half-formed animals as seals and sea-bears. The thermometer was from 34 to 36, and once 50 degrees.

C H A P. II.

Our course from the Island of Desolation, was nearly E. by N. and E. N. E. The weather after a few days run, became more moderate and warm, the thermometer rising to 50, and 55. The wind proved tolerably steady, though now and then a squall used us rather roughly, in one of which the Resolution carried away her fore-top-mast and main-top-gallant-mast. We continued standing on, in daily expectation of seeing the land, and on January 23d, 1777, were by our observations within a few leagues of it; but the weather being hazy, we saw nothing till the next day, Friday 24th, in the morning, when we descried part of New Holland, bearing N. by W. distant about nine leagues. We traced the coast, passing Storm Bay and the Fluted Cape, till the 27th, and at two in the afternoon the Discovery anchored in Adventure Bay in 13 fathom of water, sandy bottom. The Resolution at this time was in the offing, and did not arrive till past four. The bearings on board the Disco-

very when moored, were as follows: Penguin Island N. 74 E. distant a mile and half; Cape Frederick Henry N. 25 E. and the watering place N. 77 W. distant from the nearest shore about a mile.

Soon after, the Commodore went on shore to fix upon a proper place for erecting the Astronomers Tents, and likewise to look for a convenient spot for wooding and watering. In the two former he succeeded very well, but in the latter, by no means to his mind, every run of water, at least every one that would have suited our purpose, proving brackish. Our people on board were also employed in catching fish, with which this Bay abounds, particularly very large rays, which afforded them excellent sport, and a variety of other fish. The next morning, 28th, parties were sent out to wood and water, and as fish were so plentiful, another gang of hands were dispatched to haul the seal. Several of the gentlemen likewise made excursions into the woods in search of game. We observed from the ships many smokes in different parts, and some at no great distance, but saw none of the natives till the evening, when about 20 of them came to the wooding place, and several others to our watering party. They were entirely naked, and some had a kind of bludgeon in their hands, about three feet long, which, upon their approaching our wooders, they threw down, and made signs for them to lay aside their hatchets, etc. which was complied with. They then

then came near, and examined our saws, and other different tools; but what surprised them most, was our cloathing, which they at first thought was part of our body. They were below the middle size, of a dark brown colour, and not ill made.— The party with our waterers paid a deal of attention to what they were employed about, and examined the casks with some nicety; but the boat, which lay at some little distance from the shore, attracted their notice more particularly, and some of them got hold of the rope, and were hauling it on shore. The officer who attended, made signs for them to desist; but they disregarding him, he fired a musquet over their heads, which sudden and unexpected noise so alarmed them, that every soul, as well those who were with the wooders as waterers, clapped their hands upon their heads, and ran off with the greatest expedition. Our fishermen were very lucky, and brought off a variety of fish, amongst which were some of the largest rays we ever saw, and a very uncommon looking fish, which we called an elephant-fish [*chimaera callorhynchus*, Lin.] The shooting party were not so fortunate: birds of all kinds were very shy, particularly the shags and ducks.

Early the next morning, 29th, our parties were employed on shore, as before; but the water proving very bad, upon trial, the Commodore thought it most prudent to relinquish his scheme of staying there any longer, and accordingly

ingly gave orders for every thing to be brought on board. Whilst our people were employed in getting off the astronomers tents, and various other matters, the natives again paid us a visit. We now had a better opportunity of making our remarks than before.

Their colour, as has been before observed, was dark brown: their hair, which was short and woolly, and beard were formed into small distinct lumps, with a mixture of reddish brown earth, and some kind of liquid, which appeared to be of an oily nature: this mode of dressing their hair gave them an uncommon appearance. The man who seemed to be the principal among them, had his face entirely painted with this composition. Their teeth were in general bad, their noses flat, lips thick, foreheads low, but their eyes were dark brown and lively. Their arms and breasts were marked with lines running in various directions, but totally different from any we had ever seen before, the flesh being elevated or raised up as it were in little ridges. Round the necks of some of them was a kind of cord, about the thickness of our whip-cord, very strong, and twisted in the same manner as our's, consisting of three smaller cords. They were rather averse to parting with these. Their women were very plain; their heads shaved quite close, except a very narrow circle of hair, which quite surrounded it. Some of them had the skin of some animal thrown over the shoulders, and fastened before, which seemed to be merely for the
the

the convenience of carrying their children, two or three of which they had with them. Those who had no children, were without this, or any other covering. They readily accepted of every thing that was offered them, but set no particular value upon any thing. Their language was entirely new to us, and they seemed to speak very fast. When any thing pleased them, they always expressed their satisfaction by a shout. Having got all our things to the boats, we took leave of our new friends, and departed for the ships.

We weighed our anchors the next morning, 30th, and stood out of the Bay. At noon Penguin Isle bore S. E. distant a mile and half, and Cape Frederick Henry N. by W.

Adventure Bay, so called last Voyage by Captain Furneaux of the Adventure, lies in lat. 43 deg. 14 min. S. and long. 147 deg. 28 min. E.

The land surrounding it is moderately high, and covered with variety of trees to the very top. They are in general tall and straight; some afford an agreeable spice, and others abound with gums. The under-wood is so thick as almost to render travelling impracticable in the valleys; between the hills are fine lagoons, where are found shags and ducks, but very shy and not plentiful: this circumstance induced us to believe that the natives frequently molest them. In all our excursions, we saw not one tree that had the least appearance of supplying the inhabitants with food, so that in all probability they are reduced

reduced to the necessity of principally living upon what shell-fish they can collect from the rocks. We saw the remains of two or three old huts, or rather sheds, in and round which were scattered muscle and cockle shells in abundance, but not the least appearance of any thing else. Nor did we see any thing like a boat or canoe; so that in fact they seem to be nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego.

The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, which agrees in many respects with Mr. Pennant's description of the Surinam opossum, and from the particular conformation of its hind feet, viz. the first and second toes closely united, it probably may be the same species.

The birds are various, though not numerous, and some of them very beautiful, particularly a species of paroquet, and a small bird of the motacilla genus, with a bright blue head, which we, on that account, called motacilla cyanea.

Among a variety of fish, we observed, the atherina hepsetus, and a new species of ostracion, only one of which was caught. The soil is in general good; we planted potatoes, kidney-beans, peach and apricot stones, which possibly may succeed very well.

C H A P. III.

From Adventure Bay we pursued an E. N. E. course. February 4th, Tuesday, early in the morning, one of the Discovery's marines fell over board, and was drowned. On Monday the 10th, in the afternoon, we saw the Coast of New Zealand, the extremes bearing from E. to S. by E. and on Wednesday the 12th, both ships anchored in Ship Cove, Charlotte Sound. When moored, the N. point of the Cove bore N. 42 E. the S. E. point S. 35 E. and the N. part of Moutuara Island N. 61 E.

The ships were scarcely secured before we observed several canoes of the natives crossing from the Hippa to the opposite shore, along which they paddled, and stopped at some distance to reconnoitre us: but at length they came nearer, and exposed something white in their hands, which they waved backwards and forwards. This we supposed to be in token of peace, and of course answered it immediately; they then came along side the ships, though not without evident signs of suspicion and distrust. We purchased a fish or two, and a few other trifles, and they soon after departed. The head of one of these canoes was curiously ornamented with carved open work.

The next day, Thursday 13th, the tents were sent on shore, with the cooper, and all the empty casks, the astronomers tents, and parties to wood and water. Coppers were also fixed
up

up on shore, to boil the blubber we had collected at the Island of Desolation, while the remaining hands on board repaired the rigging, and performed the necessary duty of the ships. As we had now met with but little refreshment since our departure from the Cape, Capt. Cook, ever attentive to the health of his ships companies, proposed brewing a kind of beer, from a tree which bore some resemblance to the spruce fir, the good effects of which he had experienced in his former voyage. Other coppers were therefore fixed for that purpose. On Tuesday the 18th, the beer was served out, and found to be so pleasant and salutary, and so generally approved of by all parties, that the Commodore determined to carry as much of it to sea as he could. The oil party on shore were constantly attended by many of the natives, who received the scum and pieces of blubber that remained after boiling with the greatest thankfulness; and indeed you could not oblige a New Zealander more than to give him the oil out of the ships lamps, which he would swallow with all the greediness imaginable. Of those who were the most constantly on board, a young lad called Tiu-arrooa was the principal; he was possessed of good-nature, and had a great share of sense and discernment. He was greatly attached to Captain Cook and Omai, and was constantly with one or the other. His father was late chief of the district in which our ships lay, and was killed, with several others, about six weeks before our arrival, by a strong party

party of another district, who attacked them in the night. Tiu-arrooa and a few others escaped with the greatest difficulty.

A few days before our departure, Kihoorah, the chief who headed the party that cut off the unfortunate Mr. Rowe, paid us a visit. At first he was very shy, and would not venture on board, fearful no doubt that we should revenge the death of our people upon him; but when he found we took no notice of it, he laid aside that diffidence, and readily came to the ships.—He was much disliked by his own people, who frequently desired us to shoot him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in pretty severe terms.

On the 20th, Thursday, we had very heavy squalls of wind, in consequence of which the Discovery drove, and was obliged to let go her sheet-anchor, and both vessels struck yards and top-masts.

The natives all this time supplied us plentifully with fish, among which was the elephant-fish, but one in particular, which they called a mogee, was not inferior to a salmon. We also frequently procured very excellent lobsters.

Captain Cook having given orders for striking the tents, &c. and preparing for sea, on the 23d. every thing was put on board. Tiu-arrooa and another lad having expressed a desire to continue with Omai, were permitted by the captain to accompany him. The mother of the former came on board, and with tears entreated

him to remain behind, telling him, among many other powerful arguments, that we should kill and eat him; but he was too resolute and firm to pay any attention to her persuasions, and the poor woman went on shore quite inconsolable.

The next morning, Monday 24th, at nine, we weighed and made sail, but having very light winds, we were obliged at noon to anchor again in nine fathom, muddy bottom, Point Jackson bearing north, Cape Koamaroo E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. and the Hippah, S. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

At eight the next day, Tuesday 25th, we again got up our anchor, and made sail, standing through Cook's Straits. At noon, Cape Terra-wittee bore S. E. by S. Cape Koamaroo W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and some rocks called the Brothers, from W. by S. to N. W. by W. our observed latitude being 41 deg. 6 min. S.

So much has already been said of the natives, with their manners, customs, houses, furniture, canoes, &c. &c. that, as we can make no improvement, a repetition would be both tedious and useless.

C H A P. IV.

We continued in Cook's Straits the best part of Wednesday, February 26th. At noon, Cape Terra-wittee bore N. W. by W. and Cape Palliser E. by N. distant about four leagues. — From this time to the 17th of March, Monday, we continued

tinued nearly a N. E. coast. At noon our observed latitude was 33 deg. and 23 min. S. In the afternoon we passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was surrounded with barnacles. Early in the morning of the 29th, Saturday, being in lat. 22 deg. 11 min. south, and longitude 201 deg. 50 min. east, we passed several pieces of wood and rock-weed: several man of war birds were observed; and a bird, something like a cuckow, flew round the ships. These being indications of the proximity of land, we kept a good look-out, but upon examining our charts, we found none laid down nearer than the Society Isles.

At nine the next morning, Sunday 30th, we discovered land bearing about N. E. The Discovery being a-head, made the signal, which was answered by the Resolution. The winds soon after proving light, and being some distance from the land, night came on before we could distinguish objects clearly; so got our tacks on board, and stood off and on till morning, Monday 31st, when we made all sail for the land. At four we were running along the south side, at about the distance of four miles, which as the sun was just rising, afforded a most pleasing prospect. The interior parts rose in moderately high hills, upon the tops of which were trees of various kinds. The sides next the sea were very woody, and we could plainly distinguish cocoa-nut and plantain trees in abundance. — Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw

many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the help of our glasses, found that some had large clubs upon their shoulders, and that others were armed with long spears. As we proceeded, the Indians followed us, shouting and hallooing, their number increasing very fast. Soon after two of them put off in a canoe, the only one we saw, and came within fifty or sixty yards of the ships, but would not venture nearer, though we made all the friendly signs we could think of, and shewed them beads, hatchets, looking-glasses, and many other articles of Indian trade. Their complexion appeared to be of the dark olive cast, their hair was fastened on the top of their heads something in the New Zealand fashion: one of them had a large pearl oyster-shell suspended from his neck, and something round his middle; the other was naked. — The canoe was neatly made, and furnished with an out-rigger; the stern was high for so small a boat, and terminated in a kind of fork.

Captain Cook finding the little probability there was of opening an intercourse with the natives in this manner, ordered the pinnace and small cutter to be got out, which, with the large cutter of the *Discovery*, and proper officers on board each, with trade of various kinds, were sent in shore, to see if there was a possibility of landing, and to endeavour to purchase something from the inhabitants. During their absence, we founded several times, but got no ground at forty fathom. About three hours after, they returned,

returned, and the information we received was, that the island, at least this part of it, was surrounded with a reef of coral rock, upon which a heavy surf was continually breaking; so that it was totally impracticable to land without destroying the boats, and endangering the lives of those who were in them. About a quarter of a mile from the reef, they found ground at twenty-one fathom.

During their cruise, they had an opportunity of making a few remarks upon the natives, many of whom swam to them from the shore. They were stout and well made, but all armed; so that it was more than probable they would have opposed us, if we had succeeded so far as to have landed upon the reef. Some of them were armed with pata-patows, like those of the New Zealanders; and their language resembled, in many respects, that of Otaheitee. They quite disregarded hatchets and nails, but were much pleased with looking-glasses: like all other Indians they were given to thieving, and one of them very artfully stole a bunch of beads out of one of the boats, with which he swam off. Our people could not procure a single cocoa-nut, nor would they part with any thing they had. The shore appeared very delightful, the trees being lofty and shady, and the air was absolutely perfumed with the scents of various flowers.

We were much chagrined at our bad success for several reasons, but more particularly on account of our live stock, which were almost in

a starving condition. Finding that nothing more could be done, at noon we made sail, standing to the northward, the extremes of the isle bearing N. E. by E. and S. by E.

The next day, Tuesday, April 1st, at noon, land was again discovered, bearing N. by E. The Discovery, being near three miles a-head of the Resolution, made the signal. At four in the afternoon, it bore from N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. to N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. distant about seven leagues; we stood off and on for the night, and at daybreak, Wednesday 2d, it bore N. E. about four leagues. It appeared to be an island nearly of the same extent as the former. At five the Resolution hoisted the Discovery's signal to make sail a-head to the N. E. and at seven we saw another small isle bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At noon tacked, the small isle bearing E. and the body of the large one S. E. by E. our latitude being 19 deg. 47 min. south, and longitude 202 deg. 12 min. east. All the afternoon we were making the best of our way for the large island, but being obliged to work to windward, night came on before we could reach it, so of course stood off and on till morning. During the night we saw several fires on shore; and the next day, at five in the morning, the Discovery made all sail for the island, in consequence of a signal from the Resolution.

As the ships were standing in, many of the natives put off, some in single, others in double canoes; the single have seldom room enough to contain more than one person, the double ones will

will hold eight or ten. They soon paddled along side, and with very little persuasion came on board, their size was above the middle standard, and they were stout well-made people, with fine open countenances; their colour of the olive cast, with a mixture of brown. Their hair was black; in some long, in others short, and wore in a variety of forms, just as convenience or fancy directed. None had more than a narrow piece of cloth round their middle, which was painted or dyed of different patterns, with red, black, and yellow. Several were marked or tatowed most curiously from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs. They were very friendly and good-natured, and ran about the ship with as little ceremony, and appeared as perfectly at ease, as if they had been long used to them. In this interval Captain Cook ordered out the pinnace and large cutter, and sent them on board the Discovery, with Mr. Gore the first lieutenant, and Omai, to learn if there was a possibility of anchoring, and if any refreshments could be procured from the natives, for, as she was much nearer the shore than the Resolution, of course all the canoes came to her. Soon after their arrival, a double canoe, paddled by eight people, with a tall stout man standing up in her, came along-side; he, without any ceremony, came on board with a branch of a cocoanut tree in his hand, and several roots of the a'wa [*piper methysticum Forsteri*] a species of pepper, with which they intoxicate themselves.

Omai accosted him in the Otaheitee language, which appeared to vary but little from his own. It seems the intention of this visit, was to establish peace on both sides, after the ratification of which, we were to be supplied with hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, and in short every thing the island produced. After the ceremony, not one word of which we understood, was over, and every article agreed to by the chief on his part, and by Omai on our's, the Resolution's boats, in one of which the Aree went, attended by the Discovery's large cutter, and a number of canoes, proceeded to the shore. At noon our observed latitude was 19 deg. 59 min. S. In the afternoon, the King of the island sent Captain Clerke a present of some cocoa-nuts, and a young pig, who liberally rewarded the bearers with some nails, a large piece of scarlet cloth, and some hatchets.

In the evening the boats returned, with the disagreeable news of not being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, nor even a landing-place for a boat; this part of the island being surrounded by a reef, upon which a continual surf was breaking.

This information damped our spirits a good deal, for we were all elate with hope, and had already anticipated the pleasure and satisfaction we should experience, in the many good things the island produced; especially as the natives were full as desirous of our landing as we could possibly be ourselves.

We

We were determined however not to give up the point in this manner, but to make another trial; and since it was impossible to effect a landing in our boats, those who were to go upon this expedition were to land in the canoes of the natives, who from long experience are very dextrous at this kind of work. Having thus settled our plan, we stood off and on for the night.

C H A P. V.

The next morning, April 3d, at nine the Resolution's pinnace and cutter, in the former of which were Mr. Gore the first lieutenant, the surgeon, and Omai, attended by the Discovery's large cutter, were sent on shore. The natives came to the ships, bringing cocoa-nuts, plantains, and the intoxicating pepper root, but no hogs, which would have been the most welcome sight; we gave them in return knives, red cloth, and nails. At seven in the evening the boats returned, but without either hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, or any thing else.

The account we received was, that they had with great difficulty got on shore in the Indian canoes; as soon as they were landed, the natives led them in great form to the King, who behaved rather reserved upon the occasion: upon informing him that we were in great want of provisions, he said that we should have hogs and other things,

but as they were at a distance up the country, it would be some time before his people could get them. They waited a considerable time, but none appearing, they again requested that some might be brought, or at least some bread-fruit, plantains, or cocoa-nuts. They were desired to stop a little longer, which they did till it became rather late, and they deemed it prudent to get on board as soon as they could. The inhabitants would at first scarce permit them to go, but seeing them resolutely bent on departing, they at last acquiesced, having taken from them almost every thing they could find, and glad were our gentlemen to escape so cheap, as they were apprehensive of being detained on shore much against their inclinations. One circumstance was very remarkable; which was, Omai's finding five of his countrymen upon this island. The account they gave was, that in passing from one island to another they were drove out to sea, and after beating up and down for several days and nights, and suffering almost the extremes of hunger, thirst, and fatigue, they at last fell in with this island; the inhabitants of which not only very humanely afforded them protection, but likewise gave them wives; and, in short, that they were now looked upon as natives of the place. This affair, according to Omai, happened near ten years ago.

Both the men and women were clothed much in the Otaheitee manner; they were armed with spears and clubs, the latter being curiously carved.

The

The Indian name of this island is Watieu, that of the smaller one Modu-ete. During the night we stood off and on, and the next morning, April 4th, shaped our course for the small isle, purposing to try if we should be more fortunate in our attempts at that place than at the former.

At ten, the boats from both ships were dispatched on shore, not for the purpose of procuring provisions, for the island was uninhabited, but to cut grass &c. for our live stock, the providing for which was the principal object. After they had well loaded the boats, they were to bring cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, plaintains, &c. if the place produced them; in which case such a number of nails, hatchets, &c. were to be left, as were thought a sufficient recompence for them. Our observed latitude to-day was 19 d. 47 min. S.

At half past six in the evening, the boats returned with a plentiful stock of grass and many cocoa-nuts, which were the only fruit they could find. The latter were divided amongst the ships companies, and the former afforded a most welcome repast to our cattle, which were reduced almost to the last extremity. Our people saw the remains of two or three old huts, which had possibly been erected there by those who came from Watieu for the purpose of fishing.

This island is also surrounded with a reef, which rendered landing rather difficult. It is very small, being not more than a mile and half in length, and is situated about ten miles from Watieu.

At

At eight in the evening we hoisted in the boats, and bore away for Harvey's Island, which Captain Cook discovered during his last voyage. The next day, April 5th, the ships companies were put to two-thirds allowance of every species of provision except grog. Soon after day-light the next morning, April 6th, we saw Harvey's Island, bearing W. S. W. At ten, we had very light airs, and the Discovery got too near the Resolution, and was obliged to get out her large cutter to tow her clear. Soon after we saw several Indians putting off in their canoes; at first they kept aloof, as if to reconnoitre, but at last ventured along-side. Their appearance was altogether wretched, and very different from the inhabitants of the tropical isles in general. Their hair was black and shaggy, they were very dirty, and had only a very small strip of cloth round their middle.

They wanted every thing they saw, and one of them was handing the oars out of the Discovery's cutter, which was along-side. These we were not willing to part with, and of course opposed him, which enraged the fellow so much, that he caught up his paddle and struck one of our people over the head with it. Some of them finding a piece of beef towing over board to freshen, very dexterously divided the rope, made off with the beef, and afterwards sold it on board the Resolution for some nails. In the afternoon, the boats were sent in shore, well manned and armed, to try if a trade could be opened with the natives.

They

They returned in about two hours, with only a few cocoa-nuts, the inhabitants being more disposed to commit hostilities than to traffic. This island, we found during our run along shore, was two separate ones, which circumstance, with its being inhabited, were unknown before.

Captain Cook now finding it impracticable to reach Otaheitee in any reasonable time, as the wind continued so far to the eastward, and it being absolutely necessary to procure food for the cattle, gave up all thoughts of it for the present, especially as the season was too far advanced to stop any time at the Society Isles, and then proceed to the northward. He therefore determined to make the best of his way to the Friendly Isles, and ordered the *Discovery*, which was the best sailing ship, to keep two miles a-head, pursuing a W. S. W. course: and as Palmerston's Island was in our way, he proposed stopping there a day or two, and taking in a fresh supply of grass and cocoa-nuts; a sufficient quantity of which, especially of the former, he hoped to procure to last to the Friendly Isles. At five in the afternoon we bore away, and at six the body of Hervey's Island bore E. by N. distant about three leagues.

C H A P. VI.

From the seventh to the twelfth, we had very light airs and calms: the weather was hot and sultry, the thermometer standing at 83, and 84. We had also much thunder and lightning, attended with frequent squalls and heavy showers of rain. The latter proved very acceptable to us, as we collected several hogheads, and though it was strongly impregnated with the flavour of the tar, which it had contracted from the rigging, still in our present situation it was much too valuable to be lost.

On Sunday, April 13th, at six in the morning we saw Palmerston's Island bearing W. At noon our observed latitude was $18^{\circ} 6' S.$ and longitude $197^{\circ} 23' E.$ when it bore W. by N. distant about five leagues. In the course of the day, we had light variable winds, and during the night stood off and on. In the morning, April 14th, at four, the land bore W. between three and four leagues distant. At eight, boats from both ships were sent to sound, but returned in the afternoon, having found no proper anchorage, but had discovered a kind of inlet or break in the reef, where the boats might land with safety.

Our first care the next day, April 15th, was to cut grass for the stock, which were in a most piteous condition, nor did we think of engaging in any other business till we had got a sufficient quantity to maintain them till our arrival at the Friendly Isles. After this the people were employed

employed in gathering cocoa-nuts, which were distributed to the ship's company. The grass and nuts being brought on board, we, on Friday evening, April 17th, bore away, steering a westerly course.

Palmerston's Island lies in latitude $18^{\circ} 4' S.$ and $196^{\circ} 40' E.$ longitude; it was discovered and thus called by Captain Cook in his last voyage. It consists of an extensive reef, which is nearly seven leagues in circumference: upon different parts of this reef, rises a small patch of land, of which there are in all nine. The largest is not more than a mile and half in circumference; some of them not 150 yards. Within the reef is a lagoon, which, as far as we saw, had no connection with the sea: it appeared to be in some places between two and three fathom deep.

The produce of this place consists principally of cocoa-nuts, and very fine scurvy grass. The only inhabitants we saw were rats, lizards, man of war and tropic birds, boobies, noddies, and a few curlews. The tropic and man of war birds were so numerous, that the trees were absolutely loaded with them, and at the same time so tame as to suffer themselves to be taken off the boughs; a convincing proof that they are never molested by any human beings.

The reef affords shelter for variety of excellent fish, particularly a large eel, which we found most excellent eating. This fish is very ugly in its appearance, which is sufficient to create horror and disgust; and had it not been for Omai, who

who told us it was very fine, it is more than probable that we should have remained ignorant of its goodness. The idea which it would first strike one with, is that of a large snake; its length is between four and five feet, and spotted or variegated with brown and black; in circumference it is about ten or twelve inches; the head is small and rather flat, with small fiery eyes; the part immediately behind the head is as it were swelled or puffed up to a considerable size; the mouth is wide and well armed with small but very sharp teeth. There are likewise an incredible number of skarks continually lurking about the reef, which, though small, are very ravenous. None of our boats could pass or repass to the ships, without twelve or fourteen of these gentry after them, so that if any of our people had been unfortunate enough to fall over board, they must inevitably have been devoured.

Upon the beach we found the remains of a canoe, and a piece of plank, which appeared, to have composed part of an European vessel. Some distance from these was another piece of wood, rudely carved, which, from the figures upon it, Omai said, had once belonged to a burying-place of some islands in these seas.

We passed Savage Island, so denominated last voyage on account of the ferocity of its inhabitants, on the 23d instant at midnight, when it bore from W. by S. to N. W. by N. Our weather was in general cloudy and squally, with thunder, lightning, and heavy rain. On Monday evening,

evening, April 28th, being, according to our reckoning, not far from the eastermost of the Friendly Isles, we passed the night in standing to the northward and southward. The next day, 29th, at nine in the morning, we descried the eastern range of those islands from the mast-head. At noon they bore from N. W. by N. to W. by N. our distance from the nearest being about four miles.

At four, we had no less than fifteen islands in sight, the largest of which, called by the natives Anamooka, by us Rotterdam, bore N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At six the Resolution made the signal for casting anchor, and half an hour after both ships came to; Three Hill Island, a small isle with three elevations upon it, bearing N. W. by N. The night was very squally, with thunder and lightning.

April 30th, in the morning, at six, we weighed, and made sail, shaping our course for Anamooka, as well as variable winds would permit. At nine, many of the natives put off in their canoes, and came along side, without any hesitation or appearance of fear, and totally unarmed. This confidence which they reposed in us, was, we thought, a proof, and a convincing one too, of a peaceable and friendly disposition, and the name by which these islands are distinguished, viz. Friendly, is well applied. We purchased of them, for all their canoes were freighted with some good thing or other, coconuts, fowls, bread-fruit, and yams, for which

we baid beads, nails, knives, and small pieces of red cloth. At noon the weather became so thick and hazy with hard rain, that we were not able to distinguish the land, and all the afternoon and night we were employed in standing off and on, not being able to find an anchoring place.

The next day, May 1st, at noon, Anamooka bore E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. about four miles distant. At six in the afternoon we anchored in forty-seven fathom, sandy bottom, the north point of Anamooka bearing E. N. E. distant five miles. At daylight, Friday 2^d, we got up our anchor, and made sail. Numbers of the natives came off to us, and we soon purchased a sufficient quantity of hogs, yams, plantains, fowls, &c. &c. for the ship's company, and bid adieu to every species of ship's provision except grog. At noon the extremes of Anamooka bore S. E. by S. and S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant from the nearest shore three miles. At four in the afternoon, both vessels anchored, and soon after were moored a cable each way, the best bower of the Discovery being in seventeen fathom, the small bower in twenty-seven fathom, her distance from the reef about three cables length.

C H A P. VII.

As soon as the ships were secured, Captain Cook issued an order to prohibit all trade, except for necessaries, which was read to the ships companies. The substance of it was, that there should be a person appointed from both ships to hold a market with the natives on shore, for such provisions as the island produced.

That two other persons should likewise be appointed to trade on board; and that none other should presume to purchase or buy, without leave of the captain, or, in his absence, that of the commanding officer.

That no curiosities should be bought till the ships had procured a sufficient stock of refreshment; after which a general trade would be opened, and every one at liberty to purchase what he thought proper.

The next day, May 3d, the astronomers tents, instruments, &c. were got on shore, together with the coopers, the empty casks, &c. and the marines. The chief of the island furnished us with a large hut for our reception on shore, in the front of which the market was held; a line was drawn between the natives and us, at some distance from the hut, to prevent their crowding too near, and none of them were permitted to come within it. We were abundantly supplied with hogs, fowls, yams, plantains, breadfruit, and cocoa-nuts, and in short fared sumptuously every day.

On the fourth, a party of men were sent to cut wood, as the island apparently afforded plenty of that article: amongst other trees they unluckily cut down several of the manchineel, the juice of which getting into their eyes, rendered them blind for several days. In the afternoon, the Discovery's small bower cable parted, having been divided by the rocks; the stream-anchor was directly carried out to steady the ship to the westward, but the ebb tide run so strongly to the eastward, that they were obliged to postpone it till slack water, which was near twelve at night. Most of the boats and people were employed the next morning in sweeping for the anchor, which was too valuable an article to be lost; they did not succeed however till the afternoon, when they purchased it by the buoy-rope. The cable was cut about twenty-eight fathoms from the anchor.

In the course of this day we were visited by a chief, whose name the natives told us was Feenow; this man came from the island of Tongataboo or Amsterdam; he had a numerous retinue, who baid him great respect. One of them, who appeared to be a principal man, made a long oration, in the course of which he gave us to understand, that Feenow was Aghe-lahee, or king of Anamooka, and all the surrounding isles, of which he enumerated near a hundred. There were likewise seven or eight fine handsome girls with him, which we were told were his wives.

Having, before the arrival of this chief, lost several things from the ships, which we could
impute

impute to no one but the Indians, the Captain complained to him of the thefts, and begged that he would exert his authority, and get them restored: Feenow promised to do it, and in the course of the day they were returned. The bottom where the Discovery lay being very rocky and uneven, Captain Clerke determined to shift it farther to the westward. The next day, May 7th, he gave orders to weigh the stream-anchor, and heave short upon the best bower; but the united force of the whole ship's company was not able to purchase it, the cable having got foul of a rock; they waited till slack water, when the ship would tend to the ebb tide, and probably clear it, but at eleven the cable parted. The recovery of this anchor caused an infinite deal of trouble, as it had got in a hole between the rocks, and could only be seen when the water was perfectly smooth; but at last, after a number of unsuccessful trials, they were lucky enough to weigh it. Feenow had for some days past been very desirous that Captain Cook should accompany him to some islands, which he said were about two days sail from Anamooka; these islands he called Happi, which in the language of these people signifies a cluster. As this bid fair for a new discovery, the Captain very readily accepted his invitation.

On Wednesday morning, May 14th, we weighed, and made sail, and after a troublesome and dangerous passage, occasioned by the number of rocks and shoals through which we were partly

obliged to pass, arrived at Happi on the 17th. We here experienced a repetition of those civilities from Feenow, which we found at Anamooka: every thing was conducted with the greatest regularity and decorum, and, in short, nothing was wanting to render our stay as agreeable as possible.

He entertained us with boxing and wrestling matches, and variety of dances both by men and women; which exceeded every thing of the kind that was ever seen before. An idea cannot be conveyed by words, for their attitudes were so various and different from any other dances, and at the same time so regular and exact, that the whole company, which consisted of thirty or forty people, seemed to be actuated by one soul.

Feenow having given a specimen of what his countrymen could do, desired Captain Cook to entertain him with something in our way. The next day, May 20th, the marines from both ships were sent on shore to perform their exercise, which however did not appear to strike him with any very great surprize. Probably he was conscious of his superiority over us in that particular; at least if he was not, most of us were. However, lest he should think us a parcel of poor creatures altogether, a number of fireworks were let off in the evening, which seemed to turn the balance in our favour.

On the 29th, we weighed our anchors, and made sail. Sunday, June 1st, in the evening,
it

it being very squally, wet, and dark, the Resolution made the signal of danger, having got too near the breakers, upon a reef of coral rock, which almost surrounded us, but fortunately she soon cleared them. On the 2d, at one in the afternoon, the weather became so squally, that Capt. Cook thought it prudent to cast anchor, for we were enclosed on every side with rocks and shoals, and the violence of the wind prevented us from seeing in what direction to proceed: we accordingly dropped our best bowers in forty-three fathom water, with a sandy bottom, and took in our top-gallant-yards.

This disagreeable weather continued till the 4th, during which time we underwent a good deal of anxiety; for our situation was truly alarming, as we must unavoidably have gone upon the rocks if our cables had parted. Having got up our anchors, we again made sail, and on the 6th, at three in the afternoon, anchored off Anamooka, about three quarters of a mile from shore.

One of Captain Cook's reasons for stopping here a second time, was to look at some melons and cucumbers, the seeds of which he had planted soon after our arrival in May; but to his great regret they were in a very poor state, having been nearly destroyed by vermin.

The day after our second arrival here, we were informed that another great man from Tonga-Taboo, or Amsterdam, was arrived, whose name was Fatafee-Powlahow. This gentleman

soon after came on board; he was above the middle size, exceeding fat, and appeared to be about forty. His attendants were numerous, and there was not one of them but told us that this man was the real king of Tonga-Taboo, Anamooka, Happi, and in short all the islands which we before supposed Feenow king of. This strange account surprised us a good deal, as every body had taken it for granted that Feenow was sovereign, every mark of respect and submission being paid him; and how to account for the usurpation, if such it was, of this man, was a circumstance we could not readily succeed in.

Feenow had gone the day before our departure from Happi, to a neighbouring island called Va-vow, from which he was to return at the end of three days, with a large stock of red feathers and various other things. The time elapsed, but no Feenow appeared. This circumstance, though it did not strike us then, appeared against him now with double force, and gave us great reason to suppose, that our old friend had really assumed a title to which he had no right, and that in fact he was absent for no other reason, but to avoid an interview with Powlahow, in the course of which all his consequence must fall to the ground.

Powlahow, during his stay on board, paid great attention to the different parts of the ship, and, amongst other questions, asked us what we came to these islands for? He said, we appeared to be in want of nothing, and that we all looked well and healthy. A question of this kind came
so

so unsuspected, that at first the Captain was at a loss what reply to make; but recollecting himself, he told him he came there by the order of his King, who was a great and mighty prince, and was desirous of entering into a league of friendship with him; that there was a large stock of hatches, knives, beads, red cloth, &c. on board, which he would barter with him for hogs, and such articles as the island produced. This answer satisfied him very well; and, at the desire of the Captain, he went down with him into the great cabin, where he received a present suitable to his rank, and then went on board his canoe very much pleased.

The next morning Feenow arrived, and in the presence of some of our gentlemen, who by chance were with Powlahow, acknowledged him as his superior, and paid him the homage of a subject, but with a countenance so expressive of shame, that every one who saw him felt for and pitied him. Feenow's conduct was however natural enough; for most people are anxious to appear greater than they really are, especially if they are likely to gain any thing by it, which most probably was the case with him; and in this respect it answered his purpose very well, for he received many presents on that account, which otherwise would not have been given him. We found however, that though he was not king, he was one of the principal men, and generalissimo of the king's forces, and upon all occasions led them out to battle.

C H A P. VIII.

In the afternoon we got up our anchors and made sail, attended by Powlahow and Feenow, in their canoes, which went at a great rate, and a number of smaller ones. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grafs, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe in the same manner as our ensign staffs.

We found this passage a most troublesome and dangerous one; we could clearly perceive the bottom, which was one continued bed of coral, throughout the time, and here and there a rock towering its head above the rest. The Discovery did fall foul of one, and had we not the advantage of smooth water and a steady breeze, in all probability we might have run upon more of them.

On the 9th, at eleven in the morning, the Resolution let go her anchor, as did the Discovery soon after, but still surrounded in a manner by rocks. Amsterdam, or Tonga-Taboo, then bore S. 75 W. but at a good distance. The boats were soon after sent away to look for a more secure place for the ships, and having found one, we removed to it, and at five anchored for the night, in about eight fathom, sandy bottom. The next morning, June 10th, we weighed and stood for Amsterdam, and in the afternoon both ships let go their anchors in a fine secure harbour, our
depth

depth of water being ten fathom, with a black sandy bottom; our distance from the shore about half a mile.

The next day, June 11th, the tents and observatories were got on shore, and the gunner of each ship appointed to trade with the natives. The market was held in a pleasant spot of ground, surrounded with trees, and in the front of one of Powlahow's houses, adjoining to which the ships tents were pitched. Every article of trade was in the greatest plenty except bread-fruit; the season for which was then over; but the want of this was amply supplied by yams and tarrow. The cattle likewise were sent on shore, as they had been at Anamooka.

In the course of the day we were informed that a very old man, whose name was Mallawagga, was the real King of all these islands, but being overwhelmed by the infirmities of age, he was unable to hold the reins of government, which were therefore turned over to Powlahow. This circumstance appeared very strange to us, no less than three people having been pointed out to us as king; but as this was the case, the Captains thought it necessary to pay their respects to him, and informed Powlahow of their intentions, who readily agreed to accompany them. In the morning Captains Cook and Clerke, attended by Omai, Powlahow, and some of the officers, set off by water, having a man with them to act as pilot, for his residence, which was at a part of the island Moa, and about six miles distant.

Upon

Upon their arrival, they were received by a large concourse of people, who expressed the greatest satisfaction at seeing them. After walking a few paces, Powlahow went into a plantation, attended by an old woman, and put on a very fine garment and a kind of large mat, after which they all went to a pleasant green, surrounded by tall majestic trees: on one side was a spacious house, where the Captains seated themselves. Powlahow sitting under the hedge of a plantation.

After waiting some time, in constant expectation of being introduced to his majesty, and not seeing any probability of its being done, Powlahow was asked the reason of the delay: he told them that Malla-wagga was gone down to the ships. The gentlemen were not perfectly pleased with this intelligence, after having been at the trouble of going so far, in an exceeding hot day; however, finding his majesty was not visible, they made the best of it, and returned to the boats.

Moa is a most pleasant spot, and much superior to that part of the island where our tents were erected, which probably is the reason why the king and nobility reside there.

The houses are all very good, and in general large, some of them being between fifty and sixty feet in length, sixteen or eighteen feet wide, and lofty enough to admit of an upper floor. The wood-work is good, and lashed or tied together with line of different colours, so disposed as to form diamonds and various other figures.

They

They are all well thatched, and will not admit a drop of rain; the bottoms or floor are covered with mats.

Upon the return of the Captains to the ships, they found that no Malla-wagga had been there; a piece of information which perplexed them a good deal, being totally unable to account for Powlahow's behaviour. The next morning Feenow came on board, and told us he was going for the old man; they both returned the following day. As soon as his majesty came on board, he saw Powlahow, who chanced to be there, and, to the surprize of us all, paid him homage, by bowing and touching his feet.

This extraordinary circumstance puzzled us all, not a person in either ship being able to unravel the mystery. What could induce Powlahow himself to carry the Captains to see the old man as king, when he must be conscious that he really was not, is certainly very strange.

Malla-wagga is the father of Feenow and Tubou, the latter a man of great power and consequence in the island, and Powlahow's father, whose name was Fatafee Powlahow, is dead, and it is by no means clear that Malla-wagga could ever have been king. He has been generalissimo, a post which his son Feenow now possesses, as has been mentioned before. These mistakes however must arise from our imperfect knowledge of their language, which is the only clue to guide us to the truth. We also received another piece of intelligence; which was, that Powlahow's
aunt,

aunt, by the father's side, was nominally queen of all the islands, to whom he himself paid homage, as well as to a son and daughter of her's by a man of Fidgi, an island about five days sail from Amsterdam; and that during her life they also were superior to him in point of rank, but upon her death all their consequence ceases. Both son and daughter are disordered in their senses; the name of the former is Latoo-labooloo. Malla-wagga is a very old man, apparently not less than seventy, and is at times quite childish: he was much better pleased with a few beads than with hatchets or nails.

Having expressed a desire of seeing our method of fighting, an account of which he had probably heard from his son Feenow, Captain Cook ordered all the marines on shore for that purpose. In return for this piece of complaisance, we were entertained with some capital heivahs or entertainments, in which all the principal people assisted, especially Tubow, who was one of the first rate performers.

July 8th, the Captains and some other gentlemen were invited by Powlahow to be present at a ceremony, which he called Anache, the meaning of which we could not clearly comprehend, but it seems to be, the people swearing allegiance to his son, and possibly is always observed when the child arrives at a certain age. Before this ceremony he was never suffered to eat with his father, but afterwards will always sit at table with him.

The

The company arrived at Moa, the place mentioned before, about eight in the morning, and found Powlahow, with about fifty of his nobles about him, drinking a'wa. Going a little farther, they observed a great number of people assembled, and sitting on each side the road of a spacious green surrounded with lofty trees; they immediately called out Taboo, and desired the Captains, &c. to sit down and pull off their hats.

In one place sat six or seven agees or chiefs singing, and by them were lying several sticks, with a small yam tied to each. After continuing their song for some time, two of them took one of the above sticks with a yam, and carried it between them upon their shoulders, followed by five or six others with clubs and spears: this was repeated by a like number of people several times. The yams were deposited under a large spreading tree on a green, facing a burial-place; after which all the agees, except three or four, went away.

They being gone also, a man came carrying a pigeon on a stick, but it was not left under the tree with the yams. Here a pause ensued, and the gentlemen asking if the ceremony was over, were told no, but that Taboo would come presently, during which time they could not be upon the spot, but might retire behind the fence of a plantation not far off, through which they might look and see the whole. Omai being of their own complexion, and dressing himself in their manner was readily admitted, and Captain Cook being

being desirous of seeing the whole, was with much difficulty suffered to be present, though not till he had stripped himself from his waist upwards.

At four in the afternoon the other gentlemen were conducted to the fence of the plantation, and on looking through, saw a number of people assembled together under the same tree the yams were left in the morning. Soon after came the prince, a fine boy about twelve years old, attended by three agees, and followed by fifteen couple of women, each couple carrying a long slip of white cloth. The prince then seated himself on the green with his attendants, as did the women, who delivered the cloth, and then rose up and seated themselves at a distance. Immediately after this, several men came with each his cocoa-nut branch and large stick, and in the space of three minutes made a commodious little house, to which the prince withdrew with the agees who attended him. After that came Powlahow attended by two men, and sat down at a small distance from the house. A short pause ensued, when upon something being said by a man who appeared to be master of the ceremonies, several of the people who were seated ran off, and after a short stay returned. Then two men came, with each a green bough in his hand, made their obeisance to the prince, and for a few minutes sat before him. That done, the agees with the yams came in by pairs, laid them down at his feet, and seated themselves round him; when
the

the man, mentioned before as master of the ceremonies, made a speech, and was answered by different people, seemingly in the affirmative. The harangue continued about a quarter of an hour, after which all the people dispersed, and thus ended the ceremony for the day.

The next day it was repeated with some little variation; for they presented him with fish of different kinds and a'wa; and besides the women's bringing cloth, some of the men laid mats before him, which with the cloth were wrapped round him, so that by the time the whole was over, he had more things upon him than he could move under. The whole concluded with entertainments of boxing, wrestling, dancing, &c.

This ceremony seemed to be an allegorical or figurative acknowledgement of the obedience of the people to their prince. The yams which were brought probably implied, that they would always supply him with whatever was necessary for the support of life, as good subjects ought to do. The cloth brought by the women, which is their peculiar manufacture, might have nearly the same meaning, and so of the fish and a'wa. The substance of the speech might be to inform the people, that the prince was arrived at such an age, and to know if they would acknowledge him as king after the death of his father, to which it is likely they gave an answer in the affirmative.

July 10th, Captain Cook presented Powla-how with a bull and cow, a sow and boar, and

two ducks. To Feenow, he gave a horse and mare, and to Malla-wagga a ram and two ewes; but the old gentlemen paid so little attention to them, that the captain ordered them to be brought on board again.

On the morning of the 11th, both the ships weighed, and made sail, and were employed till six at night in turning to the eastward, between two reefs not more than a quarter of a mile asunder.

At seven we anchored, but having fresh gales and squally weather, the Discovery drove off the bank, and was obliged to weigh her anchor, and make sail: she continued working to windward till one the next morning, and then anchored again. During the night we had fresh gales; at nine in the morning, July 12th, we got in the boats; and at eleven weighed our anchors. We continued turning to the eastward till the 13th, when we came to, off the west side of Middleburgh, and soon after we moored ship; when the N. W. part of Middleburgh bore N. 26 E; a small island N. 13 W. the east part of Amsterdam N. 30 W. and the S. part N. 78 W. our distance from shore three quarters of a mile.

Soon after we had secured the ships, a double canoe arrived from Amsterdam, probably with instructions to the people at what rate to sell their various articles, and to inform them of the prices we had given. The following day the gunners were sent on shore as usual to trade, and found abundance of every thing, particularly shaddocks, with

with which this island abounds. The natives treated us with civility, but not in the same degree as at the other islands. We staid here till the 17th instant, when the ships being ready for sea, and every thing got on board, we weighed our anchors, and made sail, shaping our course for Otaheitee, having some live hogs on board, a number of yams, and some casks of corned pork.

C H A P. IX.

Many particulars have already been related of these islands, in the course of the last voyage; but as our stay among them this time was of a much longer duration, of course we had a greater scope for observations. But much remains for future navigators; the most perfect account we can produce is at best but a confused piece of work, and what little we can relate is in general confined to a few common articles, such as the dress, food, and manufactures of the natives; every thing beyond being little more than conjecture. It is from the form of government, laws, manners, customs, and religion of a people, that we are to derive amusement and instruction: and as the only road to obtain this, is by a knowledge of the language of the country, every account that can be given must of course fall far short of the truth, till that knowledge is acquired.

Anamooka, or Rotterdam, lies in lat. 20 deg. 14 min. S. it is almost surrounded by a reef of coral rock, and affords no good harbour. The soil is rich and fertile, except when you approach the shore, where it becomes sandy: it is of a very moderate elevation, and is well clothed with trees of various kinds, but affords but little good water, on which account the natives are obliged to go inland for what they use in cooking.

Our watering place was nearly a quarter of a mile from the beach, and was in fact nothing more than a standing pool, in which the natives bathed themselves; the water was both thick and muddy, and not very palatable, but we found no bad effects from the use of it.

The Happi islands lay in about a S. W. direction from Anamooka; Lefoogo, which is the name of that, off which the ships anchored, is in latitude 19 deg. 46 min. S. and longitude 185 deg. 10 min. E. They are all, at least all we saw, low, flat islands of small dimensions, and afford but little water: most of them are well covered with trees, which prove the soil to be good.

Tonga-taboo, or Amsterdam, is in lat. 21 deg. 8 min. S. and 185 deg. 8 min. E. longitude. It is the largest that we saw of the Friendly Isles, and is low and flat, without the least elevation. Water here also is a scarce article, so much so that we were obliged to dig a well upon a small island about three miles from the ships; but after all it proved brackish and unpalatable.

Middle-

Middleburg, or Eaoowe, is to the northward of Amsterdam, in lat. 21 deg. 21 min. S. This island is by far the most pleasant of the whole, and is interspersed with lawns, hills, and dales, as beautiful as can be conceived. The soil upon the hills is nearly of the colour of red oker, that in the vallies black and rich. It affords fine water, but not convenient for the use of ships, being too far inland.

The islands of Va-vow and Fidgi we never saw; but by the account of the natives they are both high land, and plentifully supplied with water.

The foundation of all these islands, is a solid bed of coral rock, the points of which project even upon the tops of the hills in some places. The inland parts are but thinly inhabited, the natives preferring those which are nearest the sea for the convenience of launching their canoes. This however must not be taken in a general sense, for some of the chiefs have their houses a considerable distance from the shore.

The houses do not form towns or villages, but are built about five hundred yards or more from each other, and generally in the midst of a plantation, the whole of which is frequently fenced in with a hedge of bamboo, or reeds with a door-way; and sometimes a man's whole estate is inclosed in this manner.

These islands are populous, but we cannot pretend to ascertain the number of inhabitants. Their produce is breadfruit, plantains, bananas,

cocoa-nuts, yams, tarrow, a kind of sweet potatoe of a yellow colour, a fruit resembling an apple, which we never saw ripe, sugar cane, a nut [*inocarpus edulis*, Forst. *Novae Spec. Plant.*] which eats much like a chesnut, particularly when roasted, and very fine shaddocks. The latter were very plentiful at Middleburgh; at Anamooka they were scarce, but at Amsterdam there were none. They have also many trees in common with the Society Isles; such as the toa-tree [*casuarina equisetifolia*, Forst.] the Chinese paper mulberry-tree, the candle-tree [*aleurites triloba*, Forst.] the *Barringtonia speciosa*, the *athrodactylis spinosa*, and several others.

Their tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry, they have likewise rats, and a very large species of bat [*vespertilio vampyrus*, *Linnaei*.] Lizards are very numerous, particularly about the houses, and a large green lizard something like a guano, but smaller. The natives never destroy either of these, but suffer them to run about unmolested; and when any of our people through wantonness killed any of them, which frequently was the case, they always expressed their disapprobation, by telling us it was very bad. Their birds are ducks, herons both white and grey, kingfishers, rails, doves and pigeons, parroquets, cuckows, and a very small species of martin. The sea affords variety of fish, but they did not appear to be a very great article of food, at least during our stay.

Both

Both the green and hawk's-bill turtle are found here, and must be rather plentiful, if we may judge from the quantity of tortoise-shell which they exposed to sale. There are variety of shell-fish, and some of the most beautiful little crabs that can be conceived.

The people of both sexes are tall, well made, and exactly proportioned. We did not see one instance of deformity amongst them. The men are in general above the middle size, but now and then you meet with one below that standard; the women are tall in proportion, and rather masculine. Their complexion is dark olive, but in those who are exposed to the effects of the weather it is much darker, while those whose superior station in life entitles them to a greater degree of indulgence, are considerably lighter. The natives of Fidgi of both sexes are greatly darker than any of the other islanders, their complexion nearly approaching to black.

Their features are generally good; their eyes bright and lively, their nose somewhat flat, their mouth and lips well proportioned, the former not being too wide, nor the latter too thick, and their teeth as white as ivory.

Their hair is originally black, but both men and women have a method of dressing it with lime and other materials, which render it of various colours, brown, yellow, white, &c. We once saw an old man whose hair was of the deepest carrotty colour.

Long hair is a mark of distinction, and none are permitted to wear it but the principal people. The agee girls and women let it hang in ringlets down to their waists, and the men likewise wear it in the same form. This is the only place where we saw shaving in fashion, for the men, particularly the agees, are very anxious to free themselves from their beards. This is performed with two shells whose outward surface is rather rough, and by rubbing the edges together, at the same time inclosing the beard between the shells, they cut it tolerably close. This operation however is rather painful and tedious, and observing how expeditious and clean we performed it, they were desirous of trying it also; and it so far exceeded their expectations that scarce a day passed without plenty of customers.

They have a custom of anointing their heads, necks, and bosoms, with an oil which they call monoi; it is squeezed from the kernel of the cocoa-nut, and afterwards perfumed very highly with various sweet-scented flowers and herbs.

Both men and women are marked or tattooed; the former from the short ribs to the knee, and sometimes lower, the latter upon the inside of the hand. Some of these marks seem to be to distinguish the different tribes to which they belong, the other possibly are for ornament. The instruments used upon this occasion are nearly the same as at Otaheitee.

Their cloathing consists of mats of different degrees of fineness, and cloth made of the Chinese

nese paper mulberry-tree. Both men and women dress much alike. The better sort always wear a great deal more than their inferiors: their dress consists of one large piece of cloth wrapped several times round their middle, and tied with a sash or girdle of the same kind; the upper part is plaited or folded, so that it may be pulled up to the shoulders if necessary, the bottom part reaches below the calf. Over this they put a fine mat, similar to what the natives of Otaheitee call *pooerou*. They wear no covering upon their feet or legs. Round their necks they frequently put a kind of ruff or necklace of flowers, or leaves of various kinds which are generally chosen for their fragrance or colour: these ornaments they call *cau-colla*. Rings of tortoise-shell are very generally worn both by men and women.

The houses of these people are of various sizes and dimensions, according to the wealth and degree of the possessor. The roof, which is elevated upon six or eight posts, is well thatched, either with the branches of the cocoa-nut tree, or with those of the palm-tree. Some are open all round, but the major part are inclosed on one side. The richer kind of people build their houses in the midst of their plantations, which are sometimes of considerable extent, and surrounded with a fence of bamboo. To these you enter by a door tied to a post with a cord made of the braided fibres of the cocoa-nut; this opens and shuts as if hung upon hinges. The floor is always covered with mats, upon which

they sit in the day, and sleep in the night. Their furniture is not considerable; it consists of a large wooden dish, in which they mix their a'wa; baskets of different sorts and sizes, in which they put their combs, fishhooks, and tools; two or three stools, which they use as pillows, a bundle or two of cloth, and frequently a tame pigeon upon a stick.

As these islands produce the same articles of food as the Society Isles, of course there can be no great variation in their manner of living. Bread-fruit, yams, plantains, and tarrow, generally constitute their meals; for though they have hogs and fowls, they are only eaten upon particular occasions. Their method of cooking them is the same as at Otaheitee. Sometimes they dress a few fish; these they boil in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water. Having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon a number of stones made hot for that purpose, till they are done sufficiently. They then take out the fish, and pour the soup into little cups made of the green plantain leaf, of which every one in company has one, and as they eat the fish, they drink a little of the soup, till both are expended. They are not very nice in cleaning the fish, but eat bones, guts, and scales all together.

Their drink is water or cocoa-nut milk, in general: but the better sort of people always take a draught of awa before they eat; we never saw

saw them use it at any other time, and, even then, they are far more moderate than the people of Otaheitee, and make it in a much cleaner manner.

There is a law or custom here, which forbids, at particular times, a person of inferior rank to eat in the presence of his superiors, and even Powlahow is not exempt from it; for upon the unexpected appearance of those two before mentioned people, whilst he has been eating, he has immediately desisted, and put the victuals on one side, apparently a good deal confused.

They rise as soon as it is light, and the first thing they do, is to wash themselves in the sea, and afterwards in fresh water, which they collect in small wells or pits dug for that purpose. After this they sit down to their breakfast, which, as has been before observed, generally consists of bread-fruit, yams, or plantains: this ended, every one amuses himself as he thinks proper. If there is any business going forward, that of course becomes the object: if not, they sit and discourse of indifferent things.

As the heat of the day comes on, they for the most part sleep. Their first meal being so early, they generally eat again about eleven, and in the afternoon about four. At eight in the evening, or as soon as it becomes dark, they sup, and soon after retire to rest.

Their amusements are dancing, wrestling, singing, and boxing at all which they are very expert. The dances of the women are generally
if

if not always in the evening, and by torch-light. Upon this occasion they are always well dressed: their heads are decorated with wreaths, composed of a plant something like ivy; round their waist they wear an elegant piece of cloth, and over it a broad fringe of plantain leaves. The whole of this dress is very becoming, and sets off their persons, which are naturally good, to the greatest advantage. Their movements are very regular, and they keep excellent time to their music, which consists of pieces of bamboo of various lengths, cut off at one of the joints. These the men, who perform the instrumental part, hold in their hands, and strike one end against the ground; this emits a hollow sound, deep in proportion to its length. One man likewise holds in one hand a piece of bamboo about three feet long, and with the other strikes it with a small piece of stick, keeping time with the other men; this music is far from being disagreeable. The musicians sit together, forming a small circle, and the women dance round them, and their attitudes and motions are beyond description.

The men very rarely intermix in the women's dances, though we once saw Polahow in the midst of them, and, notwithstanding his corpulency, he kept as good time as the best of them. The dances of the men differ very little from those of the women; but in their grand heivahs they sometimes perform together.

The musicians in this case are more numerous, and most of them sing, but not all in the same key,

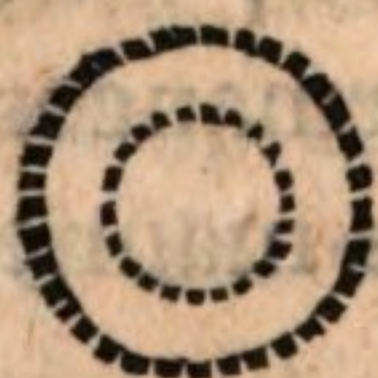
key, for they have different parts, as we have of treble, bass, tenor, &c.; and the harmony which arises when the music and singing are joined is very pleasing. Besides the bamboo they have a kind of drum, formed out of the hollowed trunk of a tree, upon which they strike with wooden drumsticks: this, strange as it may appear, adds much to the agreeableness of the whole.

Their grand heivahs seem to be divided into different acts: they first begin with a dance of the men, which continues near a quarter of an hour; and when finished, another large party of performers come in, and divide themselves into two companies, not forming a circle as in the dances, but a line, with the music in front, something like this:



Performers.

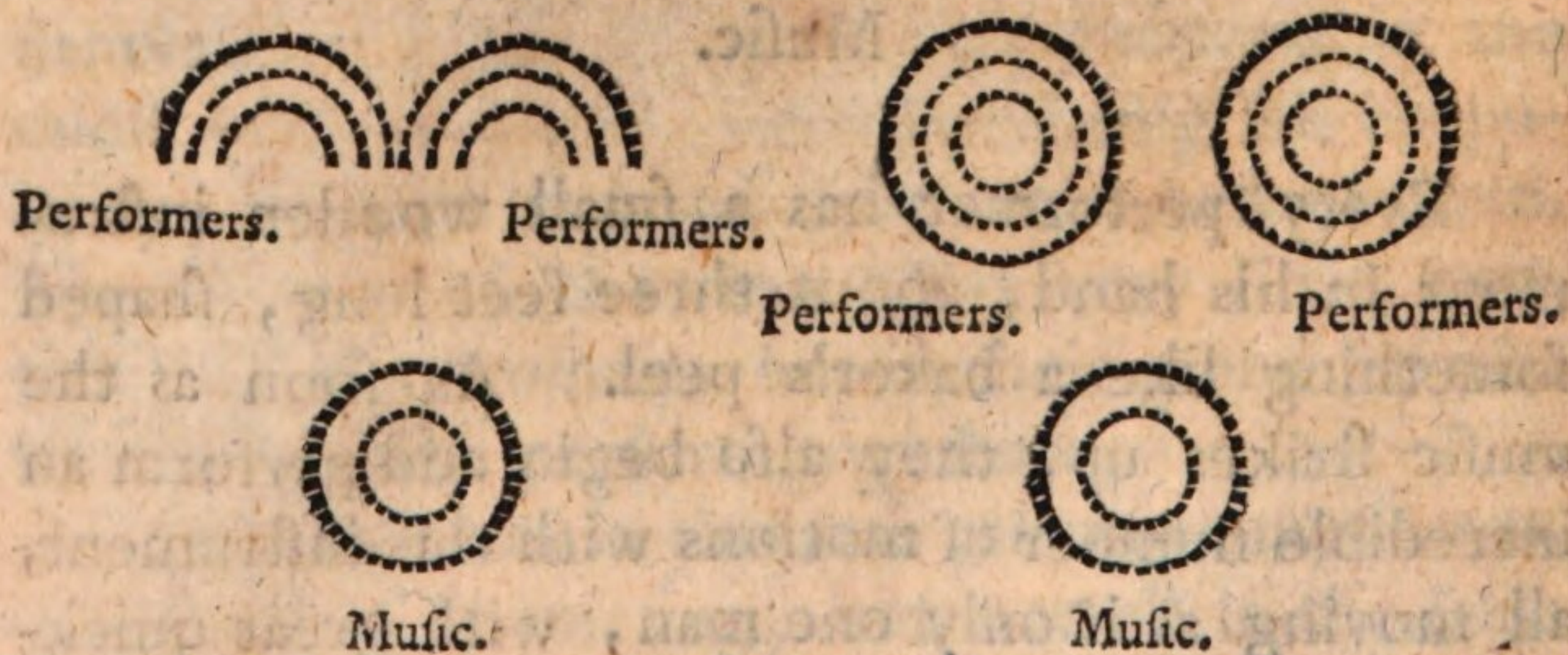
Performers.



Music.

Every performer has a small wooden instrument in his hand, about three feet long, shaped something like a baker's peel. As soon as the music strikes up, they also begin and perform an incredible number of motions with this instrument, all moving as if only one man, with great quickness,

ness, and in exact time, to the music. After this has continued about seven or eight minutes, they all, by very gradual and indeed almost imperceptible degrees, change places, so that those who were behind are now in front, and those who were in front, are now in the middle, observing the different attitudes and motions with the instruments throughout the time. This continues till they have all regained their proper places, when the two companies recede from each other still farther, and soon after two men make their appearance, dressed in a very antic manner, with each a kind of club in his hand. The various motions, actions, and attitudes, which these two harlequins put themselves into, together with the regularity and exactness they observe, are such as cannot be described, and even if they could, perhaps would not be credited. During their performance, the two companies remain inactive, but as soon as the harlequins are retired, they begin again, but vary in their performances, describing circles and semicircles in this manner,



and

and exchange their places as before; in short, the whole of their performance is such as does the greatest credit, not only to those who bear a part in it, but to the people in general.

Their wrestling matches are much like those of Otaheitee, as is their mode of challenging, viz. by striking with the hallow of their right hand upon the bended joint of their left elbow, which produces a loud hollow sound, something resembling that of a child's pop-gun; it will be therefore unnecessary to say more about it.

When a man gives a challenge to box, he throws out his arms, first his right and then his left, several times, as if striking at somebody, at the same time dancing as it were round the circle, for a circle is most commonly formed of the spectators. If any one accepts it, he gets up and does the same, after which they fall to, and generally give and receive very severe blows, till one or other owns himself vanquished; but if one chances to knock down the other, the contest is immediately at an end.

The victor, either in wrestling or boxing, receives a kind of plaudit from the company. The women frequently engage in these boxing matches, and sometimes deal heavy blows. But this kind of diversion amongst the female sex did not altogether coincide with our ideas of delicacy, and we expressed our disapprobation of it, which had so good an effect, that we never saw it a second time.

Another

Another kind of diversion they have is something similar to our cudgel playing, only in lieu of sticks they use clubs made of the bottom part of the branch of the cocoa-nut tree, which is hard and very tough. With these they will engage each other for a considerable time: they shew great dexterity in warding off and parrying the blows of their antagonists, but they sometimes get terribly banged about the head, and in the course of the fight must suffer severely: but such is their great good-nature, that we never saw an instance of a blow being given in anger.

These sports, as well as the before mentioned dance, are seldom exhibited but upon particular days, for the entertainment of the king and his nobility, many of whom frequently engage in them, and sometimes Powlahow lays his dignity aside for a time, and dances with his women.

Their singing has been occasionally mentioned before, but their common songs are very different from those sung at their heivahs. In these there are no separate parts, but the whole is sung in one tune: they have a greater variety of notes than the people of Otaheitee, and those who sing, generally two or three girls, and sometimes a man and a girl, snap their fingers throughout the whole of the song, which seems to be by way of keeping time.

Their musical instruments are drums, flutes, pieces of bamboo, as before observed, and a kind of pipe similar to the *fyrinx*, or *fistula agrestis* of the ancients. The flutes are made
of

of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and closed at both ends. They have four holes, one at each end, and on each side, so that either end may be used: to three of these holes they apply the middle finger of the left hand, and the thumb and middle finger of the right; the other they apply to the right or left nostril, as at Otaheitee. The tunes which they play upon them, though not various, at least our ears were not nice enough to distinguish any very material difference, are both pleasing and musical.

The pipes are composed of seven or eight joints of reed of unequal lengths, and secured together by the fibres of the cocoa-nut. Though this instrument amongst them, we seldom saw them use it.

Chastity among these islanders is not much regarded as a virtue; for, except most of the Agee girls, who were proof against every temptation that was offered them, there were very few that had the least objection to a private interview.

The manufactures are cloth, mats, and baskets. The former is made of the Chinese paper mulberry-tree, and undergoes the same process as at Otaheitee, only the instrument made use of in beating it out is not grooved but plain. They print it in various patterns, with a kind of stamp made of reed or cane; the colours they make use of are brown and black, but both very indifferent. They have also a light yellow dye, but we never had an opportunity of learning its

composition. Their mats are of two or three different kinds; one is made of a species of pandanus, the same as that of Otaheitee; another of a species of hibiscus, and a third either of the leaves of the cocoa-nut or palm-tree. Those made of the hibiscus are the strongest and by far the finest; they are chiefly worn by the better sort of people, and are fringed all round. The people of the Society Isles call those Pooerou; the name at these islands is Naffenaffe.

Of their baskets they have various kinds, which differ greatly in their shape, use, and size. Some of them are made of the same materials as their mats, but the best and strongest are formed of the twisted or rather braided fibres of the cocoa-nut, which they dye black and brown in different shades. Some of these they decorate with a kind of white bead, and rows of red feathers, which make them look elegant enough.

Of the cocoa-nut fibres they also make ropes and lines of different degrees of thickness. That of which they make their fishing nets is as fine as small packthread, but this is the production of the bark of another tree. Some of these nets are of the same form as our casting nets, and used in the same manner; in lieu of lead they fasten stones round the bottom: the needles with which they make them are also like our's.

Their fish-hooks are much like those of Otaheitee; their shank is composed of mother of pearl, and the hook part is frequently tortoise-shell.

Their

Their tools are hatchets of various sizes, made of a hard dark-coloured stone; files, made of fish-skin; and a drill, made exactly upon the same plan as those used by our blacksmiths.

The canoes of these islands are, without exception, the best we ever saw: the double ones are made large enough to carry fifty or sixty people, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix or erect a hut or shed, which is for the reception of the master and his wives and family. They are all made of the bread-fruit tree, which is an exceeding light wood: the workmanship is very neat, and they appear on the outside as if composed of one solid piece; but upon closer inspection, you find that they consist of a great number, which fit exactly one with the other, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single ones are furnished with an outrigger. The large canoes are taken great care of, and generally put into a house built on purpose.

The burial places of these people are called Affia-tooka, and every family of distinction has one belonging to it. These repositories of the dead are generally erected in some retired spot, and surrounded with trees of a particular kind, such as the *casuarina* and *athrodactylis*. The ground is elevated in the form of a mount, about three or four feet high, upon the top of which are built three or four close huts with a small door-way: in these they deposit the bodies,

and leave them. The mount is sometimes enclosed with a wooden fence, and sometimes with stones. These places are in general about one hundred and fifty or two hundred feet in circumference, but some are much larger, and very neatly finished.

Of the ceremonies attending a funeral we can say but very little, as only one, that we know of, occurred during our stay, and of this only one of our people got an accidental view. He was desirous of seeing the whole, but they were quite averse to an indulgence of that kind. Upon this occasion, he said, several of them, both men and women, wore a wreath, made of a twining kind of plant, round their necks and waists; and by their lamentations and gestures, he judged them to be relations of the deceased.

All the information we could get of the natives relative to these affairs is, that upon the death of a person, all the relations assemble together, and make a dismal howling, beating themselves upon their cheek bones with their fists till the blood runs. This is looked upon as a great mark of affection, and the more they torture themselves in this manner the greater esteem they are supposed to have entertained for the deceased. They also cut off the first joint of their little-finger; the right-hand finger is dedicated to the father, the left to the mother. Cutting off the hair is also another of their mourning ceremonies.

These people believe the existence of the soul in a separate state, and that after death they go
to

to a very pleasant place, much superior to that which they enjoy during life; for they say it abounds with every good thing they can possibly wish for: but these blisful abodes are, according to them, entirely for the residence of the agees, those of inferior rank not being suffered to have any share in them.

The form of government, with respect to its foundation, is much the same as at the Society Isles; but it is carried on with much greater order and regularity, and a superior degree of respect is shewed to the king. No one dares to address him without first paying him homage; which is done by kneeling down and bowing the head to his feet, which the person afterwards gently taps once with the fingers and knuckles of each hand, after which he seats himself at a distance, and then proceeds to relate his business. The agees always sit at a distance, forming a semicircle, the king being in front with four or five of his attendants behind him, and generally an old woman near him, with a fan.

The crown is hereditary, and has been in the present family for five generations. The king's authority, though absolute in almost every respect, is still in some measure curbed by Feenow and Tubow. The former, Powlahow told us, could dispossess him of his throne, and kill him, if he was a bad man. By which he probably meant, that if he neglected the duty of his station, or acted in a manner that would prove prejudicial to the good or welfare of the state,

Feenow could lawfully depose and kill him. Tubow is likewise a man of the first consequence; his business is to inspect the wenauh taboo, that is to examine the state of the islands with respect to their produce, and if there is a probability of any one species of provision falling short, which sometimes is the case, particularly when the season proves dry, he is too taboo it, or issue an order to forbid its being touched till the next season. By these wise precautions they are entirely divested of the fear of want. Some few days before our departure from Amsterdam almost every thing was tabooed, as our long stay had pretty well drained them of every thing they could spare.

The lower class of people are kept in great subjection by the chiefs, who in fact do just as they please with them, and seem to regard them as an abject set of beings, over whom they have an unbounded right. During our stay at Anamooka, immediately after the market for the day was over, one of the agees ordered the croud to disperse, and every one to retire to his home; which they not doing so readily as he thought they ought, he caught up a large stick, and fell upon them most furiously. One man was knocked down, and when taken away was to all appearance dead. The agee took no manner of notice of it, and walked away as unconcerned as if nothing had happened.

On the day our marines were exercised on shore at Happi, Feenow, who was willing to
know

know what execution our muskets would do at a distance, desired them to fire at a canoe that chanced to be passing by, and kill the man who was in her. This strange request was certainly not complied with, and we remonstrated with him as well as we could, on the cruelty of killing a man who had committed no fault; his answer was, that he was only a slave, and fit for nothing else.

Whilst we lay at Middleburgh, a man sitting very unconcerned, and looking on amidst the croud of people that surrounded our market-place on shore, was on a sudden attacked by three or four people armed with clubs, who broke one of his thighs, fractured his skull in a terrible manner, and in short dispatched him. This affair shocked us a good deal, as it had the appearance of barbarity and cruelty in the highest degree; but, upon enquiry, we found that the man had carried on an intrigue with the wife of an agee, who, in consequence of discovering it, had sent some of his people with orders to dispatch him wherever they found him.

These people are seldom at war except with the natives of Fidgi, an island mentioned before, whom they are much afraid of, and in general get terribly worsted. They told us these people were cannibals; an account which can scarce be credited, considering the amazing fertility of the island, which our friends told us abounded with every good thing. This report however was not confined to a few people, for every one, upon being asked, agreed in the story.

The weapons used at the Friendly Isles are clubs and spears; the former made of the *casurina*, or toa-tree, which is an exceeding hard and heavy wood, and are in general curiously carved; their length is from three to four feet. The spears are of different lengths, and barbed in various directions with the bones of the sting-ray, which must render them a most destructive weapon. They have likewise bows and arrows, but never use them in war, confining them entirely to shooting at a mark. The natives of Fidgi, on the contrary, make them a principal weapon, and it is to this alone that these people ascribe their superiority; which circumstance one would think might induce them at least to try the experiment.

The weather, during our stay at Anamooka, was very unsettled, and part of the time it rained very hard; the winds were variable. At Amsterdam it was in general fine, but at Middleburgh we had much rain, with fresh gales from the N. E.

CHAP. X.

On July the 17th at noon, the extremes of Middleburgh bore from N. N. E. to S. E. by S. our distance from the nearest shore about three miles. On the 20th, the variation of the compass was 8 deg. 41 min. easterly. From this time to the 28th, nothing material occurred; but on
the

the 29th, at half past six in the evening a violent and heavy squall came on, which carried away the Discovery's main-top-mast. This reduced them to the necessity of putting up a jury-mast, which job was not completed till August the 2d, in the afternoon. August the 7th, we found the variation to be 7 min. easterly, and on the 8th, at half past eleven in the morning, being in latitude 23 deg. 67 S. and longitude 209 deg. 52 min. E. we saw land bearing N. N. E. of which the Discovery made the signal to the Resolution. At noon, it was about ten or twelve leagues distant; but not being able to reach it, in any reasonable time, we stood upon our tacks for the night. The next day we stood in for it, and at eight sounded, and got ground from eighteen to thirty fathoms, the bottom fine sand, about a quarter of a mile from a break in the reef which surrounded the island.

Some of the natives put off in two of their canoes, and came within about a hundred yards of the ships; they made many signs to us, and their language seemed to resemble that of the Society Isles. By their signs they seemed to wish us to depart; one of them sounded a conk shell, and at the same time the rest brandished their paddles, rather in a threatening and menacing manner. We endeavoured by every means to persuade them to come on board, but without effect.

They were stout well made people, of the dark olive complexion; their hair was black and

long, and some few had it tied in a knot upon the top of their heads. Three or four had large pearl oyster shells suspended from their necks by way of ornament. The natives on shore appeared to be numerous, and some of them were clothed in white; one or two of those in the canoes had only a small strip of cloth round their waist.

Their canoes were neat; the gunwale was decorated with white shells, which had a pretty effect: their paddles were like those of the Friendly Isles, only not terminating in a point, but on the contrary quite round.

The island had a pleasant appearance; the interior parts rose in moderately high hills, which were covered with verdure to the top. Along the shores were borders of low land which were well clothed with trees, particularly the coconut tree.

Off the western side there was a break in the reef, apparently wide enough to admit a ship with safety. The natives call this island Toobooi. At nine we made sail and bore away, keeping a N. E. course, our observed latitude at noon being 23 deg. 9 min. S.

On the 13th of August, at half past five in the morning, we saw the island Maitea, bearing N. by W. and at seven descried Otaheitee, bearing W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At noon the extremes of Otaheitee-ete, or the lesser island, bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and S. W. by W. distant about six leagues; our observed latitude being 17 deg. 44 min. S. At six Ohitapeah harbour bore S. W. distant two miles.

miles. As we approached the land, the winds became light and variable, being affected by the surrounding mountains, Captain Cook therefore thought it most adviseable to stand off and on for the night, and take the advantage of the morning to get in. At day-light, the entrance of Ohitapeah harbour bore S. by W. six or seven miles distant, and at ten we anchored, in thirty-two fathoms, and soon after moored ship.

The ships were scarcely anchored, before numbers of the inhabitants came off to us, and presently recollected some of their old acquaintance, at the sight of whom they expressed great joy and satisfaction; and it might be supposed, that they were equally happy in seeing their countryman Omai returned after so long a voyage. — On the contrary, they scarce took any notice of him, and had he not dealt out his presents of red feathers, &c. pretty largely, it is possible they would not have spoke to him. The next day, after some general enquiries, we found that Oberea and Wyeatuah, who was king of Otaheitee-ete, or Tiarraboo, when Captain Cook was last here, were dead; and that some other ships had been there some time after the Resolution's departure. This information of course excited our curiosity a good deal, and we enquired more particularly into it. They told us, that about the latter end of the year 1774, there arrived two ships from Remah, by which we supposed they meant Lima, that the people who came in them staid between three and four months,

months, and had erected a house on shore. During their residence, the commander, whose name was Oridde, died, and was buried on shore some little distance from the house. At the departure of the ships, they took with them four of the natives, who voluntarily offered to go, and left behind them a young man called Martemo, and two priests.

At the end of about two months they returned and brought with them only one of the natives; two having died at Lima, and the other choosing to remain there. They appeared this second time to be in a great hurry, and after a short stay, during which time they were employed in wooding and watering, took back Martemo and the two priests, leaving strict orders with Wyeatuah to take care of the house, &c. as they intended to return in a short time; but however they never made their appearance again.

These were the heads of our information, which, as Omai was our interpreter, might come something near the truth.

The house, which was a wooden one, was divided into two rooms, one behind the other; the windows, or rather portholes, opened and shut in the inside with sliders. It is likely that the house was made at the place from whence the ships came, as every plank was numbered. The furniture was very inconsiderable, consisting of a table, two or three stools, an old tub, an old gold laced hat, and a few other trifling articles.

ticles. At some distance, in the front of the house, upon the spot where the commander was buried, was erected a large cross with this carved inscription upon it, *Christus vincit, Carolus tertius imperat*. Captain Cook ordered it to be taken down, and the following words to be put upon it, *Georgius tertius annis 1767, 69, 74, 79*.

Marteemo, as far as we could understand, was a very sensible clever young man, and held in much esteem by the natives. It seems probable, that he was left there with a view of learning the language, manners, and customs of the country; in the former he told us he was very intelligent. The two priests no doubt were to endeavour to make converts, but they did not appear to be very successful, for we could discover no traces of the good effect of their apostolical mission; and it is not unlikely, but that the reverend fathers might be so far led astray by the good things of the island, and the condescension of its female inhabitants, as totally to forget the business they were sent upon.

The man who had been at Lima, was frequently on board the ships, and very readily answered any questions we put to him relative to his treatment, &c. there. He appeared to like the Spaniards very well, but frequently expressed his surprize at their not having red feathers [which are with these people the summum bonum and extent of all their wishes] as well as us. In this respect we were very fortunate, having

having laid in a good stock at the Friendly Isles. Among many of our daily visitors was a man called Orettee, who was an old taio of M. Bougainville's: seldom a day passed without this man's dining on board of the ships, where he generally contrived to get drunk. Of our female visitors, a woman whose name was Poorahi was the principal; she became captain Clerke's taio, and exchanged names with him. She generally had a fine young girl with her, whose name was Outopah, of a most winning and engaging behaviour.

As our stay at this place was not of any long continuance, getting out the Discovery's mast was postponed till we should arrive at Matavai Bay. We were however constantly employed in getting in water, and starting that which we took in at the Friendly isles: our armourers too were continually employed at the forge, in making trade of various sorts for the purchasing of provisions.

The face of the country here exhibits a very different appearance from that of the Friendly Isles. Mountains and vallies, hills and dales, and in short every thing conspire to form the most romantic views imaginable; while at Amsterdam, &c. you had only one continued tract of low level land. At a little distance from the ships was a remarkably pleasant valley, which ran winding between the mountains to a great distance; in the midst of it is a fine stream of water, which at the head of the valley takes its rise from

a beautiful cascade that appears to burst out of the rocks.

On each side the stream are placed the houses of the natives, interspersed with plantations of bananas, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a kind of apple tree; the lofty hills on each side, whose tops reach beyond the clouds, the variety of birds which are continually flying from place to place, and the noise of the falling water, re-echoed by the surrounding hills, afford a scene striking beyond description.

Ohitapeah is the principal place of Otaheitee-ete, being the residence of the king and most of the principal people. The present king is a minor, and son to the late Wyeatuah; he is about ten years old, and is a fine lively sensible boy.

The morai of the late king stands upon the banks of a rivulet not far from the Spanish house; it is very neatly fenced in with bamboo, and the corpse is placed upon a kind of bier, and wrapped up in a great quantity of cloth, over which are spread several pieces of scarlet woollen cloth, which had been given him by the Spaniards. His house is at a little distance from the morai, but almost tumbled to pieces, for these people never repair or live in the house of any one that is dead; that and every thing belonging to it being raa, as they call it; which word has nearly the same meaning as taboo at the Friendly Isles, and means unlawful, or forbid. This word is used on many occasions; for instance, if
you

you ask any of the women to eat while the men are present, they will shake their heads, and say it is maa raa, or meat which they are forbid to eat.

These good people notwithstanding they supplied us very largely with every produce of the place, yet, in several respects had lost that degree of cordiality for us, which was experienced in the course of the former voyage. This we had great reason to attribute to the insinuations and mal practices of the Spaniards, who, if the natives are to be relied on, took every method to lessen that friendship and good opinion, which they saw these people entertained of us, by representing us as a set of idle piratical people, who lived entirely by plunder; that we had no place of abode, but were obliged to cruize about from place to place to procure a living, with many other circumstances equally false and unjust.

The behaviour of the Spaniards during their stay was truly characteristic; scarce any of the natives were permitted to enter the great cabin, and not a woman was suffered to come on board; the commander never went on shore without a guard to receive him, which, with the advantage they had over us in fine scarlet cloths, for the people of Otaheitee, like most others are fond of shew, and the great state they always assumed, absolutely got the better of our poor friends, and they looked upon them almost as a superior race of beings.

How-

However we in some measure overcame their prejudices against us, and by dealing out our presents, particularly red feathers, in a judicious manner, they readily confessed we were more valuable taioa than the Dons.

The Spaniards left behind several hogs, goats, and dogs, and likewise a bull and cow: the latter died, but the bull was kept at Oparre, the residence of Otoo, and was really a fine animal.

We staid at this place till the 23d instant, when we weighed our anchors, and stood out of the harbour, at nine in the morning, with several of the natives on board as passengers.

At noon the N. W. point of Otaheite bore N. W. by N. distant about three leagues, and the easternmost land in sight S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The Resolution, being a good way a-head, got into Matavia Bay before it was dark; but night coming on, and having very squally weather, the Discovery stood off and on, it being more prudent to take the advantage of the morning to get in, rather than run the risque of getting too near the reef, which might have proved a dangerous affair. The next day, as soon as it became light, she stood in for the bay, and at eleven let go her anchor in five fathom of water, a sandy bottom, about half a mile from the nearest shore.

We now set about the necessary preparations for getting out the Discovery's mast; and as captain Cook intended to reside here some time, the astronomers tents, instruments, and other apparatus, were got on shore, and erected upon

point Venus. The ships tents were also pitched, and the marines, with the coopers and all the empty casks, with various other affairs, were sent on shore.

The next day, Otoo with his brothers and sisters, visited the captains. He is full six feet high, and raw-boned, but not fat. Enue, who is his second brother, is a fine handsome young fellow, but greatly addicted to drinking a'wa; the youngest is about seventeen, a handsome youth. His three sisters are very plain women; the youngest, whose name is Terrara, is a very agreeable lively girl.

C H A P. XI.

Omai found his sister married and settled here, who received him very cordially and affectionately, but her husband, who was quite of the inferior set of people, would not condescend or deign to speak to him. But he soon altered his behaviour, for finding that Omai was possessed of many valuables, he then received him with open arms, and was continually with him, both on board and on shore. An unlucky circumstance however happened, for being one day on board the Resolution in the great cabin, just before dinner, a knife and fork attracted his notice so much as to induce him to conceal them. It was soon discovered that the usual number was not there, and the Captain's suspicion immediately

ately resting upon him, he was searched and the things found, for which he got a good flogging, and was turned out of the ship. Captain Cook wished much to have settled Omai at this place, and put him under the protection of Otoo; but he never would hear of it, and declared that he would remain no where but at Huaheine. His reason for fixing upon this island in particular was, because its situation he said was very convenient for him, to chastise the insolence of the Borabora men, for whom he has the most inveterate hatred.

Omai had been very lavish of his things at Ohitapeah, and he also distributed them here in a manner that a good deal displeased Captain Cook, who often advised him to be more frugal, but without effect. The people at this place did not appear much to like him, and frequently turned up their noses at him as he passed along; but at length Tohaw, the lord high admiral, as we used to call him, who was a man of a fine generous spirit, took a great deal of notice of him, gave him two or three servants, and was very desirous of his living with him, but Omai would not listen to reason.

We were now constantly visited by many of the principal arees, among whom were Oammo, husband to the late queen Oberea, Potatow, and Tohaw.

On the 27th instant, some people from Ohitapeah came on board the *Discovery*, and informed the Captain that two Spanish ships had

arrived at that place on the preceding evening. He immediately waited upon Captain Cook, and related the information he had received: whilst they were discoursing of the affair, one of the Indians introduced himself, and said he had actually been on board one of the ships, and that the clothing which he then had on, was given him by one of the commanders. It appeared to be perfectly new, which, with the many protestations and assurances the man made respecting the truth of the report, induced Captain Cook to send a boat, with an officer, attended by this genius, who voluntarily offered to conduct them, to ascertain the truth: in the interim both vessels were cleared for action, in case the Dons should think proper to attack us. On the evening of the 29th the boat returned, having looked into Ohitapeah harbour, where there was not the least appearance of a ship, consequently the whole was nothing more than a story which these ingenious people had contrived to hatch up. Indeed their conductor was so sensible of this, that he took the first opportunity of making his escape by jumping overboard, and by that means, in all probability, escaped a good kicking.

We found our friends engaged in a war with a neighbouring island, called Imaio, or York Island, which, as far as we could learn, appeared to be an old affair. When Captain Cook was at Otaheitee, in the course of his last voyage, they were preparing a very formidable fleet to attack that island, which formerly was tributary to
Otaheitee,

Otaheitee, but revolted some years since. Soon after the departure of the Resolution they failed, and upon landing their forces a brisk engagement ensued, and our friends entirely routed them, and obliged them to fly to the mountains. They soon after sued for peace, and very gladly accepted of it upon any terms; when it was agreed that one of Tohaw's family should reside there as governor. This they readily assented to, and for some time appeared perfectly satisfied; but it did not continue long, for by degrees they began to dispute the authority of their new governor, and at last dispatched him. This was the cause of the present war; and in consequence of it, on the evening of the 1st of September, Tohaw offered a human sacrifice to their god of war, whom they call Oro. These kinds of religious rites we find are customary things amongst them upon any particular occasion. The person sacrificed is always one of the lowest and most useless person they can find: he is totally ignorant of the affair, till the persons who are sent to dispatch him arrive, when they knock him on the head without any hesitation. The body is then conveyed to the place of sacrifice with great form and ceremony. This place seems to be set apart entirely for religious affairs of this nature: on one side was a house for the residence of the priests, at some distance from which was a large piece of board elevated upon two posts rudely carved, upon which were placed several hogs and dogs that probably were killed upon this occasion

occasion. Near this was a kind of flat shed raised upon four posts, and decorated all round near the top with garlands made of particular kind of trees, such as the emotoo, awa, and etee, and upon its top several bunches of plaintains and cocoa-nuts were placed. On one side was a kind of altar formed of stone, and raised about two feet from the surface of the ground, upon various parts of which were fixed those rude kinds of carvings that are usually to be distinguished near morais, and in the midst of these were a number of human skulls, which belonged to those who had formerly been sacrificed. Near the house were two large drums, upon which two men were almost continually drumming during the ceremony. The priest takes out one of the eyes, which he offers to the god, at the same time making a long prayer, imploring his protection during the war, and begging that victory may crown their arms, after which the body is interred.

As it was Tohaw's relation whom the people of Imaio had murdered, he of course was the most active man, and had made great preparations; Otoo, Potatow, and another chief whose name was Tapaow, were also to assist him. On the 19th, the two latter, with Tohaw, sailed for Imaio, whilst Otoo was to muster his forces and join him the next day. Accordingly there was a review of his war canoes; after which, instead of going to the assistance of Tohaw, as was expected, they all departed to the several districts to which they belong; the consequence
of

of which was, the admiral and his friends were very roughly handled, and obliged to make off in the best manner they could.

This behaviour of Otoo enraged old Tohaw exceedingly, who declared vengeance against him, and even threatened to dethrone him, which he said it was no very difficult matter to compass, as Wyeatuah, the young king of Tiaraboo, is his nephew; and their combined forces might easily give him a shock which he would not readily get the better of.

On the 29th of September, in the afternoon, after taking leave of all our old friends at Mata-vai, both vessels weighed and made sail, accompanied by Omai in a large double canoe, which he had purchased there. Soon after we bore away to get clear of the reef, and at six, being a good distance from it, we brought to for the night, with the main-top-sail to the mast. At day-light we made sail, steering a due course for Imaio, which then bore about W. S. W. At eight we were pretty near it, and there being a fine bay a-head, the boats were got out to see if there was a sufficient depth of water for the ships.

At ten they returned with an account of its affording excellent accommodations; we therefore stood in for it, and at eleven both ships anchored in about seven fathom water, with a muddy bottom, the Resolution being on the eastern shore, the Discovery on the western. It was till this time a matter of doubt, whether

this island afforded any shelter for vessels, but we now found that a little farther to the eastward there was another harbour equally as convenient as this.

On Thursday, October the 2d, in the morning the king of the island, whose name is Mahine, visited the captains; he was attended by several people, and two or three handsome women. He appeared to be above forty, was above the middle size, and rather fat; he had many scars upon his body, and has lost one eye, all which he says are the consequences of the many wars he has been engaged in. He has a son who he intends to succeed him, provided he can become independent; but the people of Otaheitee will probably always be too powerful for him, and of course put in a king of their own choosing.

We here heard of the death of Oammo, by some people who had followed the ships from Otaheitee, who had been ill several days before our departure.

On Monday evening, Sept. 7th, the natives stole one of the Resolution's goats, which, with our other live stock, had been sent on shore to graze: the large cutter, with an officer, in the morning was dispatched to Mahine's residence, to inform him of the theft, and beg that he would exert his authority, and assist us to recover it. In the evening he returned with the goat, and the person who had stolen it; who, in order to strike him with some degree of terror, was, by order of Captain Cook, put into irons.

But

But these ingenious people did not rest here, for during the absence of the above boat, they stole another. This proof of their dexterity greatly displeased Captain Cook, who, the next day, sent two strong parties on shore, well armed, with orders to destroy some of their canoes, &c. and since lenient measures proved ineffectual, he was determined to act with some degree of severity. One or two of their houses were burnt, and several hogs brought off; which mode of conduct alarmed them so much, that the day after the goat was returned.

Having completed our wood and water, and got every thing on board, we weighed our anchors, and stood out of the harbour.

Imaio is, without exception, the most pleasant of all the Society Isles. Its appearance is truly romantic, and it abounds with a variety of landscapes that are delightful beyond description: it is divided nearly in the centre by a range of mountains, that rise in a variety of forms, appearing like old ruined castles or churches. At the bottom of them is a large tract of moderately high land, interspersed with groves of various trees; on one side of this the land makes a sudden break, and forms a most delightful valley, beyond which the scene is beautifully contrasted, and the view closed by several irregular mountains.

The next course we steered was for Huaheine, which we soon reached, and anchored in Owharre harbour. Here the astronomer's tents, as well as those belonging to the ships, were again

pitched; and, having the convenience of a large house, Captain Cook ordered all the bread, which was in a very rotten and bad condition, to be got on shore and dried. As this was the island which Omai fixed upon for his residence, the carpenters were set to work to erect him a house to contain his valuables, which would by no means have been secure in one of his own country, and in the course of a few days it was completed. Our reception at this island was very friendly; and one of the principal men, whose name was Mahine, supplied the Discovery with abundance of hogs, fowls, and very fine bread-fruit; the latter superior to any we had ever met with before.

One evening we were alarmed on board by the firing of a musket from the shore, and observing most of the natives running about in great confusion, we immediately suspected some theft had been committed; boats from both ships were sent to enquire into the cause of this uproar, and upon their return we found our conjectures proved true, for somebody had stolen a quadrant from one of the astronomers tents, which being enclosed in a box, and not put in so secure a place as it ought to have been, some of those ingenious people had contrived to carry off. This was a loss which could not be put up with; strict search therefore was made after the thief, and with much trouble and difficulty he at last was caught, carried on board the ship, and put in irons; the quadrant was found, concealed
amongst

amongst some high grafs, about a quarter of a mile from the tents. The man, after undergoing some hours confinement, receiving a severe flogging, and having his head shaved, which is an operation they are by no means fond of, was discharged; but no sooner was he on shore than he declared vengeance against Omai, who had been very active in securing him, and threatened to burn his house and destroy him. In fact, several attempts of this kind were made during the night, and poor Omai was obliged to be very circumspect, and careful in keeping watch. Not content with this, the villain destroyed several grape vines, which Omai had brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and which he was particularly anxious to preserve, these were planted upon the side of a hill, not far from his house, and in all probability would have succeeded very well in their growth.

Complaints were made to Captain Cook of these outrages, who, anxious for the safety of Omai, and fearing that if this man remained upon the island, some mischief would ensue, determined to take an opportunity of securing and conveying him on board, with an intent to leave him upon some of the islands we might fall in with, in our way to the northward. This plan was accordingly put in execution, and the gentleman confined in irons; but a day or two after, by some means or other, which never could be found out, he contrived to make his escape. Captain Cook strongly suspected that somebody
on

on board the ship had set him at liberty, which it is more than probable was the case.

During our stay, Omai gave several entertainments on shore, to which most of the gentlemen of the ships were invited, and Captains Cook and Clerke always made a point of being there, as it might in the end prove serviceable to him: for the natives seeing their countryman so much respected by the Captains, might, on that account, be induced to behave better to him after their departure.

The time at length arrived for sailing, and in the morning Omai, attended by his two New Zealand boys, visited both ships, and with many tears took a most affectionate leave of all his friends, who could not forbear sympathizing with him. Having got into his canoe, we again bid him farewell, got up our anchors, and soon after stood out of the harbour, making the best of our way for Uriatea, with many passengers on board, both male and female.

The next day we anchored in Ohamaneno, one of the harbours of that island; and in the afternoon moored both ships close to the shore, the Resolution being on one side, and the Discovery on the other. Many of our old friends came off in their canoes, and, amongst the rest, Oreo, the chief of the island, who easily recognized Captain Cook: a brisk trade was soon opened on both sides, and we had as plentiful a supply of every thing as we could wish for.

As

As this was the last of the Society Isles we proposed stopping at, every thing was got on shore that wanted the least repair. Our tents were pitched, the forge erected, parties were sent to wood and water, and a proper place was fixed upon for making astronomical observations.

A day or two after our arrival, Boba, the chief of Otahaw, with his wife Teinamai, waited upon us, and made the Captains a present of several hogs, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, &c. Mr. Forster mentions in his publication, that he was to be married to Miverua, the daughter of Opoo-ne, king of Bora-bora; however that might have been, he now lives with Teinamai. She by no means answers the description given of her in the last voyage, having since had several children; and is altered in every respect much for the worse, except in her temper and disposition, which are equally as good and agreeable as before.

We continued repairing our rigging, mending sails, wooding, and watering, &c. with all expedition, and were nearly upon the point of sailing, when two of the Discovery's people were missing. As this happened in the evening, it was concluded that they were carrying on an intrigue with some of the ladies, and no more was thought of it; but the morning came, and hearing nothing of them, we were rather alarmed, and made very strict enquiry of the natives, who at first declared they were perfectly ignorant of the matter; but with much persuasion one informed

formed us, that they had the preceding night embarked in a canoe with two or three of the inhabitants, and paddled out to sea.

This at once disclosed the whole of their plan, and many circumstances occurred, which confirmed us in our suspicion, viz. that they had made their escape with a view of remaining with the natives, and one of them had gone so far, a few days before, as to desire Captain Cook's permission to stay.

No time was now to be lost in the recovery of them: accordingly, boats well manned and armed were sent to different parts of the island, but all returned without gaining any intelligence: the next day was spent in the same manner, and with as little success.

We had now only one resource left, which was to secure some of the principal people, and keep them in custody till our men were delivered up, which was done the following day.

Captain Clerke having occasion to go on board the Resolution, found Oreo's son and daughter with her husband there, and having informed Captain Cook of his intention, who readily agreed to the plan, he invited them on board the Discovery, under a pretence of giving them some hatchets, knives, and beads. As the Captain had frequently made them presents before, they accompanied him without the least hesitation, but no sooner were they arrived in the great cabin, than a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding

ceeding of course surprised them a good deal, and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, and the necessity he was under of doing it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He assured them he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they should be released: this however did not quiet their apprehensions, and they continued in a state of great despondency all night. No sooner was it known amongst the natives, that Moedua, which was the name of Oreo's daughter, with her brother and husband, were confined as prisoners, than a large party of women assembled on shore, and even in the water near the ships, and set up a most dismal howling, striking their bosoms, and cutting their heads with sharks teeth, which caused a plentiful effusion of blood, and gave them the appearance of furies rather than women; some worked themselves up to such a pitch as to become nearly frantic, whilst the royal prisoners bewailed their situation in silent sorrow. This continued near half an hour, when having entirely exhausted themselves with passion, they retired.

In the evening, several of the chiefs had formed a design of seizing Captains Cook and Clerke, as they took their evening walk, and would certainly have put it in execution, had he not received timely intelligence from a girl who came with us from Huaheine. She had been on shore almost the whole day, and towards evening came on board in a great fright, telling us that
Tootee

Tootee and Taatee, the names the Captains went by, would be killed. Captain Clerke was then on shore. A strong armed party were directly sent, who in their way overtook several of the natives armed with clubs and sticks.

As soon as they saw our men they appeared much confused, and made off, a few muskets were discharged after them, but without doing any mischief. The captain in his walk had met with one or two of the chiefs, and observed several others lurking about, which their behaviour, made him rather suspicious, so he very wisely turned back, and went on board the Resolution, which rendered their scheme abortive. In the morning, Oreo came on board the Discovery, and with tears in his eyes begged permission to speak [to his sons and daughter, which he was suffered to do. Being informed, that unless he brought back our two men, Captain Clerke would carry the prisoners to England, he said he would do all in his power to find them, and after a short stay departed.

At length the runaways were brought on board, and put in irons, and Moedua with her husband and brother, set at liberty: after receiving several presents from the captain, as a small recompence for their confinement, they went on shore, and were received with great joy by their countrymen and women, who had assembled for that purpose.

Our deserters we found had paddled all night, and the next morning arrived at Bora-bora; and
having

having rested themselves proceeded to a small island called Tubai, where they were taken.

Having nothing now to detain us, we got up our anchors, but the wind not proving favourable, we were obliged once more to let them go. However, on the 9th of December, Sunday, we again weighed and made sail, accompanied by numbers of our old friends in their canoes, who attended the ships a considerable way beyond the harbour, and then very cordially bid us adieu.

Captain Cook at first had some idea of stopping a day or two at Bora-bora; but the harbour not proving a good one, he pursued his course to the northward.

The society of the areeois is esteemed the most polite establishment in in these islands; the members of which are always people of rank and fortune, and are distinguished by being tattowed in a peculiar manner, particularly those who are natives of Bora-bora.

It will here be necessary to observe, what it is that first constitutes a member, and some of the rights and privileges annexed to this society. It is in consequence of a most cruel and inhuman action: a man must connect himself with a girl; and the first child he has by her, must be strangled the instant it is born. At the next meeting they must bring witnesses to prove this horrid deed, after which they are admitted as members.

They generally go in companies of ten or twelve sail of canoes; and let them direct their course

course to whatever island they please, they are always certain of being well received; nay, if they have even been at war but a few days before visit, all animosity is laid aside, and they are as perfect friends as if nothing had happened.

One of their privileges is to keep two, three, or more women at once, who, however, must be members. They always wear the best cloth the islands produce, and eat many peculiar things, which others, even if arees, are not permitted to do. They are generally distinguished for their prowess, valour, and activity in battle; and if any of them shew the least signs of cowardice, he is excluded the society; which is esteemed such a disgrace, that from that time he loses all his consequence; and nobody will associate with or speak to him. Their amusements during these meetings consist of boxing, wrestling, dancing, and making feasts and entertainments, at which crowds of female spectators attend, the fairest of whom are always made choice of by the conquerors. In general, they continue in this society to the age of thirty or thirty-five, when by suffering one of their children to survive, they debar themselves of the privileges of an *arreoi*. Many remain members all their lives, and die in a most emaciated state, occasioned by their very debauched way of living.

C H A P. XII.

Our weather, after leaving the Society Isles, was pleasant, with a fresh trade-wind. On the 22d. we observed a greater number of birds than usual, which increased as we continued our course; and most of them being such as never fly very far from land, we concluded ourselves to be in the neighbourhood of some.

Orders were given to keep a good look out; and we stood on, the birds, which were boobies, men of war birds, egg birds and tropic birds, becoming more numerous till the 24th, when being in latitude 2 deg. 3 min. N. and longitude 202 deg. 22 min. E. we discovered a low sandy isle, with a few trees upon it, which had the appearance of being burnt or scorched up by the heat of the sun.

In the afternoon, we were well in with the land, and Captain Cook having taken a view of it, signified his intention of stopping there for a day or two, as he apprehended it might prove a convenient place for catching turtle. About an hour after, we anchored off the S. W. part of it, and the Resolution sent a boat to look for a convenient landing place; but not meeting with one, we weighed and stood on towards the N. W. part of it, when we anchored again about two miles from the shore, opposite to a small patch of cocoa-nut trees, which from that circumstance we called Cocoa-nut Point, and near which there was a break in the reef, large enough

to admit boats. Parties from both ships were sent on shore, and the first night they turned upwards of thirty turtle; we also sent our boats to catch fish, and had very good success so that with fish and turtle we lived exceedingly well. This proved a welcome supply, for our stock of fresh provisions had been consumed a few days before our discovery of this island.

We employed ourselves in this manner till the 1st of January, during which time we had collected a considerable number of turtle for both ships, but had nearly lost two of the Discovery's men, who unthinkingly strayed from their party, and proceeding in a directly opposite direction to what they ought, had well nigh perished with heat and thirst. In the evening, captain Cook made the signal for the boats to return, and the next morning, January 2d, we weighed our anchors, and proceeded to the northward.

This place, which we called Christmas Island, having spent that anniversary there, is one of those low lagoon islands so frequently to be met with between the tropics. It is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, upon which a heavy surf continually vents its fury. Its appearance is desolate and barren, being little more than a large sand bank of a semicircular form, covered in some places with a low brush wood. The soil is composed of sand, stones, and the decayed shells of crabs, and other shell-fish. Its inhabitants are innumerable flocks of boobies, man of war birds, egg birds, petrels, tropic birds, and two or three

three species of plover, most of which were so tame as to be taken off the bushes. In one or two places we found small patches of cocoa-nut trees, the fruit of which were small, and the milk poor and insipid, and the trees considerably stunted in their growth. The reef abounds with various kinds of fish, particularly a species of shark about four feet in length, which constantly attended our boats to and from the ships: there are also very large cavallias, snappers, and a fish which they called a rock-cod. On shore, we found numbers of a species of crab, which from their bright red colour we called soldiers, and abundance of land crabs. We likewise saw several rats, which were smaller than ours, and their colour more red. We tried in many places for fresh water, but could procure none but what was very brackish, and totally unfit for use.

Our course from hence was nearly north: we had a fine steady breeze, and the weather was fine and pleasant. On the 17th, our latitude was 20 deg. 25 min. N. and longitude 200 deg. 45 min. E. The next day, Jan. 18, being in latitude 21 deg. 13 min. N. and longitude 200 deg. 49 min. E. we saw land to the eastward, and soon after descried more to the N. W. for which we shaped our course; but night coming on, we tacked and stood off till morning, Jan. 19th, when we proceeded to trace the coast in a S. W. and W. direction. The land at first presented rather a barren appearance, but upon a closer view it improved upon us, particularly on the

western side, which consisted of a large tract of fine level plains, and beyond them a double range of hills, which were covered with trees. Upon the shore we saw a few clusters of cocoa-nut trees, but by no means so abundant as at the Society Isles. As we drew nearer in shore, some of the inhabitants put off in their canoes, and very readily came along side. Their colour was more of the copper cast than that of the natives of Taheitee, and they wore their hair long, and of different hues, like the people of the Friendly Isles. Their dress was nothing more than a narrow slip of cloth round their middle, and they were marked or tattowed in different parts of their body. Their cloth was stamped or printed in various patterns, not much unlike our printed linens; their language nearly resembled that of Taheitee. They were easily persuaded to come on board, and, like all other Indians, soon began to steal, but nothing of any consequence was lost. We saw no weapons among them, nor did they behave abruptly or disagreeably, but in their disposition seemed friendly and good-natured. We purchased a few pigs and sweet potatoes of them, for which we gave them a hatchet or two, and a few small nails, with which they appeared very well satisfied. In the evening we stood off, intending to examine the place more closely the next day.

In the morning, Jan 20th, at six, captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery's six-oared cutter, which, accompanied with the Resolution's
pinnace

pinnace and large cutter, was sent to look for a safe place for the ships to anchor, and to try what soundings were to be found nearer in shore. During their absence, we stood off and on, being fearful of venturing too near. The natives came off as yesterday, and we bought a few hogs, tarrow, sweet potatoes, and sugar-cane, of all which they appeared to have plenty, and excellent of their kind. At three in the afternoon the boats returned, having found a tolerable birth, and at four both vessels came to. Soon after captain Cook went on shore in the pinnace, attended by the Discovery's cutter, both well-armed. He was received on shore very cordially by the natives, who treated him during his stay with great respect and attention, and brought many small hogs, potatoes, tarrow, or eddoes, and sugar-cane, all which were purchased at a very easy rate. The women were rather ordinary, and in general masculine, and will scarce bear a comparison with the fair dames of Taheitee. Their dress is the same as that of the men, only the cloth is wider, and reaches down to the knees. Their hair is cut short behind, and long before, but turned back like our toupees, which mode of wearing it does not set them off to the greatest advantage. Many, who were along-side in their canoes, pleaded hard to come on board, but captain Cook had given strict orders, previous to his anchoring, not to suffer a single woman to be admitted into the ships, as there were several people in both, who still had the vene-

real disease. But, notwithstanding every precaution, many of our men contrived to have connexions with them, in consequence of which we found this terrible disorder raging among them when we arrived there the second time.

The next day, Jan. 21st, the launches were sent to fill water, which could be procured without much difficulty, from a fine river at no great distance from the ships, and parties were dispatched to the shore to trade with the natives, while others were to superintend the market on board the ships. They supplied us with abundance of every thing the island produced, and in the evening our trading parties returned with abundance of fine hogs, potatoes, sugar-cane, &c.

The 22^d. was very windy, with much rain, which prevented our boats from landing, as a heavy surf broke upon the shore. Our friends however came off in the midst of it, and a brisk trade was carried on, on board. We also purchased many of their ornaments, such as fans, necklaces, bracelets, cloaks and caps, composed of red and yellow feathers, which were very curious, the latter being made in form of helmets. They also brought off some spears, which were about ten feet long, admirably polished, and the end intended for execution was about eight or ten inches in length, had many barbs, and was pointed.

During a heavy squall, the Resolution dragged her anchor, and swung near a shoal. Her situa-

situation being rather dangerous, captain Cook ordered the anchor to be weighed, and stood off shore; but the winds soon after becoming light, and a strong current setting to the westward, she fell considerably to leeward, and at last was obliged to stand out to sea. The Discovery, being secure, staid behind.

The 23d. was very rainy during the whole day, but as there was but little wind, captain Clerke sent the Discovery's boats on shore to trade as usual, and many of the inhabitants came on board as before.

Early the next morning, Jan. 24th, the Discovery weighed and made sail; but the wind proved so light, that she fell to leeward, and was obliged soon after to come to. The Resolution at this time was out of sight. About nine, the king of the island came alongside in a double canoe: captain Clerke, understanding who he was, requested him much to come on board, which he appeared willing to do, but his attendants were so fearful of his receiving some hurt or other, that they intreated him not to do it. He ventured however as far as the gangway, where he sat down, and presented the captain with a curious carved bowl; in return for which he received some large nails, a cut-glass bowl, and some other trifles, which pleased him exceedingly. After a short stay, his attendants bore him in their arms to his canoe, and he went ashore. His name was Tomahana; he appeared to be about thirty years old, and was above the

middle size; he was clothed in the same manner as the meanest of his subjects, and could only be distinguished by the great respect they paid him. Soon after his departure, the queen arrived in another canoe, and in the same manner was permitted to go no farther than the gangway. She likewise made captain Clerke a present of some elegant ruffs made of various coloured feathers, for which he gave her some beads, looking glasses, and a piece of scarlet cloth; after which she was carried into her canoe, and proceeded to the shore. She was young, and had a pleasing countenance, but her dress was not remarkable.

At seven the next morning, Jan. 25, the Discovery got up her anchor, and made sail, with a fine breeze. Soon after she saw the Resolution, and bore down to her. The three following days were spent by both ships in turning to windward, to regain their old situations if possible, but they could not even reach the westernmost point of the island. The next day, 29th, therefore, they bore away for a small isle, about seven leagues to leeward of this, and at ten in the morning were running along shore, when captain Cook sent the pinnace to strike soundings, and see if we could anchor with safety. Soon after she made the signal of anchorage, and the Resolution came to; but the Discovery, having thirty and forty fathoms with a rocky bottom, continued to stand on; about half an hour after she let go her anchor in twenty-three fathoms of water,

water, the bottom a fine white sand, and about two miles off shore.

This island was considerably smaller than the other, and had rather a wretched appearance; the south point of it is terminated by a high bluff rock, the interior parts are low, with here and there a small elevation, and not a tree is to be seen.

In the morning, 30th, our new acquired friends came off with sweet potatoes, yams, and salt; in the two latter articles they seemed to abound. The yams were large, and the salt was equal to any we ever saw, both for colour and quality. The boats were sent on shore to trade as usual, but they found the landing far more difficult than at the last place, on account of a very heavy surf, which, when the wind varies in the least to the westward, rolls in at so terrible a rate, as totally to cut off all communication with the shore. In the evening, they brought off what few articles they conveniently could, but left two or three of the gentlemen behind, who superintended the market, till the weather should be more moderate.

The next day, 31st, we again tried to land with our boats, but were obliged to desist; and in the evening had fresh gales with rain. The Resolution being too near in shore, weighed and anchored farther out.

This morning, Feb. 1st, the weather being more moderate, the boats were sent on shore, and in the afternoon brought off the gentlemen,
with

with some yams and salt, but were obliged to leave the principal part of their purchases behind. About five in the afternoon, the wind being very high, and a heavy swell running, the Resolution drove, and soon after got under way, intending to anchor again, but by the time it was dark the current had set her nearly out of sight.

A number of the natives came off to the Discovery the next day, Feb. 2d, with their canoes laden with salt, yams, sweet potatoes, and fish dried and salted. Of the roots, a sufficient quantity were purchased to supply the ship's company two months at least. At ten she got up her anchor, and made sail after the Resolution, who could just be distinguished from the mast-head. At two in the afternoon she joined her, and both directed their course to the northward.

As we visited these islands a second time, and had an opportunity of making a greater number of remarks, relative to the manners and customs, &c. of the inhabitants, than our short stay this time would permit, a fuller and more particular account will be given afterwards: it will therefore suffice for the present to exhibit a concise view of what appeared to us the most striking and remarkable.

A'towi, which is the name of the largest island, is composed, on the N. W. side, of a large tract of level land, the interior parts, as has been observed before, consisting of a double range of hills. The houses of the natives are in general situated near the shore, and placed in clusters,

clusters, so as to form small towns or villages. Their external appearance greatly resembles the top of a barn placed upon the ground, with a small entrance in the middle. Some of them were elevated upon posts about three feet high, particularly those nearest the sea; from which we may conclude, that they are, during some parts of the year, subject to inundations. They are well thatched on the outside with dry grass, so as totally to prevent the entrance of rain. The floor is also well strewed with dry grass, upon which mats of various sizes and dimensions are placed. These mats are of a very close, compact texture, and made of different patterns, some of which are really elegant. They vary greatly in their degree of fineness. Their canoes or boats are the neatest we ever saw, and composed of two different coloured woods, the bottom being dark, the upper part light, and furnished with an out-rigger. Besides these, they have another mode of conveying themselves in the water, upon very light flat pieces of board, which we called shark-boards, from the similitude the anterior part bore to the head of that fish. Upon these they will venture into the heaviest surfs, and paddling with their hands and feet get on at a great rate. Indeed, we never saw people so active in the water, which almost seems their natural element.

O'neehow, which is the westernmost island, is very small, and rather low. It produces sugarcane, plaintains, sweet potatoes, yams, and salt;

salt; in the two latter articles it exceeds A'towi. The inhabitants are not numerous; their houses, &c. are exactly like those of the above mentioned isle.

CHAP. XIII.

In the afternoon of the 2d of February, the Discovery joined her consort, proceeded in a N. N. E. and N. E. direction for the coast of America. On the 13th, our lat. was 31 deg. 21 min. N. and long. 205 deg. 12 min. E. we had smooth water, and open cloudy weather, with a swell from the N. E. On the 16th. we began to find it cold, the thermometer standing at 56 deg. This is not so much to be wondered at, considering we had spent near a twelvemonth between the tropics. From this time to the 23d, our weather was in general clear and pleasant, with fine breezes from the S. W. we had some albatrosses and petrels about us, and the sea was in general pretty smooth. On the 24th, it became very hazy and foggy, which continued more or less till the 1st of March. Our course during this time was nearly N. E. On the 25th, at seven in the morning, we passed a log of wood with barnacles on it; and on the 27th, being in latitude 43 deg. 47 min. N. and longitude 224 deg. 38 min. 30 seconds E. we passed another. In the night we observed the aurora borealis very strong, between

between the N. N. W. and N. E. and the next day saw several whales about. The weather now became warmer; the thermometer, which had been as low as 48 deg. rose to 53 and 54 deg. and we had calms till the 3d of March, when a breeze sprung up, though not a very favourable one, our course being little better than E. S. E. We saw to-day some divers, which induced us to think we were not far from land.

The 5th, was cloudy and hazy, with light winds inclinable to calms, with a swell from the northward; and on the 6th, we passed several pieces of drift-wood and some rock-weed. The water being discoloured, captain Cook ordered the lead to be hove, but got no ground. In the afternoon we saw two seals, several whales, and some porpusses. The next day, the 7th, at day-light, being nearly in latitude 44 deg. 33 min N. and longitude 235 deg. 36 min E. we saw land, being part of America, bearing N. E. At eight, the extremes bore N. N. E. and S. E. by E; they appeared the highest part of the land, and made in several bluff capes and small bays or inlets, the whole forming a deep bay, the extremes of the land in sight being the two points of it. At nine, the water having the appearance of soundings, we got a cast of the lead, and found bottom at ninety-five fathom. We saw a great number of birds of the gull kind.

The next day we had a strong breeze from the westward. The air was much colder than yesterday, with open cloudy weather, but very
unset-

unsettled and squally, with showers of hail. The wind not proving favourable for exploring the coast, we stood to the southward, to avoid getting too near the land. The 9th, was equally as unsettled as the day before; sometimes being calm, at others squally. In the morning there was no land in sight, but at two in the afternoon we saw it extending from N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. to N. E. by E. but at a good distance.

The weather on the 10th was heavy, dark, and cloudy, with showers of hail, the air cold and piercing. In the course of the night we had a favourable shift of wind, which we took the advantage of, and stood in for the land; and in the morning at six, were well in with it, the northern extreme making in a bluff point with white cliffs, and which proved to be Cape Blanco, bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and the southern one making in a long low point S. E. by E. our distance from the shore about seven miles. The land near the shore was of a moderate height: the hills were covered with stait tall trees of the fir kind, and where they were but thinly scattered, the ground was covered with snow. There were a number of white sandy beaches, which at a distance appeared like chalk cliffs: this part of the coast runs nearly N. and S. and in a stait direction, without the least appearance of a bay or inlet. During the night, we had frequent squalls with showers of hail and snow which continued more or less the best part of the next day. The squalls were generally so heavy, as to oblige us to

to get down our top-gallant-yards, and close reef our top-sails. As the wind continued so long to the westward, and so fresh withal, we could do nothing more than stand off and on, which plan we continued till the 15th, but we fell to leeward considerably. Our weather was now dark and cloudy, with a nasty moist atmosphere: in the afternoon, the wind being more moderate, we wore ship, and stood in for the land again. In the night, we had light airs and calms. On the 16th, we had moderate breezes with cloudy weather, and in the afternoon saw several whales. The 17th, and part of the 18th, were rainy and disagreeable; but the 19th was fine, clear, and pleasant, with a fine little breeze from the S. S. E. which in the afternoon, almost died away, and in the course of the night shifted to the northward. We continued however to stand in for the land, and the next day a hawk was seen flying round the ships.

In the night the vessels lost sight of each other; but the Discovery firing a gun, the Resolution answered it with a light. The next day we had the wind from the southward, which in the afternoon freshened up, but towards evening it became squally and rainy, when it shifted to its old corner, W. by N. our latitude to day at noon was 45 deg. 50 min. N.

On the 22d, we had a fine breeze and open cloudy weather; and at half past seven saw the land bearing N. by E. At eight, we were about twelve leagues from it: our latitude at noon was

47 deg. 20 min. N. At four in the afternoon, the southern extreme bearing E. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. terminated in a low point, and continued level as far to the northward as W. by N. it then became high, and mountainous, inland, while the sea-coast was of a moderate height, forming several deep bays, and vallies, with broken land.

The northern extreme bore N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and was also level, but not so low as the southern, and had two remarkable round hills inland; our distance from the nearest shore was about five leagues.

At six, the extremes bore N. by W. and E. S. E. the northern extreme about ten leagues distant; a high round hill, N. N. E. and a rock detached from the main land, N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Within this rock the land was broken, and had much the appearance of a harbour. All this part of the coast was well stocked with wood, and afforded the most promising appearance of any we had yet seen. At half past six we had a heavy swell, setting in upon the land. As our water began to grow rather short, we were this day put to an allowance of two quarts a day per man.

The next day was thick, heavy, rainy, and disagreeable, with squalls, on which account, though the winds blew from the S. S. W. we stood off from the land. The 24th, was in general pleasant, but the 25th was thick and rainy, with lulls and squalls alternately. At noon, our latitude was 48 deg. 28 min. N. and the next day we had a very heavy swell from the W.

W. S. W. On the 28th, we had upon cloudy weather, but about ten it became foggy, and the ships lost sight of each other: signals being made and answered, they soon ascertained their situation with respect to distance, and the fog clearing away, they resumed their course together.

Early the next morning, having moderate breezes and fine weather, we thought we descried land, so tacked and stood in for it. We had a great number of porpoises about, which were variegated with black and white. At half past nine, we plainly saw the land upon our weatherbow making very high, with snow upon the tops of the hills, and at twelve had land all round us, our latitude being 49 deg. 28 min. N. We had a fine breeze, and as there was some prospect of finding a harbour, Captain Cook continued to stand on. At three in the afternoon, we were about three leagues distant from it; it appeared very woody, and in one part we descried an opening, which bid very fair to suit our purpose. Captain Cook therefore gave orders for bearing away, and at four we were close in shore, running up what appeared to be a deep sound, having twenty and thirty fathoms of water. Soon after, two or three canoes, with several of the natives on board, put off and came to the ships, but at first kept at some distance, and addressed us in a very harsh and uncouth language, after which they by degrees came along-side. They were painted red, and

some wore a kind of garment edged with fur, and fastened across the shoulders like the New Zealand hahoos. One of them had several skins sewed together, and thrown over his shoulders.

The captains gave them several things, such as hatchets and nails, but they did not seem to understand their uses, and afterwards they returned to the shore. This sound appeared to be very extensive, and contained many small islands. At seven, the Resolution let go her anchor in eighty-four fathom, muddy bottom, and at half past, the Discovery anchored in seventy fathom.

Early in the morning, Monday 30th, many of the Americans came off to the ships, of whom we purchased a considerable number of bear, wolf, lynx, and seabeaver skins, for which we gave them knives, looking-glasses, red cloth, and small hatchets. They were to all appearance a miserable set of beings: they were under the middle size, and ill-made, their legs being small and ancles large, which is probably occasioned by their continually sitting with their legs under them. Their colour was lighter than any we had yet met with, but rendered black by filth and dirt. Most of them were daubed over their arms, face, and indeed almost their whole bodies, with red earth. Some of them had the lower part of their face, that is from the bottom of the nose to the chin, of a darker colour. The hair was long and shaggy, and powdered as it were, with the down of birds, and daubed
with

with the same colour as their bodies. Their face was broad, with high cheek-bones, mouth wide, nose rather flat, and their teeth bad and uneven. Upon their heads they wore a kind of bonnet, shaped like a tin-cover, the top of it flat. Most of them had a kind of cloak apparently made of the bark of a tree, the bottom was ornamented with a long fringe composed of the same materials as the cloak; that part which surrounded the neck being trimmed with the fur of the sea-beaver.

Some were clothed with the skins of bears and wolves sewed together. Their canoes were different from any we had seen before; they were wide, without an out-rigger, and rather pointed at both ends; when they paddle, they sit in the bottom. Their paddles were about five feet long, rather broad in the middle, and terminating in a long narrow point. In one or two of their canoes were several women, whom we at first could scarcely distinguish from the men, their dress being the same; but upon a closer examination, we found that their faces were not ornamented like those of the men, and that with respect to stature, they were in general shorter.

There was one article of trade which some of these people exposed to sale to-day, that we never saw before in any country: this was several human skulls and dried hands. Some of our seamen made signs of eating the flesh, which signs they readily made too, probably because

they saw us do it; and from this circumstance they were pronounced to be cannibals, though it is not unlikely but that we were too hasty in forming our conjectures.

The masters of both ships were sent this morning in search of a more secure birth for them, this being too open and exposed; and the launches were dispatched to fill some of our casks at the first convenient watering-place, of which there appeared to be plenty. One or two of the officers went on shore in quest of game, but met with nothing but a raccoon, which they saw sporting on the side of a mossy rock, and which they brought on board. They found the shore so encumbered with rocks, and the fallen decaying trunks of trees, which, as well as the living ones, were so close to each other, as almost to prevent a person from penetrating to any distance. In the evening the masters returned with an account of a convenient place, with a handy spot for watering, but then the entrance was too narrow to risque the ships: they likewise found another, at no great distance from this, but there was no watering-place; so both were rejected, and it was agreed that the vessels should next day be removed to a cove, not far from the spot where they then lay; and as the shore was steep-to, and no danger could happen in consequence of rocks or shoal-water, they were to be secured to the trees on shore by hawsers.

Tuesday

Tuesday [31st] the greatest part of this day was spent in moving the ships into the before mentioned cove, and securing them. In the morning the natives came, as yesterday, to traffic with us, but they were not so well supplied. The news of our arrival in this place seemed to have spread a good deal, for several canoes from more distant parts visited us to-day, and brought a large stock of furs, most of which we bought at an easy rate. They were very fond of brass buttons, pieces of copper and brass, particularly if bright, and pewter and tin, which they converted into bracelets, being very fond of shew. Their hair was generally parted on the top of their heads, and when sprinkled or powdered with the down of birds, is deemed full dressed. These people make use of bone pata-patows, nearly of the same form as those of New Zealand, but rather longer and narrower; these they ornament with carved work. Their language proved very difficult for us to learn, being rough and harsh, and abounded with consonants, particularly *t*, *s*, and *k*.

Wednesday, April 1st. The morning a wooding-party were sent on shore, and the astronomers observatories and instruments were erected upon a rock, not far from the ships, which was called the Astronomers Rock. In the afternoon boats were dispatched for the purpose of finding spruce, to brew for the ship's company: they returned in the evening with several kinds, though none of them the right American

spruce. This afternoon there was a little disturbance amongst the Indians; one of them had been guilty of some offence, upon which the chief of the party ordered all the canoes on shore; the criminal was taken out, and six of the people stripped themselves, and gave him a good beating; his goods were handed to him, and he was desired to come there no more.

We purchased a few fish and muscles to-day, which proved very good. This being an article that we wished to encourage them to bring, we gave a good price for, and afterwards scarce ever wanted fish. We found ourselves not a little disappointed at the very scanty supply of game this place afforded. Before our arrival, every one was employed in getting his fowling piece in order, and forming bullets, as we fully expected to meet with plenty of hares and deer; but, so far from that, we scarce saw a single duck.

Thursday 2d. A new party of Indians, in four canoes, arrived this morning, who before they began to trade, entertained us with one of their songs and dances. One of them got up and danced, at the same time singing, while several others beat time with their paddles against the side of their canoes, and at a particular instant they all joined with him in a kind of chorus.

This continued for the space of fifteen or twenty minutes, after which they came alongside, and we bought variety of skins, particularly some of the spotted lynx, which were very beautiful.

Friday

Friday 3d. The brewers, wooders, and waterers, were very busily employed on shore, in their several departments. The water was exceeding good. Several shooting parties were out to-day, but returned without any kind of success, having seen only a shag or two, a few gulls, and here and there a small flock of plovers upon the rocks, all which were so shy as not to come within reach of their guns.

Saturday 4th. About ten this morning we were alarmed by an unaccountable uproar among the Indians, who were paddling about in strange confusion, and talking with more than ordinary vehemence. After some altercation they proceeded to the place where the Resolution's people were wooding and watering, and some began to collect stones with great eagerness, whilst others ran into the woods and pulled down the branches of trees, which they formed into spears. This appearance alarmed all our parties on shore who soon after hailed the ships for arms, which were immediately sent, and they drew themselves up in the best order they could. The observatories were guarded by a party armed with musquets and cutlasses, and those on board were equally diligent in securing arms and pointing the great guns to the spot where they were assembled; for we expected that they intended to attack the ships, as well as our parties on shore.

They observed us arming, and gave us to understand that they did not mean to molest us, but that a strong party of their enemies were

coming to attack them. After a short consultation, they threw away their stones, hauled their canoes upon the shore, and prepared themselves for battle, getting their spears in order, and wetting the handles, that they might grasp them the firmer. Soon after the enemy appeared, consisting of fourteen large canoes filled with people: at sight of the ships they stopped, and appeared at a loss in what manner to proceed. They debated some time, and at last dispatched a canoe to our party, and a warm dispute was carried on for some time on both sides. It appeared evident, that nothing prevented their falling upon our friends but the ships, which they apprehended would interfere in the dispute. Things continued in this state near two hours, when both parties, after a deal of menacing, agreed to make up matters for the present, and thus the affair ended.

Sunday 5th. About seven this morning we expected the two parties would engage: challenges were given on both sides, they threw stones, brandished their spears, and advanced with their canoes towards each other, as if coming to immediate action, when the chief of our party, evidently in a passion, got up and made a speech. The enemy repeated the challenge, which they gave in a rude singing manner, accompanied by all the people, who likewise beat time as it were against the sides of their canoes with their paddles, shook their spears, and went off in triumph.

We

We had a little bustle to-day alongside the ships; one of the natives stole a bear's-skin out of a canoe, whilst the owner's back was turned, who soon after missed it, and charged the person who was in the next canoe with the theft, and who in fact really did take it. He denied the charge, however, and the other still persisted in his accusation, and began to search for it: the thief upon this took up his paddle, and struck the other over the head, which made the blood run pretty freely: the other snatched up a kind of knife, which they usually carry with them, made a stroke, and cut one of his fingers nearly off; upon this parties were formed on both sides, and after much altercation the affair ended.

Monday 6th. The natives to-day supplied us plentifully with fish; we also bought near twenty gallons of train-oil, and a quantity of blubber, and several bales of fish dried in smoke, which eat much like our red-herrings. The Resolution's fore-mast, upon examination, proved so bad, that captain Cook thought it necessary to get it out to repair.

Tuesday 7th. The weather which had hitherto been fine clear, and pleasant, was to-day cloudy and foggy, and appeared very inclinable to change, we had likewise but few canoes about us. The best part of the day was employed in getting out the Resolution's mast, which, with the assistance of most of the Discovery's hands, and a great deal of trouble, was at last effected. In the course of the night we had several heavy squalls.

squalls from the eastward, and the whole of the next day was very rainy, and the wind at times blew a perfect hurricane. Not a canoe came near us the whole day. In the evening the squalls were so violent and incessant, that we were under some apprehension lest the Discovery's cable and hawsers should part: with much difficulty her small-bower-anchor was carried out, which secured her effectually.

Thursday 9th. In the course of the squalls last night, the Resolution sprung her mizen-mast, which therefore was obliged to be got out, and a new one placed in its room. We were fortunate in being at a place where all sizes of them could be procured, and with very little trouble. Several skulls and hands were purchased to-day as curiosities, and we bought plenty of fish, but skins of every kind were become scarce.

Friday 10th. From this day to the 17th, nothing occurred worth mentioning. The weather was very unsettled, being sometimes rainy, at other times foggy, and always cloudy. Three new canoes arrived, laden with various articles and some good furs, which were purchased much cheaper than any we had yet bought.

Thursday 16th. The weather now began to alter for the better. The Resolution's people were busily employed in getting out the mizen-mast, forming the new one, and getting the fore-mast alongside. We had many canoes, with Indians about us, with whom we trafficked for fish and train-oil; but sometimes they were cunning

ning enough to cheat us, by filling up the bladders in which it was generally contained, with water, and now and then we found in some nothing but water.

Several of their women were alongside to-day, who varied in no one particular from the men in their drefs. These we were given to understand, were quite at the service of any body who would pay them handsomely; but they met with few customers, as the fair ones were both old and ugly.

From the 17th to the 22d, the weather was fine and pleasant, and all hands were busy in their several departments.

Captain Cook in his pinnace, attended by the Discovery's cutter, went up the sound to make his observations upon the different parts of it. In the course of his excursion, he discovered two of their towns, one at a good distance from the other, at both of which he landed, and experienced very civil treatment from the natives. Their houses were very indifferent, built of wood, and stunk abominably of fish, vast numbers of which were hung up to dry in every part of them.

On Tuesday the 21st, the Resolution's new mizen-mast was got in, and the next morning a fleet of fourteen canoes arrived from the south point of the cove. They advanced with great order and regularity, singing to the time of their paddles, the stroke of which they accompanied with a small bundle of scallop-shells, the
noise

noise of which rendered the whole not unpleasant. One of the canoes, which appeared to be the principal one, and was very large and painted, preceded the rest, and paraded backwards and forwards before the ships in a curious manner. After this piece of ceremony was ended, they divided into two parties; one going to the Resolution, the other to the Discovery, and a trade was opened on both sides, but they set a high price upon their goods.

These people were very stout; some of their heads were ornamented with feathers tied upon a small twig of a tree, and stuck in their hair; some wore a kind of necklace, and others were decorated with the green boughs of trees. Most of their faces were painted red, and some all over their bodies; their clothing varied but little from what we had seen before, except one who wore a large skin, apparently that of the elk, with the hair off, and ornamented with various figures in black.

At nine in morning, the captains again visited the first of the Indian towns, which lies near the entrance of the harbour, where they were as well received as yesterday. It consisted of two rows of houses, very ill built, and admitting both wind and rain; the stench was very disagreeable, and might be smelt at some distance. Their furniture consisted of a few baskets and boxes, in which they put their fishing-tackle, &c. the remaining part of the house being ornamented with rows of dried fish. Upon the beach were
 ninety-

ninety-four canoes, and the number of inhabitants were computed to be about four hundred.

In the afternoon, one of the servants of the Resolution's gun-room, from some provocation received from one of the natives, wounded him in the upper part of his arm: the Indian was greatly enraged, quitted the ship, and went into his canoe, where he made a long harangue, and threatened very hard. The affair was not enquired into, and the man, though possibly very deserving of it, was not punished.

Thursday 23d. We were now employed in bending our sails, and getting all ready for sea. The Indians for several days past brought very fine spring onions, which we very gladly bought, and they afterwards supplied us so well with them, that almost every one in the ships secured a sea stock.

Friday 24th. About seven in the evening, just as it became dark, seven large canoes came round the north point of the cove. As the time of night was rather unseasonable, and we had some little reason, in consequence of the affair which happened on Wednesday, to suppose they intended some foul play, we got under arms. We might however have saved ourselves the trouble, for they offered not the least insult, and soon after came alongside, and began to trade. They were well laden with skins, particularly beaver, and were well armed.

Saturday 25th. At seven in the morning, the Discovery got up her stream-anchor. The
Indians

Indians who arrived last night, departed about ten this morning, after entertaining us for some time with several of their songs, which differed but little from those mentioned before, except that one of them danced in an antic manner, and wore a mask, which he varied several times during the performance.

The next day, 26, the weather began to assume its old appearance, and the hills were overhung with fogs. At two in the afternoon, the Resolution loosed her hawsers, got up her anchor, and with the assistance of her boats was towed out of the cove; the Discovery followed soon after, and captain Cook, as there was but little wind, began to doubt of clearing the harbour that night, and at first seemed inclinable to stand in for a bay which was situated near the town, but a little after a fine breeze sprung up, which he was determined to make the most of, so both vessels spread all their sails, and made the best of their way out.

C H A P. XIV.

King George's Sound is situated on the N. W. coast of America, and is extensive; that part of it where the ships lay, and which we called Ship-Cove, is in latitude 49 deg. 36 min. N. and longitude 233 deg. 28 min. E. The whole sound is surrounded by high land, which in some places appears very broken and rugged, and is in general covered with wood to the very top.

It

It is well supplied with runs of water, and wood may be procured without any difficulty, as well as masts of any size, for the trees grow remarkably tall and straight. The most prevailing ones are fir of several species, yew, and arbutus; the others are birch, maple, poplar, willow, and elder. Of shrubs there are currant, gooseberry, and rose-trees, marsh cistus, raspberries, whortle-berries, and brambles. The plants are much the same as in our part of the world, such as plantain, dock, cudweed, fumitory, eye bright, saxifrage, nettles, and violets. The soil is rich and loamy inland, but as you approach the shore it becomes more light and sandy.

The only living quadrupeds we saw; were squirrels and raccoons; those which we saw skins of, were the bear, wolf, deer elk, lynx or wild cat, fox, sea-beaver, and otter. The birds are eagles, hawks, ravens, crows, woodpeckers, crested jays, thrushes, a small beautiful species of humming-bird, plovers, ducks, shags, and gulls.

We saw no great variety of fish; what we purchased, were chiefly of the roach and dace kind, and a small fish very like an anchovy. The only shell-fish we observed, were muscles, which were very plentiful among the rocks.

The tides in the cove were regular in their ebb and flow: at the full and change of the moon it was high water at twenty-six minutes after midday; its flow then was eight feet and half.

Besides this flow of the tides, we observed an irregular kind of outset down the cove, which must have been occasioned either by the melting of the snow, or the rain which fell very plentifully at times, and consequently caused a more than usual overflow.

The men, as has been before mentioned, are in general below the middle size, but frequently we saw among them some six feet high, and stout in proportion; but they are all badly made about the legs. Their colour has a strong tinge of the copper, but it is so hid by dirt and filth as not to be discerned without some difficulty. They have but little beards, and the make of their face varies a good deal, some being as broad as they are long, others oval, but in all the cheek-bones are high and prominent.

They were good-natured and friendly, unless provoked; but when affronted their blood rises immediately, and their looks as well as actions plainly shew that they would immediately revenge themselves, if it was in their power. Sometimes they are in terrible passions, which is very evident when they make a speech, or harangue each other; they foam at the mouth, and have the strangest gestures imaginable, and, in fact, appear like perfect madmen.

Their hair is long and shaggy, and naturally black, but so bedaubed with red-earth, grease, and dirt, and various other mixtures, that it is almost impossible to discover its real colour. The men are very whimsical in ornamenting their faces,

faces, and every day seems to produce a new face. When they have a mind to be particular, they make use of a kind of stamp, composed of the small twigs of trees, and formed according to fancy: this they dip into the prepared mixture of black, red or brown earth and oil, and then press it upon their face, which leaves the impression behind. Some black their faces entirely, and then sprinkle small particles of white or black talc, which they have here in abundance, upon it; others make one half of their face black and the other red; in short, there is no end to their fancy. One of their greatest beaux frequently was on board the ships; and in order to observe the manner of painting their faces, a looking-glass was shewn him; which he no sooner found the use of, than he sat down to dress his face, which employed him full two hours; for he no sooner put on one face than he disliked it, and demolished the whole, and continued rubbing out and painting, till he made one that pleased him.

They frequently make a hole through the gristle of the nose, in which they wear small pieces of copper or brass suspended by a thread, and sometimes they fill the orifice with fishes bones.

Upon their heads they wear a kind of bonnet of a very compact texture, from the top of which hangs a tassel made of leather; these bonnets are sometimes made with a round globular top, but in general flat. They are frequently

painted or stained, in a rude though ingenious manner, with the form of some large fish resembling a whale, pursued by several canoes, and a man in one of them in the act of striking him.

Round their shoulders they wear a kind of cloak, made of the interior bark of the fir tree, and formed or wove in the same manner as some of the New Zealand hahoos: the bottom is generally fringed, and the neck part trimmed with the fur of the sea-beaver. Some of them are made of the hair of an animal which resembles wool, but how or where they procured it we could never learn. They likewise wear a kind of short petticoat, composed of the same materials as the cloak, and both sometimes ornamented with an embroidered border.

The men also frequently clothe themselves in the skins of beasts, particularly the bear, wolf, and sea-beaver, and some have the skin of a large animal, which we supposed to be that of the elk or moosedeer, and exceedingly well tanned and dressed, something like our buckskin, but much thicker.

Their ornaments are bracelets, made of horn, or copper; necklaces, made of fishbones, and lengths of platted hair and leather, which they wear upon their ancles and wrists, and sometimes upon both. They have also a method of marking or tattowing themselves, several instances of which we saw; this was upon the arm, and generally was the form of a large fish, much resembling that upon their bonnets.

The

The women are clothed nearly the same as the men, but their faces are not daubed or painted of different colours, though pretty well besmeared with dirt, and they are not possessed of the fragrance of the rose. Notwithstanding these circumstances, some few of our gentlemen got the better of their feelings, so far as to admit them to their bed, in which case the poor creatures always underwent the ceremony of the mop and pail, and their hair was as well combed as time would permit; for it is natural to suppose that such a load of filth must harbour many very disagreeable companions.

It was a prevailing opinion, that the women brought on this occasion, were not of their own tribe, but belonging to some other, which they had overcome in battle. What led us to suppose so, was the different treatment which was observed between these and those who were not exposed in this manner. The former were mute, did not dare to look up, appeared quite dejected, and were totally under the command of those who brought them: the latter on the contrary were as full of conversation as the men, behaved with ease, and, comparatively speaking, evidently were under no kind of controul.

The houses or habitations of these people, are built of wood, and are cold, filthy, and stinking. The roof is nearly flat, and covered with planks, which they can move as occasion requires. They are placed so loosely, and at such a distance from each other, as to admit the

wind and rain with great freedom; the sides are not much more compactly put together, so that they afford but little warmth. At a small distance from the houses a number of poles, with others tied across, were erected, which seemed to be for the purpose of drying fish, and whale's flesh; and in the front of most of the houses was part of the trunk of a very large tree elevated upon posts which must have occasioned them immense labour and pains to raise up in this manner; this we could never learn the use of.

Their furniture has been mentioned before; but at the upper end, if such a distinction can properly be made, of some houses, were placed two large carved pieces of wood, resembling a monstrous face. Some were of opinion that these were what they paid some degree of superstitious respect to, but as we never saw an instance of it, it can be but conjecture.

Their food consists of blubber, fresh and dried fish, muscles, which they have in great abundance, dried whale's flesh, the roes of fish dried, and roots of different kinds, particularly of a species of fern, which has a sweetish taste. They boil their fish in wooden troughs, into which they put a constant succession of red-hot stones, and by that means keep the water simmering till they are sufficiently done. Their drink is water and train-oil, and in the latter they frequently dip their dry muscles and fish.

The interior bark of the fir-tree, is what they manufacture their cloaks of, in general.

After

After it is dry, they beat it with a bone-instrument, which has grooves in it on one side, something like those of the Society Isles, till the fibres are sufficiently separated, after which it is fit for use.

The boxes and chests which these people make are sometimes very large, and ornamented with human teeth and carved work; at the latter they are very clever and ingenious; we purchased of them variety of images in different attitudes, but they principally excel in their imitations of the heads of animals, and the human face, some of which are by no means contemptible.

Their canoes are of various sizes; the largest being capacious enough to contain fifty people, the smallest three. The principal ones are ornamented at the head and stern with human teeth placed in various forms, and their sides with the figures of beasts and large fish, rudely painted in white. They are apparently made out of one tree, but the upper part of the head and stern are separate pieces, and tied on by cords, made of the twisted bark of the fir-tree. They are very dexterous in managing these canoes, and keep very exact time with their paddles, which are about five feet long, the blade and pointed extremity being near two thirds of the whole.

We saw scarce any tools amongst them except knives, which were of a semicircular form, and badly made, but it is evident that they must have others from the manner in which they carve.

These people are very ingenious in making calls to imitate the notes of different birds and animals, by which means they take great numbers; they likewise make use of whalebone springs, like those used with us to catch snipes. Amongst other articles of trade they frequently brought birds of several kinds for sale, particularly a beautiful species of humming bird, and a bird of the snipe kind, and it is not improbable but some of them were caught in this manner.

Their fishing-tackle is of several kinds. That which they use in killing the whale, is sometimes composed of bone, and sometimes of shell. That of bone is about six inches in length, very sharp at the end, and furnished with two barbs, one above the other, the upper end of this is so contrived, by means of a socket, as to fix upon a rod or pole about ten feet in length; this rod is forked at the end, so that two of the pieces of bone are to be fixed on at the same time. To that extremity of the bone, which is placed upon the pole, is tied a long and very strong rope, at the end of which is fixed a sealskin blown up. The animal is no sooner struck than the bone slips out of the socket, and remains fixed in its body, and the seal-skin prevents it from keeping long under water, when they pursue it, and soon pierce it to death with their spears. The others are made of muscle-shells, ground very sharp at the side as well as point, and are exactly upon the same plan as the others.

Their

Their fish-hooks are made of bone, with a very sharp and barbed point; their usual bait are muscles. Their method of catching small fish is by means of a kind of grate, made of small pieces of wood tied together; this they place in the narrow streams or inlets about the time of high water; all the fish which were between this and the sea must of course be left behind at low water.

The weapons used by them are spears, pata-patows, and bows and arrows. The spears are of different lengths and pointed with bone; the pata-patows are made some of wood and others of stone, and nearly of the same form as those of New-Zealand. Their bows are about four feet and half in length, made of yew, and rather round in the middle, from whence they increase in width and become flat, gradually tapering to a point; the string is made of twisted gut. The arrows are near three feet in length, and feathered at one end, the other is sometimes pointed with bone, sometimes with copper, and frequently with muscle-shell, but always barbed.

These people were very fond of pieces of brass, copper, tin, and pewter, particularly if bright, and formed so as to make bracelets: even buttons were good trade: these they tied with a piece of string and put round their wrists. Iron did not appear to be much valued, though they very readily took it: it is certain that they must have some way of procuring it, and probably from the southward towards California, for

they had a number of knives of different sizes, but all made very badly, and in a semicircular form.

One day when trade was going on along-side the Resolution, the natives offered two silver spoons to sale, which were immediately purchased and given to Captain Cook: they appeared to be of a very old make, and were somewhat different from our's in form. We were not able to learn from whence they had them, but this circumstance favours our belief of their having connections to the southward.

C H A P. XV.

We got out of the sound just after dark, steering nearly a west course, to get clear of the land, with a fine gale from the E. S. E. In the course of the night it blew very fresh, and the weather was dark and rainy: in this situation the Resolution sprung a leak in her starboard-quarter, which alarmed captain Cook exceedingly at first, but every one exerting themselves, it was fortunately discovered and stopped. Having lost sight of the Discovery, she lay-to till half past five in the morning, and having joined her, they both proceeded together. About ten, the gale increased, and became so violent, that we took in every sail except the fore-sail, and soon after balanced the mizen. Towards the afternoon it moderated, and about five was nearly calm.

As

As the night approached, the wind again increased with showers of rain, which continued almost the whole of the next day, April 28th, with a heavy rolling sea.

The 29th, was cloudy with moderate gales; our latitude was 51 deg. 56 min. N. and we passed a piece of rock-weed. We now kept about a N. N. E. course, and the next day saw a seal, and a land bird of the snipe kind. May 1st, was moderate and fair, with a few showers of hail, and our latitude was 54 deg. 43 min. N. At half past seven in the evening, we saw the land extending from N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to E. N. E. about six leagues distant. Our weather on the 2d was cloudy, with showers of small rain: but the land was very visible on our starboard-side, appearing very high, and almost covered with snow. It lay in a N. W. and S. E. direction per compass, and the shore appeared bold-to: we passed several inlets, which had the appearance of good harbours. Our latitude at noon was 56 deg. 52 min. N. and we saw a large flock of geese.

The 3d we passed running along shore, as well as light winds would permit us. At noon, the land bore from S. 77 deg. E. to N. 55 deg. W. and at eight in the evening, S. 85 deg. E. and N. 44 deg. W. distant about five leagues. The western extreme appeared as a high mountain, which proved to be mount St. Elias; near which captain Bering anchored in 1741. We passed a great quantity of weed to-day, and saw a seal and a whale.

The

The 4th was fine and clear, with light breezes, which induced us to stand nearer in for the land. Our latitude was 58 deg. 21 min. N. and longitude 220 deg. 36 E. we saw a great number of seals and several whales, with innumerable flocks of gulls and brown petrels.

The 5th. 6th. and 7th. were fine and pleasant, with light winds, and smooth water, which rendered our approach to Cape St. Elias very slow. We had now numbers of whales about, and on the 6th, at three in the afternoon sounded, and found a stiff muddy bottom at the depth of sixty fathom. From the 8th to the 10th, we had scarce any wind. In the evening of the 9th, we saw land to the westward of cape St. Elias, the extremes extending at eight from S. 84 deg. W. to N. 42 deg. E.

Our latitude on the 10th, was 59 deg. 52 min. N. and at noon the land extended from N. 60 deg. W. to E. by N. our distance from the shore about three leagues. We had light airs and calms almost throughout the next day, till towards evening, when a fine breeze sprung up from the eastward. During the calm, captain Cook ordered out a boat, and went on shore at the nearest place, which was an island not above a league from us. He saw a red fox, which made off as soon as it saw him. Whilst he was absent, we sounded two or three times, and found a muddy bottom at thirty fathoms. In the evening we saw many seals in pairs.

The

The 12th was heavy and cloudy, with a breeze from the eastward. At five in the morning, we saw the appearance of an inlet bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and at seven sounded, and got ground at fifty-three fathom, muddy bottom, about six or seven leagues off shore. At eight we bore away, keeping a S. W. course, when that point of it set at five, bore N. by E. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. At noon, we discovered another opening, the easternmost part of which bore due W. our latitude being 59 deg. 54 min. N. At half past twelve we bore away for this opening: at three the weather became hazy and foggy, with small drizzling rain, and at four the Resolution hauled up to N. N. E. for a deep bay on the eastern side of the opening, which formed a cape by the falling back of the land; this cape was named Cape Hinchinbrook. At five our soundings were from five to nine fathoms, and at six we anchored in twelve fathom, muddy bottom. The harbour in which we lay, appeared to be surrounded in every direction by land, which was much higher than at King George's sound, and more covered with snow. The shore was composed almost entirely of rocks, nearly perpendicular, but of no very great height, with here and there a small sandy beach. The trees were of the same kind as at the last place, but not so large or numerous, nor did they grow up to the tops of the mountains.

Soon after we had anchored, a party were sent in the Resolution's pinnace to explore the opposite side of the bay, and our seamen on
board

board got out their hooks and lines, and in a short time caught several fine cod fish, which proved a perfect treat. The pinnace had not been gone above twenty minutes, before they descried two canoes with near thirty Americans in them, paddling towards her. Upon this they pulled back towards the ships, and the canoes followed at some distance. When they arrived pretty near the ships, they began a kind of song, something resembling those of the natives of King George's Sound, at the same time paddling round the ships; this done, they advanced nearer, but could not be persuaded to come alongside. They were a better looking people than the last, and were fat and jolly, as if they lived well. Some were clothed with skins of birds sewed together, and made like a shirt, others had the skins of beasts made in the same form. Two had caps on their heads, nearly the same as at the other place: most of their faces were daubed with red earth, and one had half his face black.

Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of King George's Sound, they were much broader, and apparently more commodious. They consisted of a frame, which was covered with the skin of some large fish, brought over the sides, and was then braced very tight, and fastened in the inside of the canoe: their paddles were roughly made, were very light and differently shaped from the last, not ending in that long point. Their language we did not understand.

The

The boat being alongside, captain Clerke gave one of them a glass bowl, which pleased the man so much that he pulled off his dress, which was made of bird's skins, and threw it into the boat, making signs that it should be carried on board. Another gave one of our people an arrow, which differed in nothing from those of the last place, except in being more clumsily made, and having a deep division at the bone end, for the reception of a pointed stone, or some other substance. These people appeared well disposed, and after a short stay departed.

The 13th. was very thick, cloudy, and hazy, with drizzling rain and squalls. At ten we got up our anchors and made sail. We continued standing on till four in the afternoon, when, though we could see to no great distance, we found we were surrounded with a number of islands or broken land, forming deep sounds, islands, and bays, one of which on the eastern-side we hauled up for. The wind blew in very hard squalls down the bay, with showers of hail and sleet; and the weather being very unsettled, and likely to continue so, it was deemed most prudent to anchor as soon as possible. At five, we were abreast of the bay, and carried soundings from twenty-five to six fathoms, and between eight and nine we let go our anchors in twelve fathoms, with a muddy bottom, in the mouth of a large cove.

In^m the morning about five, several canoes put off, and came alongside the Discovery; but seeing only one or two of our people upon deck, for as it was early the rest were not up, they came on board without asking, and by their behaviour did not appear to be so well disposed as we could have wished. They stole several things in an instant, and upon being desired to return them, one of them pulled out a large knife, which he had beneath his dress, and seemed by his actions to threaten to kill the first man that should oppose him. An other threw the rudder of the small cutter overboard, which he immediately followed, and made off with. These and several other proceedings of the like nature, induced the captain, who had been just informed of what had happened, to order all hands to be called, which was no sooner done, than upon seeing such a number of people coming upon deck, they all made off as fast as they could, got into their canoes, and paddled away.

These people vary in some things from those we saw the day before yesterday. Their dress was made of the guts of fish sewed together, with sleeves down to their wrists; under this they had jackets made of the skins of beasts. They had caps on their heads like the last Indians, and their under lip was cut through lengthwise; through this opening they frequently put their tongues. Some of them had blue beads, and other ornaments fixed in this slit, and also through the gristle of the nose. They had several spears, which

which were all headed with iron; their knives were near eighteen inches long and shaped something like a hanger: these they wore round their necks. From the circumstance of the beads and iron, we thought it probable that they might by some means or other have connexions with the Russians, who have extended their trade an immense way. Their canoes were covered entirely with skins, and a round opening in the middle where the person seats himself, and fastens the skins so tight round his middle as totally to exclude the entrance of water. Their paddles were about four feet long and well made. In the course of the day, the wind was so violent that we thought it necessary to moor the ships.

On the 15th, the wind abated greatly, but the rain continued. At eleven in the morning, several of the Americans came alongside in their canoes, and brought the calumet of peace with them, being conscious possibly that they had not behaved properly the day before. This was the first instance we saw of it; it was a stick about four feet long, upon which in different parts were tied the feathers of birds, and perfectly answered the description given in the Russian voyages and discoveries.

One of them offered it several times to some of our people who were in the boat, alongside, but they taking no notice of him, he at last threw it into the boat. Some few had their faces painted, or rather daubed with red-earth;

and many wore gloves made of the skin of animals, as well as stockings with the hairy side inwards.

They had bows and arrows with them; some of the latter were pointed with copper: we likewise saw a larger kind of arrows or rather darts, some above five feet, others between six and seven feet long. Those of five feet they throw by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small hollow or groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. They are pointed with a piece of bone near four inches long, which readily takes in and out. The larger ones are furnished with a bladder and line, and are for the purpose of killing the sea-beaver.

These people were fond of blue beads, for five or six of which a beaver-skin might be purchased worth ninety or a hundred dollars.

The next day, May 16th, was rainy during the whole morning, but in the afternoon it became fine and pleasant, and we had many canoes alongside trading. This place abounds with innumerable flocks of wild fowl, and many shooting-parties were out, but they always returned with very little game, occasioned by the great shyness of the birds, which probably are harrassed a good deal by the natives.

At half past two the next morning, we weighed and made sail with a light breeze, our
course

course being about S. W. but we found ourselves so furrounded with land, that we were at a loss in some measure which way to proceed. At eight, our soundings were from fifty to fifteen fathoms at about one mile from shore, and from fifteen to five off a cluster of rocks.

At eleven, we shoaled from ten to five fathom, and soon after the winds became very light, and the weather had an unpromising appearance, in consequence of which captain Cook gave orders to bring the ships to an anchor, as soon as they could be got to a convenient spot. At noon, our latitude was 60 deg. 51 min. N. and at half past two we came-to in nineteen fathom, a muddy bottom.

The captain having received intelligence from some of the natives of an opening at or near the bottom of the bay we now were in, thought it a good opportunity to ascertain the truth of it. Soon after, boats from both ships were sent, well manned and armed, with orders to the officers to proceed in different directions, and penetrate as far as they thought prudent. They returned in the evening, but discovered nothing of any consequence.

The next morning at half past three we again weighed and made sail, our course being nearly due south, but the wind was so light that we made poor work of it. We were now standing across to the opposite or western side of this extensive sound. At noon, our latitude was 60 deg. 31 min. N. and our longitude about 212 deg.

36 min. E. In the afternoon about four, a large canoe, with seven Americans, overtook us, and made signs for a boat to be got out, and go alongside them, to trade. This request of their's was complied with, but nothing was purchased except a cap, as they did not appear fond of our articles of trade, which consisted of knives, hatchets, and beads of different sorts. They varied in no respect from those we saw on the 16th, except having more ornaments in the slit of their under lip. At five the wind shifted, which obliged us to tack; at half past six our soundings were fifty fathoms, the bottom coarse sand, and at ten they varied from twelve to twenty fathoms.

We were obliged to tack frequently in the night, and proceeded with great care and circumspection, there being many rocks scattered in various parts of the channel we were now entering.

As we went on the next day, May 19th, we saw an incredible number of whales and seals sporting round us, from whence we concluded that we were nearly out of the sound, and not far from the sea. Soon after the weather became thick and foggy, with small rain, and at half past ten our soundings were twenty-two fathom, muddy bottom. At five in the afternoon we sounded again, and got from thirty-three to twenty-one fathom, and at nine let go our anchors for the night, in twenty-seven fathom, about three miles from the eastern shore.

The

The next morning was thick and foggy. About ten, a fine little breeze sprung up from the N. N. E. which both ships took the advantage of, weighed their anchors, and made all sail. The best part of the afternoon we were standing through the channel, and at five, being clear of it, and again in the open sea, we saw land as far to the southward as S. 53 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. which extreme at six bore S. 7 deg. W.

Sandwich Sound, so called by captain Cook in honour of his lordship, is very large and extensive. It is formed on the western side by a long island, which was called Montague Island, and is bounded on the eastern side, by the continent, at least what we supposed to be the continent, though it is not improbable but it may be a chain of islands.

From what little we saw of it, the productions appear to be much the same as at King George's Sound. The soil is deep and black, intermixed in some places with streaks of blue clay.

It affords excellent shelter for all kinds of water fowl, but they are shy to a degree. The principal land-birds we saw were eagles, thrushes, grouse, owls, snipes, and several smaller birds. We met with no quadrupeds, but frequently saw the tracks of bears in the snow.

The inhabitants of this place seem to form the line of connection between those of King George's Sound, and the natives of Unalashka,

and the other western parts of America. Like the former, they daub their faces, have the same strange gestures, though not in so high a degree, when they make a speech, wear nearly the same caps, and some of them are clothed in the skins of beasts. But they are much more similar to the latter; their hair is cut short: they have the same bladder dress; their canoes are covered with skin in the same manner; they have a hole in the under lip, in which they fix ornaments, and many of their weapons are exactly the same.

C H A P. XVI.

We had a fine fresh breeze on the twenty-first, from the N. W. which assisted us greatly, and we continued to trace the coast, which ran nearly in a S. W. direction. The land was not so high as that of Sandwich Sound, but equally rugged and uneven, and almost entirely covered with snow. Our latitude, at noon, was 59 deg. 30 min. N. and our longitude 208 deg. 44 min. E. We passed much rock-weed, straw, pieces of sticks, and feathers, which most likely came from some inlet or river.

The next day, 22d, our breeze changed to a gale, which handled us very roughly, and made us close-reef our top-fails, but we still kept nearly a S. S. W. course, though at a good distance from the land. At eleven we saw more land,

land, bearing S. W. and at noon were in latitude 58 deg. 23 min. N. In the afternoon the wind became more moderate, and at six we tacked ship, and stood to the northward.

The 3d was clear and pleasant, but rendered cold by the wind which blew off the land. At half past ten, being well in with it, tacked; at noon, our latitude was 59 deg. 9 min. N. The land here formed a considerable bay, and bid fair for some discovery, which induced Captain Cook to examine it. The whole of the next day was spent in turning to windward, and we saw numbers of shags, gulls, and puffins.

The weather on the 25th, was pleasant with a fine breeze from the N. N. E. our course being N. W. At seven, our soundings were from thirty-two to twenty fathom, with a rocky bottom. About nine, we saw the appearance of a wide inlet, upon our larboard bow, which we hoped to derive some advantage from, and soon after observed a large smoke upon a part of the land, which had the appearance of an island. At noon, the eastern part of this supposed island bore S. 37 deg. E. about nine leagues distant, and the inlet mentioned above N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. for which we were now directing our course, our latitude being 58 deg. 40 min. N. At three, we were standing through the inlet, which proved to be a channel through a cluster of small, high rocky isles, the southernmost of which was a remarkable sugar-loaf hill, and round the sides and top of which innumerable

flocks of brown petrels were flying. This, at half past three, bore E. by S. and the northernmost isle bore due north; our distance from shore being a mile and a half, and our soundings from thirty-six to seventeen fathoms. At half past four, finding we could not pass between the isles as we at first intended, on account of the ebb-tide which was running very strong, we bore away in order to go round the cluster, the sugar-loaf hill bearing N. 59 deg. E. and a very high snowy mountain to the westward, which was called Mount St. Augustine, N. 75 deg. W. At seven, we were pretty well in, but discerned more land than we expected.

The next morning, 26th, the wind chopped round to the north, which was the very direction we wanted to steer in: our course now was E. N. E. and it blew fresh at times, with a much heavier sea than could be expected considering the manner in which we were surrounded by land. At noon our latitude was 59 deg. 9 min. N. when Mount St. Augustine bore N. 84 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant about nine or ten leagues. At five, we were standing into a bay, which appeared to contain a good harbour; but at half past six we tacked and stood out again, our soundings being twenty-three fathom, with a bottom of sand and mud.

The land which surrounded this bay was high, and had a barren aspect; the bottom was in many places clothed with trees, but they were apparently stunted in their growth; the middle
and

and tops of the hills had not a shrub of any kind upon them, and seemed to be little else than solid rock. The snow lay, but in small quantities, owing perhaps to the winds which at times blow here very violently. At seven the Resolution split her jib in a squall.

On the 27th, we had thick, foggy weather, with small drizzling rain, and light breezes, for the best part of the day. At ten, our soundings were forty fathoms, with a rocky bottom. Soon after the wind shifted, when we steered a N. N. W. course, and at five in the afternoon it hauled farther round to the southward. We were now standing up a channel, which was formed on the east side by a track of low level land, and on the west by a high broken land, making in large lumps, which probably form islands. At seven our breeze freshened from the southward, which however proved but of little use to us, as the tide was so strong that we lost ground considerably. At nine, we had light airs and calms; and at twelve our soundings were twenty-three fathoms, the bottom sand and gravel.

The next morning at two, our soundings were from twenty-six to thirty-three fathoms. At five, we found the tide running so strong as to carry us astern at a very considerable rate; we therefore thought it necessary to anchor, and the Discovery, having got ground at twenty-two fathom, a great sandy bottom, let go her's, but having neglected to secure the cable properly

with the dog-stopper, the tide carried her so fast a-stern, that had not the splice of the other cable been too large to pass easily through the hawse-hole, in all probability she would have lost both anchor and cables. The Resolution was not so lucky, having lost her anchor and cable. After the ships were secured, the log was tried to ascertain the rate of the tide, which was found to run at the rate of four miles an hour.

At ten we weighed and made sail, and at half past eleven anchored again. The Resolution sent two of her boats to endeavour to regain her anchor and cable, but they did not succeed. Some time after, we saw a canoe, with two Indians in it, making for the ships, but the tide prevented their reaching us. The eastern shore seemed to be inhabited, as we saw several smokes and fires upon it, for which reason captain Cook called it Smoky Cape. At eight in the evening, having a fine breeze from the eastward, both vessels weighed and made sail, though the tide was at that time against us. The tide that sets to the northward, we found by a lead and line to be a flood-tide, a circumstance which proved unfavourable to our wishes, as we were at first in hopes of finding a passage into the northern seas, without going any farther to the westward.

At five the next morning, May 29th, wind and tide being against us, we came-to in twenty-four fathoms, the bottom sand and stones. At half past twelve we weighed, the tide setting to
the

the northward, and at six let go our anchor again. The low land on the eastern side had a fertile appearance, and was well covered with trees; it was very level, with here and there a small eminence, upon the tops of which was a little snow, the other parts being entirely free from it. Behind this runs a ridge of snowy mountains. The western shore consisted of very irregular snowy hills; the northermost part had a ridge of low land apparently at some distance from the hills. We saw very few birds about, it being near the breeding season; now and then a porpus shewed his back above water.

May 30th, at one in the morning, we weighed and made sail. The tide setting to the southward, ended about three quarters past twelve. At three our soundings were from nineteen to twenty-six fathom, a sandy bottom, and at four the north point of the eastern land bore N. 4 deg. W. At half past six, the northerly tide having run its course, we anchored about five miles from the western shore. The northern extreme of the eastern land now made in a kind of bluff, bearing N. by W. and seemed to make a curve to the N. E. the western shore altered its appearance, and became considerably lower, tending towards the eastern. At noon our latitude observed was 60 deg. 37 min. N. and at one we weighed, and proceeded up the river, for such it appeared to be. Soon after, two canoes from the eastern shore, with an Indian in each, came alongside, of whom we bought a small

small skin, and a harpoon or dart, like those of the natives of Sandwich Sound. They appeared to be the same kind of people, and differed in no one respect; their canoes too were the same. At six our soundings were from forty-two to thirteen fathom, and at eight we let go our anchors in twenty fathom, with a bottom of yellow clay and mud. This tide befriended us greatly; for notwithstanding we were turning to windward, and of course obliged to tack frequently, we made nearly twelve leagues. We were now about two miles from the western side of the river, which had a fine and beautiful appearance, being every where covered with trees. The shores now tended to the N. W.

At three quarters past one, the next morning, 31st, the stream setting to the southward ended, and at three we got up our anchors, made sail, and pursued our course. At six we had from thirty two to fifteen fathoms; at half past eight the tide ended, setting to the northward, and at half past nine we anchored again. Soon after, five canoes, viz. two large and three small, with several of the natives, who had for some time been endeavouring to overtake us, came under our stern; in each of the large canoes were sixteen or seventeen people, in the small ones two. We purchased very little of them, as their visit seemed to be the effect of curiosity, and they were not very willing to trade. Their dress was made of the skins of small animals sewed together, and furnished with sleeves.

This

This animal is called by the Russians, *yevrashka*. Their cheek bones were very high, and one of them had some blue beads in the slit of the under-lip. At first, the weather was very thick and hazy, which greatly obstructed our vision; but about noon it became more clear, and we saw a large inlet on the eastern shore, bearing N. 76 deg. E. which from its situation may possibly have some connexion with Sandwich Sound: the rest of our view was terminated on all sides by land, some of which was very low, and nearly on a level with the water. Our latitude to-day by account was 61 deg. 12 min. N.

At three, captain Cook sent his and the *Discovery's* cutters to explore an opening behind the low land. At four we weighed and stood nearer in shore, and at half past six came-to again. Some little time after, several Americans, in seven canoes, put off from the western shore, and came along-side. We purchased several articles in the curiosity-way, such as bows, arrows, skin-jackets, darts, and martin skins. They had a great number of blue beads, which they prized very highly: it is very probable that the Russians from Ochotszk and Kamtschatka visit these people frequently and regularly, on account of the furs, &c. which no doubt turn to very good account.

At one in the morning, June 1st, the cutters returned, with an account of having found an opening to the north-eastward, behind the narrow ridge of land, into a kind of river or lake;

lake; the broadest part they were in, was between four and five leagues across, the narrowest about two miles. It appeared to extend a considerable way, and they had soundings from fifteen to twenty fathoms, the bottom sand and small stones.

At four we weighed, and at eight the Resolution made the signal for the Discovery's large cutter, which with their own were sent to explore the inlet on the eastern shore. Our soundings were from seven to seventeen fathoms. When we got up our anchors this morning, we found from the most exact observations we could make, that the tide had fallen between twenty-three and twenty-four feet. At eleven we anchored, and at half past, the cutters returned; the wind and tide were so much against them, as to prevent their entrance; but they saw enough to convince them that it was needless to attempt any thing farther, as the land to all appearance joined on all sides. Having thus explored this river as far as it was possible to carry the ships, nothing now remained, but for us to make the best of our way back again. Captain Cook called it the River Turnagain. At half past two, the cutters, with on officer, were sent to take possession of this part of America, and at four we weighed, but at seven let go our anchors again. At half past seven the boats returned: they had met with several of the natives, who at first appeared afraid, and retired among the trees, but afterwards, finding our people

people had no intention to hurt them, they readily came forward. They had many dogs with them, one of which was bought, and carried on board as a fresh meal, and two or three pieces of salmon, which were also purchased. The soil was good, but only about a foot deep, under which was a bed of cold sand with a small mixture of clay: there were abundance of trees, such as willows, birch, poplar, elder, fir, and many raspberry, rose, and currant-trees. At half past eleven, the tide being favourable, we weighed, and at twelve the point where the cutters landed, which was called Point Possession, bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. our distance off shore six or seven miles. Our latitude to-day was 61 deg. 6. min. N.

We came-to at five the next morning, in seventeen fathoms, sandy bottom, about four miles off shore, when Point Possession bore N. 61 deg. E. Several of the natives came off to us in their canoes, of whom we bought bows, arrows, quivers, and various other articles in the curiosity-way, as also ermine, martin, and fox skins.

At half past ten the tide became favourable and we weighed, but at two the Resolution struck on a bank with only two and two and half fathoms of water upon it, where she continued till flood-tide. The discovery immediately anchored as per signal from the Resolution. At six, it being nearly high water, she hoisted her sails and got off, standing out beyond the shoal

shoal, when she anchored. Many of the natives now came to us, of whom we bought some excellent fresh salmon, and likewise some large pieces of halibut. This afforded us a treat which we had not experienced before for a long time, and which we now stood much in need of.

The next morning, June 3d, about six, soon after we had anchored, a large canoe, entirely laden with fresh salmon, came along-side; the whole cargo was soon bought, and at a very moderate price, for half a salmon might be purchased for a nail or button. We also bought a basket full of small red berries, resembling currants, which made most excellent pies. We now for the first time observed, that some of the Americans made use of double paddles, like those of the Esquimaux. At eleven we got up our anchors and made sail, but the wind, which had now shifted to the southward, impeded us in our progress greatly. About three the Discovery was near being aground, having shoaled her water all at once from seventeen to five fathoms, but with the assistance of her small cutter she was towed into deeper water.

We now went on, anchoring and weighing alternately every six hours, and the nearer we approached the sea, the less we were affected by the tide. On the 5th, about eleven in the morning, being near the spot where the Resolution lost her anchor and cable, she got out two of her boats, and endeavoured to recover them by sweeping, but they failed in their attempts,

attempts, and were obliged to leave both behind. In the afternoon we observed a smoke upon the top of a high mountain, which, with the assistance of our glasses, we plainly saw issued out of a small fissure or opening near its summit. At half past seven we anchored, when Mount St. Augustine bore S. 60 deg. W. the volcano, N. 65 deg. W. and the extremes of the rocky isles, which we passed in coming up, and which captain Cook denominated, Barren Isles, from their desolate appearance, S. 9 deg. E. to S. 30 deg. E. our distance from the eastern shore being seven miles. At twelve we weighed for the last time in the river, and made sail with a fine breeze from the W. S. W. our course being near S. S. E. and S. E.

At four the next morning, June 6th, Mount St. Augustine bore S. 78 deg. W. the volcano N. 34 deg. W. and the western part of the Barren Isles South, our distance off shore being about three leagues. At noon, our latitude was 58 deg. 38 min. N. and we saw many whales about, one of which had its head almost covered with barnacles. About eight in the evening, during a calm interval, one of the Discovery's people saw a large fish swimming near the ship's head; he directly got a hook and line, and soon after caught it; while he was hauling it up the ship's side several others made their appearance, which were no sooner seen than almost every person on board prepared their hooks and lines, and in the space of a quarter of an hour, thirteen were

taken, and many more made their escape. They were of the halibut kind, and some of them were above four feet in length, and weighed sixty pounds.

This fortunate capture furnished us with another treat, and raised the spirits of every one on board. The Resolution was rather more lucky than the Discovery.

The next day, June 7th, the weather became thick and hazy, with light airs and calms; which rendered our situation irksome and disagreeable, as we were exceeding anxious to pursue our course with all expedition, as the season advanced very fast, and we had an immense track of land to explore. We saw many birds to-day, such as puffins, guillemots, and petrels.

Our weather on the 8th was cloudy with a breeze from the S. S. E. our course E. At noon we tacked, and stood to the S. W. our latitude being 57 deg. 54 min. N. a high black hill which appeared to be an isle, then bore S. 71 deg. W. and the southermost land in sight, S. 25 deg. W.

The 9th was thick and hazy, with small drizzling rain, and the wind still kept in its old quarter. At half past five we tacked ship, being very near the land, which the haziness of the weather prevented our seeing before; the extremes of it then bore N. by W. and W. S. W. our distance from a rocky point about two miles.

The

The 10th. and 11th. were thick and hazy, which rendered exploring a tedious business, and the wind still continued unfavourable. Our soundings these two days were from thirty to fifty-five fathoms, with a coarse, black, sandy bottom. We saw several flocks of ducks, and some curlews; an indication that we were not far from land. At five in the afternoon the fog became so thick that the ships lost sight of each other, but as they fired guns as signals to each other, they were fortunate enough not to part company. At ten, the fog clearing away to the westward, we saw the land bearing W. by S.

The 12th and 13th were spent in working to windward: our latitude on the latter day was 56 deg. 49 min. N. The southermost land made in a gentle decline for a considerable way, the northern on the contrary was very high, forming hills and mountains, but with very little snow even upon the highest; the whole presented a most barren appearance, without the least verdure. In the afternoon we saw some islands laying off to the eastward.

On the 14th we had open cloudy weather, with moderate breezes from the S. W. our course being S. S. E. At three in the morning, our soundings were seventy-five fathom. At half past nine, we were running along the eastern side of the islands mentioned yesterday laying to the eastward, at the distance of about two miles. They appeared to be a mass of solid rock, crusted over in a few places with moss, which

was the only produce of them. Our latitude at noon was 56 deg. 23 min. N. when the extremes of the islands bore S. 80 deg. W. and N. 43 deg. W. distant about three leagues. At eight it became hazy, and we had a great number of seals, whales, and birds about, and at ten the wind shifted to S. E. by E. our course being W. by S.

The next day, June 15th, we had fine steady gales from the E. and E. S. E. with cloudy weather; we made all the advantage we could of this favourable change, and set every sail the ships could carry. About noon it became very thick and hazy, with a small continued rain. At half past two we saw the land bearing N. W. by W. about three leagues distant, and at three we hauled our wind, keeping a southerly course. We had a very irregular sea going, and at eight scarce any wind. At nine it began to clear up, when we saw a high bluff island bearing W. S. W. and more land to be westward, which appeared to be part of the continent; the former captain Cook called Foggy Island, the latter Foggy Cape; our soundings then were seventy-two fathom, with a bottom of sand and mud. At twelve we wore ship.

Our course the next day was S. S. W. with a fine breeze from the W. N. W. At two in the morning our soundings were forty-five fathom, and at three we saw land, bearing S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At four Foggy Island bore S. W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. The land in this part was very irregular, and made in many broken points, some high and others low, with a good deal of snow upon
various

various parts of it. There were several small islands of various shapes and sizes at some distance from it, one of which was something like a church with two spires, and was called Pinnacle Point. At eight this point bore N. 67 deg. W. The weather was so hazy at noon that we could get no observation: our soundings were sixty-five fathoms. At three it became almost calm, and at four the extremes of the land bore N. 11 deg. W. and S. 71 deg. W. At eight Pinnacle Point bore N. 28 deg. W. our distance from the shore about six leagues.

June 17th, we had light airs and fine weather. At four the extremes of the land bore N. 3 deg. W. and S. 64 deg. W. and at eight we saw more land to the southward, bearing S. 23 deg. W. At noon our latitude was 55 deg. 30 min. N. and longitude 201 deg. 9 min. E. We saw many small isles in various parts, and in the afternoon observed innumerable flocks of birds of the diver kind, and many whales.

The whole of the next day was pleasant, with calm weather till towards the evening, when a little breeze sprung up from the E. S. E. which on the 19th increased to a fine gale, our course being W. S. W. At four in the morning a cluster of isles, which in the Russian voyages are called Schumagin's Isles, bore S. 47 deg. W. and the west point of the main S. 77 deg. W. our distance off shore being about five leagues. These isles were in fact nothing but huge rocks, without the least appearance of verdure, and

afforded a fine retreat for the water fowl: the main was almost entirely covered with snow. At noon our latitude was 55 deg. 17 min. N. when the west part of a passage, formed by Schumagin's Isles, and the main bore from S. 21 deg. W. to S. 46 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Notwithstanding the barren appearance of the land, we found that it was inhabited; and six or seven of the Americans came off to us in their small skin canoes. One of them tied a small piece of wood to a rope which had been thrown over to them by some of the Discovery's people and made signs for them to haul it up, at the same time repeating the word Callikaah, which word, in their language, we afterwards found, signified writing. Upon examination, they found it was in two pieces, and tied together; they opened it, and found a note inclosed, wrote in the Russian language, but not a soul on board understood a syllable of it.

Captain Clerke, who, as well as many others, at first supposed that some Russians had been cast away there, ordered three guns to be fired as a signal to the Resolution, who was a-head, to bring-to. She immediately sent a boat on board, and captain Clerke waited upon captain Cook with the note, and a consultation was held, when they agreed that it could be nothing more than a kind of certificate left by some Russian traders, who had been there, which we afterwards found to be the case. Some of them shewed some fine pieces of fresh salmon, as an indu-

inducement to us to stop, but we were too much in a hurry to pay any attention to those things; and having made sail we pursued our course, as the wind was favourable, and we were anxious to get on.

At half past seven, we had thirty fathom with a gravelly bottom, and at eight the westernmost land in sight, appearing like an isle, bore S. 70 deg. W. our distance off shore being about three leagues.

The next day, June 20th, we had light breezes and fine weather; at half past three in the morning, we saw breakers bearing N. 68 deg. W. two miles distant, and at four a very high mountain bore N. 50 deg. W. off shore about three or four leagues. At five we saw rocks above water, a-breast of the Resolution, who directly hauled off, and at eight we saw more rocks and breakers a-head, which induced captain Cook to haul farther off. This part we called Rocks Point. At noon our observed latitude was 54 deg. 44 min. N. The land now appeared to trend quite away to the westward: in the evening we saw many whales, and had a swell from the E. S. E.

On June 21st, we had fine weather and calms. At eight the high mountain bore N. 12 deg. W. and at ten our soundings were thirty-five fathom, the bottom sand and small stones. At noon our latitude was 54 deg. 17 min. N. when the high mountain bore N. 5 deg. W. and the westernmost of two other very high-peaked

mountains, which proved to be a volcano, N. 81 deg. W. During the afternoon we caught a vast number of halibuts, some of which measured five feet ten inches in length, and weighed upwards of one hundred and twenty pounds.

The next day was rather hazy and foggy, with light airs and calms, till towards noon, when it cleared up a little, and we saw the volcano bearing N. 52 deg. W. our latitude being 53 deg. 51 min N. In the evening it became hazy and rainy, and the wind shifted to the south-eastward.

The 23d was much the same as the preceding day with respect to weather, and we saw nothing of the land till four in the afternoon, when it bore W. by N. distant about six leagues, and at six the high mountain, not the volcano, N. 75 deg. W. twelve leagues distant.

The weather on the 24th was thick and cloudy, and we had fresh breezes from the westward. At ten we tacked ship, and stood to the southward, with the wind at W. S. W. We saw innumerable flocks of birds passing by from the southward to the northward, and at noon the extremes of the main bore N. N. E. and N. W. by N. distant eight leagues. At two in the afternoon we founded, and got ground at fifty-three fathom, with a black sandy bottom, and at four tacked and stood to the W. N. W. the wind being S. W.

We had a fine little breeze from the eastward the next day, and we altered our course to W. S.

S. W. At eight the volcano bore N. 9 deg. E. and at ten we saw more land to the W. N. W. and hauled our wind. We saw a great number of birds and whales. At half past eight in the evening, we saw more land to the W. S. W. appearing as two islands, the southermost the highest; and at eleven, the weather becoming foggy, we hauled off shore, our course being S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. with the wind at N. E. by E.

At half past one the next morning, June 26th, we bore away, our course being W. S. W. the wind E. by S. At half past four, as we were running on, the weather being very thick and foggy, the Resolution hailed the Discovery, and desired her to come to immediately, as there was a noise at no great distance from us, exactly resembling the surf breaking upon the shore. Both ships very soon after let go their anchors, and in the course of a few minutes the fog cleared away, and we found, to our great surprize, that we were in the mouth of a small bay, not above a mile from shore, and surrounded in various directions by small islands and rocks. That our situation may be the better ascertained, it may not be amiss to give the bearings and distances of the various rocks, &c. the extremes of the land off which we lay, bore N. and S. 5 deg. E. An island lying off the northern part of it, N. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. a sandy bay, S. W. distant one mile; a high rock S. E. by S. one mile distant, and other rocks, above water, E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant a mile and half. This was a most providential

escape; if we had stood on five minutes longer, we must in all probability have been on shore, or if we had varied our course either to the right or left, we should have run the risk of being upon the rocks.

The land, which proved to be an island, had a very rocky appearance in almost every part, except the bay off which we had anchored, which was covered with verdure. There was but little snow except upon the tops of the highest hills, the other parts being free from it. About nine captain Clerke sent his jolly-boat to cut grass for the goats, as they were much in want of fresh food; she returned at four in the afternoon with a good stock. The men who went in her had seen the remains of an old hut, and some pieces of drift wood, which had apparently been lately chopped, or cut with tools of the hatched kind. They had also seen several eagles, and two or three smaller birds, one of the nests of which they had found, with six eggs in it, and had brought it on board. The weather throughout the day was very foggy, with a wet haze. Captain Cook called this bay Providence Bay, and the eastern extreme of it Cape Providence.

C H A P. XVII.

At half past six the next morning, June 27, we weighed and made sail, and at eight were standing between the north point of the bay and a small island to the northward of it, which together formed a channel about two miles wide: our soundings were from twenty-five to thirty fathom. At nine, having but little wind, and the tide carrying us in shore, we dropped our anchors again, in thirty-eight fathom, sand and shells.

Soon after, boats were sent from both ships to cut grass, which returned at twelve. The productions of this part of the island were much the same as the last; amongst other things, two species of willow were found, but they were only twelve or fourteen inches high: the soil was of a light, loamy nature, except in the marshes, where it was black and rich. Our people saw a hut on shore, which, from its structures, was evidently a temporary one; it was composed of pieces of drift-wood, the ends of which were tied or fastened together, and afforded but indifferent shelter; it stunk abominably, and, from the fish bones and sea eggs, which were quite fresh, it was apparent that people had been there very lately.

At one in the afternoon, we weighed and made sail, shaping our course for a passage, which, when at anchor, bore N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. As we were standing across a very deep bay,
we

we observed a number of people in canoes, very busily employed in towing a whale on shore, which they probably had just killed. When they saw us, some of them immediately made for the ships, and appeared glad to see us. They were much like those of Sandwich Sound, but had a kind of bonnet upon their heads, very different from those people: their canoes were nearly the same, and they all used double paddles; their under-lips had a round perforation, but we saw no ornaments in them; one of them had some blue beads on his bonnet. We purchased some of their darts, which were about four feet long, not feathered at the end, and pointed with a long piece of bone, which was barbed; some were pointed with stone, and one or two had four prongs. In return for these we gave them beads, which they appeared fond of, and after staying some time with us, departed.

At six our soundings were twenty-seven fathoms, shelly bottom: and at eight we anchored in thirty-eight fathom, sand and shells: the extremes of the passage we were standing for, bore N. 45 deg. W. and N. 62 deg. W. our distance from the nearest shore being about three miles.

The next morning we had light winds, and the weather was inclinable to be thick and foggy. At three, we weighed and made sail. At five, having got to the mouth of the passage, the ebb-tide from the westward was so strong as to set
us

us back faster than we got there. At six we intended to anchor, but the bottom proved rocky, and soon after the ships were set in a strong race, occasioned by the meeting of the tides round the different points of the surrounding isles. At nine we anchored, the passage bearing N. 79 deg. W. At noon, the Resolution weighed, made sail, and got out her boats to tow her into a fine harbour, which she lay at some little distance from. The Discovery was then three or four miles distant, but soon after she also weighed, and, having the advantage of a little breeze, with the assistance of her boats, got into the harbour, and both ships anchored about six.

We had many of the natives with us during the day, who were not so much surprised at seeing a ship as might have been expected. It is plain they took us for Russians, from their frequent repetition of the word *Rookky*: they also perfectly understood the use of tobacco, which they asked for by that name; and when it was given them, immediately put it in their mouths; some likewise made signs of taking snuff. — From all these circumstances, we concluded that they must have frequent intercourse with the Russians.

Early the next morning, all hands were called, the empty casks got out of the hold, the boats hoisted out, and a large party of men sent on shore to water; another party was dispatched to cut grass, while those remaining on board were

were preparing for the reception of the water. We purchased to-day several darts, and other articles of curiosity, of the natives, who were a very well behaved people: we gave them snuff, tobacco, beads, and nails in return. We saw neither bows nor arrows amongst them, and we observed that some had two, others three holes in their underlip, and not a continued one as at Sandwich Sound. These people generally brought with them a vegetable, something resembling celery, which they eat a good deal of: this seems to be nearly the same plant as the morkovai of the Kamptschadales, who are likewise fond of it.

At seven in the evening, having completed our water, and got a good stock of grass, we made ready for sea.

The next morning, June 30th, the Resolution got up her anchor and made sail, but wind and tide being both against her, she was obliged to come to again. Soon after, captain Cook sent two of his boats on board the Discovery, to assist her in carrying out hawsers, for the purpose of warping out, and informed captain Clerke that he intended to do the same. All hands were now employed; but the weather shortly after became thick, and the ships making but little progress, we anchored again at noon, and captain Cook signified his intention of continuing here till to-morrow.

In the afternoon, all the people that could be spared, were permitted to go on shore and
gather

gather herbs, or amuse themselves in any other manner they thought proper; and some of the gentlemen having been informed that there was a small Indian village near the entrance of the harbour on the eastern shore, took this opportunity of walking there. The hills over which they were obliged to pass, were high, but not very difficult to climb, on account of the length of grass, which prevented their feet from slipping; there were many small ponds of water upon the top, occasioned probably by the melting of the snow, very little of which was now to be seen.

Upon their arrival at the village, they were very civilly received by the inhabitants, who pulled off their bonnets, and made very low bows: there were not more than eighteen or twenty, including women and children. The town consisted of eight or ten houses, one of which was large, the others much smaller; the largest was about thirty feet in length, and eighteen feet wide, raised nearly six feet above the surface, and hollowed the same depth below it: there were two openings on the top, one, which was in the middle, for the admission of light, the other as an entrance to the house, which was effected by means of a long post, with notches cut in it for the reception of the feet in descending: the bottom was lined with dry grass, and the roof supported by stakes set upright, across which were placed barks, and over the whole was thrown dry grass and earth, which

which gave it the appearance at a distance of a large hillock: it was divided into partitions, in each of which the several families sleep: the smell which issued from it was very strong and disagreeable. At some distance from the houses, were erected stages for the purpose of drying fish, upon which were hung large pieces of halibut and whale's flesh, and in several places were great numbers of the shells of sea eggs, which appear to make no small part of their food. There were only two women, one very old and grey-headed; the other, who appeared to be about twenty, had a child in her arms; she was dressed in a seal-skin jacket, and her cheeks were marked or tatowed in a particular manner; she had an ornament in her under-lip made of bone, and was, to all appearance, tolerably neat and clean. The men were clothed in bird-skin jackets, the feathered side inwards, and none were seen with the bladder jacket on, which seems to be used only when they are going upon the water. After having looked about as much as they thought necessary, the gentlemen returned, the natives bowing very respectfully at their departure, which was a piece of good manners they could not help returning.

The weather the next morning, July 1st, was fine and pleasant, and the ships again endeavoured to get out, but found it impracticable, on account of the wind and tide. The men from both ships were permitted to go on shore as yesterday, and several shooting parties went out:
some

some of them brought on board a brace of fine grouse, and three or four birds of the snipe kind; and one of the gentlemen caught a young fox, which he brought off with him, and kept several days on board, but, by some means or other, he broke his chain, and most likely went overboard, for we saw nothing of him afterwards.

At six the next morning, taking the advantage of a fine breeze from the S. E. we weighed and made sail, standing through the opening mentioned on the 27th instant, our course being N. W. by N. At noon our latitude was 54 deg. 19 min. N. At four in the afternoon, our course was N. the wind being E. N. E. and at ten, we steered N. E. the wind being S. E. by E.

The next day, July 3d, was cloudy, with a fresh gale from the south-eastward. At half past six in the morning, we saw land bearing, E. S. E. our course being N. E. by E. At noon, it became more moderate, when the land bore from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to N. E. by E. our distance off shore about five leagues, our latitude being 55 deg. 30 min. N. At six in the evening, we saw high land, appearing like an island bearing E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. our soundings then were forty-eight fathom, with a fine sandy bottom, and we had light airs and calms, and saw several whales.

July the 4th, was thick and cloudy, inclinable to fogs, with light airs and calms, and a swell from the W. S. W. At eight, the extremes of the land bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and E. N. E. the nearest part being about seven leagues distant. At half-

past nine, the weather being very thick and foggy, we hauled off shore, our course being N. N. E. and our soundings thirty fathom. At eleven, it became calm, and both ships brought-to, main-top-sail to the mast, and our hooks and lines were put overboard: in the space of half an hour, we caught several fine cod. At noon, we had a breeze from the eastward, when we made sail, and stood to the northward. We saw several albatrosses and some divers about, and a few puffins. In the afternoon we had hazy weather, with a light drizzling rain.

The next day was heavy, cloudy, and disagreeable, with a breeze from the E. S. E. our course N. E. At five, we saw the land, bearing E. N. E. At seven, we had ground at thirty-eight fathom, and at noon our latitude was 56 deg. 30 min. N. when the north part of the land in sight bore N. 70 deg. E. and the nearest part E. S. E. four leagues distant. In the afternoon, we caught more cod, and at four the extremes of the land bore S. E. and E. N. E. off shore about six leagues, our soundings being thirty-six fathom, with a bottom of fine black sand. At eight, it became thick and foggy.

The next morning, July 6th, we had light breezes from the N. E. with open, cloudy weather, our course being N. N. W. At four, the extremes of the land bore E. and E. S. E. At nine, Captain Cook sent an order to Captain Clerke to put the ship's company to two thirds allowance of beef, pork, bread, and flour, as we were
now

now in a latitude where fish were very plentiful, and he thought it prudent to reserve as much of the ship's provisions as he could with propriety, lest it might be wanted in future upon more pressing occasions: in consequence of this order, hooks and lines were distributed to the ships companies. At noon, our latitude was 56 deg. 54 min. N. and longitude 199 deg. 12 min. E. when the land bore from E. to E. N. E. nine leagues distant. As we stood on, we passed a seal sleeping upon the surface of the water. At eight, our soundings were thirty-one fathom, the bottom black sand, when the extremes of the land bore S. 21 deg. E. and N. 56 deg. E.; a deep bay, which Captain Cook called Bristol Bay, S. 60 deg. E. our distance from the nearest part being about six leagues. At half past eight, tacked ship, and stood to the N. N. W. with the wind at N. E.

The 7th was calm the best part of the day with fine and pleasant weather. At eight the land bore from N. E. by E. to S. E. by E. and soon after both ships brought to, and all hands employed themselves in fishing, when they met with all the success they could possibly wish for.

About noon, a breeze sprung up from the N. E; so made sail and stood E. S. E. In the afternoon, we saw a flock of ducks, several small birds of the snipe kind, and a few brown sheerwaters and gulls. At half-past eleven at night, we shortened sail and tacked, our course being S. the wind E. S. E.; and at twelve, having

seventeen fathoms, we brought to, main-top-sail to the mast, about four leagues distant from the shore.

At one the next morning, July 8th, wore ship and made sail, standing to the northward, the wind at S. E. though very light. At four, it became calm, and having a good depth of water for fishing, we put our hooks and lines over, and caught plenty of fine cod. At half past ten, a light breeze sprung up from the N. E. our course N. N. W. At noon, the extremes of the land bore N. 59 deg. E. and S. S. E. distant from the nearest part about five leagues, our latitude being 57 deg. 17 min. N. At four, the land bore from S. E. to S. S. E. and at eight our soundings were twenty-six fathom, a black sandy bottom. At ten, both vessels tacked.

The next morning at two, we had light breezes, and at six saw a low point of land bearing N. E. our course being N. E. by N. with the wind at W. N. W. At eight, the Resolution being nearly a league a-head of the Discovery, fired a gun, as a signal to make more sail, the wind now freshening up. At ten, we altered our course to N. by E. The land now trended away to the eastward, and had in many places a remarkable appearance, resembling large broken columns or pillars; the high land was very snowy. At noon, our latitude was 57 deg. 47 min. N. and at one, we saw more land bearing N. by E. At two, we had thirteen fathom, with a rocky bottom. At six, our soundings were

were from thirteen to ten fathom, and at nine tacked and stood to the S. W. the wind W. N. W.

At two the next morning, July 10th, we saw a point of the low land mentioned yesterday morning, extending as far as W. N. W. which effectually put a stop to our farther progress to the northward on this part of the coast: at three, therefore, Captain Cook hailed the Discovery, and ordered her to go a-head, keeping a S. W. course, and to be particular in her soundings. The weather was clear and pleasant, with an easterly breeze. At a quarter past eleven, she shoaled her water from fifteen to five fathom, and observing patches of white or shoal water in many places around us, fired a gun, as a signal to the Resolution, and wore round, her course being N. E. The soundings now gradually increased to twelve fathom; and the ships being pretty near each other, Captain Cook ordered the Discovery to keep still a-head, but to go upon the other tack after dinner, and to hoist out her boats and send them a-head to sound. At noon our latitude was 15 min. N.; and at one, it being calm, and a tide setting us considerably to leeward, the Resolution hoisted the signal for anchoring, and soon after both ships came-to; we found the tide setting to the southward. At four, we weighed and made sail, our course southerly, and soundings from twelve to five fathom. At half past seven, we let go our anchors again, and it became very hazy;

no part of the land could be seen except a high round hummock on the N W. shore, which bore N. 77 deg. W. and a mountain on the S. E. shore, bearing S. 36 deg. E.

At half past one the next morning, July 11th, we weighed and made sail, our course W. by N. the wind S. W. by S. At four, we tacked and stood to the S. E. by S. our soundings being thirteen fathom. At six, it became thick and foggy, and at eight, finding it impossible to proceed any farther in such thick weather, without running great risks, both vessels anchored. At one in the afternoon, the fog cleared up a little; when we weighed and stood S. S. E. and at half-past two, tacked and stood W. N. W. and W. by N. our soundings being from fifteen to twenty-two fathom. We saw several arctic gulls, and had a swell from the S. W. At half past six, we had some thunder and lightning, but both very inconsiderable, and at seven, saw high land bearing N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At nine, the wind freshened, and blew rather hard at times, till ten, when we were taken aback, and at eleven it became more moderate.

Our course the next day was N. W. the wind S. W. but so light as to carry us scarce a mile an hour; the weather clear and pleasant. At six, we saw land bearing N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and at noon the round hummock, which we now found to be an island, and which Captain Cook denominated Round Island, bore N. W. distant four leagues. At four Round Island bore N. 45 deg. W.

W. distant four leagues, and the westermost land in sight N. 89 deg. W. At nine, being well in with the land, we tacked and stood to the northward and at ten tacked again, our course S. W. the wind W. by N. and W. N. W.

At two the next morning, July 13th, our soundings were from eighteen to thirteen fathom; and at three, our course still being nearly S. W. we shoaled from thirteen to seven fathom. At this time Round Island bore N. 12 deg. W. four miles distant. We directly hauled off the land, keeping an E. S. E. course, with our boats ahead sounding, the Discovery, as drawing least water, being ordered to take the lead. At ten, we resumed our former course, our soundings varying from eight to twelve, and soon after to nine fathom, the bottom sandy. At noon our observed latitude was 58 deg. 15 min. N. when Round Island bore N. 25 deg. E. distant about ten leagues. The land here was very broken, having the appearance of islands, with here and there a patch of snow, but not a tree to be seen. At three in the afternoon, we had light airs, and at twelve it became calm, with hazy weather, the westermost land in sight bearing W. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

In the morning, we had light airs and calms, with fine pleasant weather. At six, our soundings were twenty-six fathom, and at eight Round Island bore N. 26 deg. E. Many of the seamen put over their hooks and lines, and caught a fine supply of cod, pollacks, small halibut, and a

species of flat fish resembling a dab. About two in the afternoon, we saw two morfes, or sea-horses, asleep in the water, and a boat from the Discovery with three or four people were sent to attack them; but before they came near enough to do any execution, the animals disappeared; these were the first we had seen.

At half past four the next morning, July 15th, it became exceeding thick and foggy, on which account we anchored. At seven, it cleared up in some degree, and we weighed our anchors, keeping nearly a west course. At noon our latitude was 58 deg. 21 min. N. when we saw the western extreme bearing N. 61 deg. W. distant eight leagues. In the afternoon, we saw a sea-bear: these animals are said to be found no farther to the northward than latitude 56 deg. but this is a proof to the contrary. At eight, the fog again increased, and at ten we let go our anchors in seventeen fathom, a sandy bottom. The ships rode with their heads W. by N. during the whole tide.

The fog clearing away about five, July 16th, we saw the land, the nearest part bearing N. 18 deg. W. about five miles distant, which was much closer than we expected. We weighed soon after, our sounding being from sixteen to twenty one fathom. At nine captain Cook sent his large cutter on shore, with directions to the gentlemen who were in her to make what observations they could. At half past eleven, the tide began to make from the westward, on which

which account we anchored. We had several sea-bears about the ships, one of which we shot at, but were not fortunate enough to kill him. Our latitude to-day was 58 deg. 36 min. N. At half past five, the tide from the eastward began to make, and at six we weighed, having very light airs. The boat returned at eight in the evening. The low land was covered with plants and flowers of various kinds, which afforded a most pleasing appearance, and at the same time emitted a fragrance which was delightful, particularly the marsh cistus, ledum palustre, which was in full flower. The hills were composed of masses of loose stones, which rendered them very difficult to ascend; some of the gentlemen however reached the top of one of the highest, upon which they buried a bottle containing a paper, upon which the names of the two ships were wrote, with that of their commanders, and the date of the year. The weather was very hazy, which greatly obstructed their view. They saw a deer and fawn, several red foxes, and the tracks of bears. Upon the beach they found the putrified carcase of a sea-horse, out of the head of which they took the teeth. The rocks swarmed with shags and guillemots, most of which had young ones. Amongst many plants and shrubs, were cranberries, whortle-berries, monk's hood, geranium, the faranne, liliun Kamtschatcense, Lin., poppy, dock, violet, golden rod, and valerian. The soil was a kind of light sand, with a small

mixture of clay, very stony, and not more than a foot deep, in some places not so much. This place was called Cape Newenham. At twelve, it became hazy when Cape Newenham bore N. by W. distant six leagues.

What little wind we had the next day was E. N. E. our course N. W. the weather warm and pleasant. At four in the morning, Cape Newenham bore N. 41 deg. E. our distance from the nearest shore being about five leagues. At noon our soundings were seventeen fathom, and we saw a few gulls, puffins, and guillemots about. At half past ten in the evening, having shoaled our water to ten fathoms, we tacked ship, and stood to the S. W.

The next day in the morning, July 18th, we had a fine little breeze from the S. E. our course N. N. W. At eight we shoaled from seventeen to ten, and from thence gradually to five fathoms, when we tacked and stood to the W. S. W. the wind being E. S. E. Cape Newenham then bore S. 42 deg. E. Boats from the Discovery were ordered to keep a-head and sound. This was a continuation of the shoal we were running upon last night, at half past ten. At ten we deepened our water, and soon after bore away; our course being N. N. E. the wind S. S. E. At noon our observed latitude was 59 deg. 23 min. N. Cape Newenham bearing S. 31 deg. E. distant fourteen or fifteen leagues. The soundings from the boats were from five to eight fathom; but at half past three they had only

only four fathom: we immediately hauled our wind, and stood to the N. W. and at five the Resolution, who was a good way a-stern, made the signal for anchoring; soon after which both ships came-to in six fathom. When at anchor, a point of low land bore due N. distant two leagues, and Cape Newenham, at least as much as we saw of it, S. 24 deg. E. distant eighteen leagues. At seven in the evening the boats returned, with an account that to the westward there was a bank about two leagues from us, part of which was dry at low water; this bank was a continuation of the point of low land mentioned before as bearing due N. The tide by its ebb and flow had formed a kind of channel through it, whose depth was near five fathom. In the course of the night the Resolution parted her cable.

Early the next morning, two Americans, in their canoes, were seen reconnoitring the ships at a distance: they staid about a quarter of an hour, during which time they sung a kind of song, and then departed. At eight captain Cook sent for the Discovery's launch, to assist the Resolution's boats in recovering the anchor. They had nearly hoisted it in last night by the buoy-rope, which unluckily broke, so that they had only their labour for their pains. However, at seven in the evening, they were fortunate enough to get the clinch of a hawser over one of the flukes, by which means they secured it. The weather to-day was very warm, and the ships

ships were pestered with gnats, which found means to explore their way from the shore, and tormented us not a little.

At eight the next morning, July 20th, the Resolution made a signal for the Discovery's large cutter to sound to the S. W. At two in the afternoon she returned with the disagreeable news that the shoal extended a considerable distance to the westward; being surrounded in this manner, by the continent on one side, and this insurmountable barrier on the other, we had nothing left but to return back, and proceed to the southward, till we had entirely got out of its neighbourhood. And this was no easy task on account of the little depth of water in many places we had already passed, and by which we were obliged to return.

We weighed our anchors the next morning at three, and stood to the southward, with the boats a-head sounding. At half past six, one of them made the signal for shoal-water, and soon after all the rest; we therefore came to directly, and found a strong tide running. A sugarloaf hill bore S. E. by E. and a part of the land making in a kind of a cape, N. E. This cape was denominated Shoal Nefs by captain Cook. At eight, a fleet of small canoes, consisting of twenty-eight, made their appearance. At first they remained at a distance, but several of them at length ventured along-side. Some were clothed in garments made of skins of the spotted field mouse, and had a kind of bonnet
on

on their heads, something like those before mentioned, but without a hole through them for the reception of the head. Their hair was in general very short, and some were shaved close: they had a hole in one side of their underlip, and beyond that another in the cheek, in both which they had ornaments. Their faces were not painted, but were very dirty, and the shape of it varied greatly; being long and thin in some, and round in others; upon the whole, they were a set of ill looking people. Their canoes were covered with skin, like those mentioned before, but they were wider, and the hole in which the person sits was larger. They in general use single paddles, but had double ones secured upon the outside of their canoes; none had the bladder-dress. They did not appear to be much accustomed to ships, nor were they very honest, for they frequently made off with nails and other things that were handed down to them, as the price of their various articles of trade; without returning an equivalent. We purchased some of their bows and arrows, the points of which were composed of sea-horse teeth, and barbed, and several other things in the curiosity-way, also a few dried salmon. After about half an hour's stay they departed.

At eleven we got up our anchors and made sail, with the boats a-head, who got from five to ten fathom, but very irregularly. At noon, our latitude was 59 deg. 25 min. N. when the
sugar

sugar-loaf hill bore S. 62 deg. E. distant eight leagues, and Shoal Nefs, N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At three we let go our anchors, and at six weighed them again; our soundings from nine to fifteen fathoms. At nine we came-to for the night, when Cape Newenham bore S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. ten leagues distant.

C H A P. XVIII.

At six the next morning, July 22d, we weighed and made sail, our course still being S. and S. by W. with a fresh breeze from the S. E. and E. S. E. our boats continuing a-head sounding. At eight we had from thirteen to fifteen fathom, and Shoal Nefs bore N. 26 deg. E. At half past nine we shoaled to nine fathoms, when we tacked and stood to the E. N. E. the Resolution's boats keeping a-head upon this tack, and the Discovery's upon the other. At eleven we anchored, the tide being against us; when the sugarloaf hill bore N. 6 deg. E. Shoal Nefs, N. 17 deg. E. twelve leagues distant, and the nearest part of the shore about three leagues distant. Cape Newenham could not be distinguished. We endeavoured this afternoon to catch some fish, but met with little success, the water being too shallow. In the afternoon at five, we got up our anchors, and having made sail, stood S. S. E. the wind being east, and our soundings fifteen, thirteen, and fourteen fathom.

At

At six we saw Cape Newenham bearing N. 40 deg. E. seven or eight leagues distant. At eight, having from sixteen to twenty fathoms, we made the signal for the boats to come on board, and soon after hoisted them in.

July 23d, at half past two in the morning we bore away, our course being S. S. W. with the wind E. by N. At four, the Resolution made the signal for the Discovery to go a-head and found, and at five we shoaled from eighteen to ten fathom; we immediately hauled the wind, and stood S. S. E. This no doubt was a continuation of that extensive shoal we were so near on the 20th. At six we had from nine to thirteen fathoms; and at two in the afternoon, having deepened them to twenty three fathoms, we bore away to S. S. W. and at seven altered our course to W. S. W. We had many puffins, sea parrots, guillemots, arctic, and other gulls, about us to day.

The weather, which for these several days past was fine and clear, now became thick and foggy. We however continued our W. S. W. course, till five in the afternoon, July 24th, having from twenty-seven to thirty-five fathoms, when we proceeded in a W. S. W. direction. All the next day was thick and foggy, and we frequently lost sight of each other, but by constantly repeating the necessary signals, we were fortunate enough to keep together. Our course was still W. S. W. but at nine it became so very thick as to render our proceeding any farther ex-

extremely dangerous; captain Cook therefore ordered the signal to be made for anchoring, and both ships came-to soon after, in thirty-two fathoms, with a bottom of coarse sand.

At seven the ensuing evening, the fog cleared up, and we got up our anchors, and stood to the N. N. W. the wind being N. E. and E. N. E. At half past nine we saw a whale, which was the first we had observed for near a fortnight, and some time after saw several others, and likewise a seal. We had no land in sight to-day.

The following day, July 27th, was cloudy, with frequent thick fogs. Our course was W. by N. and W. N. W. with the wind at north. At one in the afternoon it shifted to N. E. by E. and at four to E. N. E. our course being N. and N. by W. At twelve we had twenty-six fathom, and soon after tacked ship, and stood to the eastward. The first part of the next morning was fine and clear, with a fresh breeze from the N. E. At three we tacked and stood N. W. by W. our soundings being twenty-six fathom. At eight it became very foggy, but of no long continuance, and at noon our observed latitude was 59 deg. 54 min. N. At two in the afternoon it again came on exceeding thick, with a strong breeze from the N. N. E. which at three increased to a hard gale, which obliged us to take in our top-gallant-sails, and reef the top-sails. We continued standing to the N. W. by W. and W. N. W. till twelve, when we tacked ship and stood to the eastward.

Our

Our weather the next morning was dark, thick and cloudy, with small rain, with the wind at N. but more moderate than yesterday. At three we wore ship, and stood W. by N. At half past four we saw high land bearing W. by N. our soundings were thirty-eight fathom, with a gravelly bottom. At eight the land which now appeared to be an island, extended from W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. to W. N. W. distant about four leagues; the north point ended in a very high-bluff head, which, from its singular appearance, captain Cook called Point Upright. At eleven we were tolerably near the land, which made in high, ragged, perpendicular cliffs, the whole forming a kind of bay. We saw no trees, but it was covered in many parts with grass, &c. with here and there a small patch of snow. There were numberless flocks of guillemots, and auks; of the latter there were two species, one with an upright crest upon its head, the other very small; we also saw some few puffins and sea-parrots. At half past eleven we tacked, our course E. N. E. but the wind was very light, and the small rain continuing, rendered every thing about us very uncomfortable. Our latitude to day at noon, by an imperfect observation, was 60 deg. 22 min. N. when Point Upright bore N. 45 deg. W. At two in the afternoon, the fog which hung about the land began to disperse, and the clouds to separate, but at three it again became very thick. At four, Point Upright bore N. 44 deg. W. and a small high island

Vol. I. N laying

laying off the western extreme S. 73 deg. W. our distance off shore being two leagues. At half past six we tacked, and stood to the S. E. and at twelve it became calm.

The weather the next day, July 30th, was in general foggy, with short intervals of clearness, and the winds light and variable. At five in the morning, we saw the western extreme of the island bearing W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. We had many guillemots, puffins, and gulls about to day. At four in the afternoon we wore ship and stood W. N. W. the wind being N. by E. and N. E. by E. and at twelve we had moderate breezes from the S. S. E. and S. E.

July 31st, we had open cloudy weather, and were free from fogs. At eight we had a fine breeze from the S. E. our course being nearly N. E. throughout the day. We had no land in sight, and our soundings were thirty-four fathoms, a soft muddy bottom. Our latitude at noon was 61 deg. 16 min. N. and at six in the afternoon, we passed a piece of drift wood.

The next day, August 1st, we had open cloudy weather. At four we passed the body of a large tree, and at six a good deal of drift-wood, most of which appeared to have been long in the water. At eight the wind shifted to E. N. E. and at nine to N. N. W. our course N. E. and soundings from twenty-four to twenty-one fathoms. We had many arctic gulls about. At half past eleven we had a stiff breeze from the N. by E. our course N. W. by W. and our
lati-

latitude was 61 deg. 58 min. N. In the afternoon we passed more drift-wood, and a shag, apparently quite exhausted with fatigue, pitched upon one of the Discovery's anchors. At eight we tacked ship, our course being E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. the wind N. by E.

The weather on the second was thick, heavy, and rainy, with a warm disagreeable atmosphere, and a fresh breeze from the E. N. E. our course S. E. We passed much drift-wood; and at eight we had little wind and rain, with a heavy irregular sea from the northward. Many gulls and large flocks of sheer-waters about. At two in the afternoon it became calm, and our soundings were nineteen fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom.

The following day we had open cloudy weather; with intervals of sunshine, and a slight breeze from the W. by N. our course N. by W. Our soundings were eighteen fathom, and at noon our latitude by some double altitudes was 62 deg. 33 min N. In the afternoon we steered N. N. E. the wind being E. S. E. and S. E. by E. At four, we had fourteen fathom, and at six they deepened to twenty. Soon after, we saw land bearing W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant about eight leagues. At eight, we had thirteen fathom, and the land bore S. 84 deg. W.

On the fourth, we had a strong breeze from the E. by N. our course being N. N. E. At half past three in the morning, captain Cook hailed the Discovery, and ordered her to keep a-head

and found. At eight, we had thirteen fathom and a half, the bottom brown sand and shells. At two in the afternoon, we saw land extending from N. to W. N. W. about six leagues distant. At three, we had ten fathom, and soon after hauled close to the wind, having since one been about a point and half from the wind. As we proceeded, our soundings became irregular, from ten to seven fathom, and then deepening to thirteen. At four, the Discovery, seeing a kind of rippling a-head, which had rather a suspicious appearance, tacked, and the Resolution soon after followed her example. At half past four, the Discovery came under the Resolution's stern, as by signal, and at seven both vessels let go their anchors, as it became very thick. When it cleared up, we saw a high bluff isle, bearing W. by S. distant about three leagues.

The next day, August 5th, was foggy, with small drizzling rain. At four, we prepared for getting up our anchors, but as it soon after became very thick, we desisted. At nine, we weighed, and about ten, a boat was sent on board the Discovery, with an account of the death of Mr. Anderson, the surgeon, who had been in a declining state for near a twelve-month past: he was succeeded by Mr. Law, the surgeon of the Discovery. At noon, the extremes of the land, which proved to be the main, bore N. E. by E. and N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At half past one we anchored in eight fathom, about
two

two miles distant from the island, the extremities of which bore S. and S. 36 deg. E. the land on the main to the westward was high, and bore N. 48 deg. W. and the eastermost land in sight N. 58 deg. E. We found the tide setting strong from the E. by S. Soon after we were anchored, captain Cook sent boats from both ships to cut grass for the stock, of which there appeared to be plenty, and which was a repast they stood much in need of: himself likewise; with some of his officers, went on shore to make what observations they could.

The island was very small, but covered in almost every part with variety of herbage, amongst which were many plants common in England, and two or three species of willows, but very diminutive, not being above eighteen inches in height. Berries, such as cran-berries and whortle-berries, were remarkably plentiful, but their time was too short to permit them to collect many. They ascended the hill, but the weather was very unfavourable for a great extent of vision: they saw much land in different directions, and upon the beach found a sledge, which induced captain Cook to call it Sledge Island.

At three the next morning, we weighed and made sail, keeping a W. and W. S. W. course with a light breeze from the southward. At seven, we saw more land bearing N. W. and at eight, Sledge Island bore S. 72 deg. E. two leagues distant. At noon, our observed latitude

was 64 deg. 40 min. N. and at one, we saw an island bearing N. 85 deg. W. seven leagues distant. At four, it was calm and foggy, when the extremes of the main bore E. and N. by E. At six, we had from ten to seven fathom, and at seven tacked and stood S. S. E. the wind being S. W. when we saw more land to the westward bearing N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At eight, we anchored for the night, when Sledge Island bore S. 64 deg. E. the other island S. 70 deg. W. six leagues distant, and the western part of the main N. 52 deg. W. our distance off shore being about five miles.

In the morning, August 7th, we had cloudy weather, with light southerly breezes. At eight, we weighed and made sail, our course W. S. W. and W. At one in the afternoon, we tacked, and at eight the wind blew fresh from the N. by E. and N. E. our course being N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and our soundings from twelve to fifteen fathom. The westernmost land in sight then bore N. 55 deg. W. our distance off shore about three leagues. At twelve we had hard rain, our soundings being eleven and twelve fathoms.

The next morning was thick and hazy, with light winds and hard rain. At three, having shoaled to nine fathom, we bore away, the wind S. by E. and S. our course N. E. and N. At four, we saw the land bearing N. W. by N. and soon after hauled up to E. S. E. At five having light winds, and drifting fast on shore, we let go our anchors, when the extremes of the land bore

bore N. 80 deg. W. and N. 48 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the western extreme making in a high peaked hill, our distance from shore two miles. At eight we took the advantage of a breeze which sprung up, and weighed and made sail. At ten, our soundings being seven fathom, we tacked and bore away to the W. N. W. the wind being N. N. E. At noon, we had fresh breezes, and the extremes of the main bore N. 65 deg. W. and E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. our soundings being from eight to thirteen fathoms. At four, we had rain, tacked and stood to the E. N. E. the wind N. and soon after saw a long neck of low land, running out from the northermost high land, bearing N. 2 deg. E. and a high steep rock S. 88 deg. W. We saw many objects upon the low land resembling trees. At half past five, tacked ship and stood W. N. W. and at seven wore, our course E. by N. the steep rock bearing S. W. At nine, we saw the point of low land a-head, about three miles distant, and soon after shoaled our water to five fathom, when we tacked and stood to the westward, and soon after anchored.

August 9th. The next morning we had thick, cloudy, rainy weather, with squalls and hard gales from the N. by W. At eight we weighed and made sail, and at nine wore ship and stood W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At noon, our latitude was 65 deg. 45 min. N. when the high rock bore S. W. by S. and the island to the westward W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At two in the afternoon, we bore away for the western island, our course S. W.

by W.; but, upon our nearer approach we found there were two instead of one. At four the extremes bore N. and W. by N. the eastermost about a mile distant. They were entirely composed of rugged pointed rocks from the bottom to the summit, and here and there we saw a small patch of grass. Captain Cook named them the Isles of Disappointment. At seven we saw more land bearing W. by S. and at eight the extremes of the land from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. to N. W. and a bluff head forming the north point of a bay W. S. W. five or six leagues distant. At ten, we wore ship, our course being N. E. by N.

The next day was fine and clear, with moderate breezes from the N. W. At two, we wore ship and kept a W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. course. At four, we had fresh gales, and at five saw land bearing N. At eight the land set at five, bore N. 16 deg. E. and the south point of a bay S. 85 deg. W. off shore two or three miles. The land formed a deep bay, and was moderately high, in some parts rocky; with a slope of low land, which seemed well covered with verdure. Upon one part of it we saw several houses, about which were placed upright, what appeared to be the jaw-bones of whales. By the assistance of our glasses, we discovered many inhabitants, who seemed to be running about in great confusion, and some making off to the mountains. The southermost part consisted of a double ridge of high mountains, the tops of which were covered with snow. At ten, we anchored in
thir-

thirteen fathom, with a gravelly bottom, the two points of the bay bearing N. 16 deg. E. and S. 31 deg. W. the village N. 31 deg. W. and the isles of Disappointment N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.

Soon after we had anchored, the Resolution's pinnace, in which was captain Cook, attended by the large cutters of both ships, all well manned and armed, proceeded to that part of the shore where the village was situated. As they approached they saw between fifty and sixty people standing upon an eminence near the houses, as if prepared to defend themselves against any attack that might be made.

Having reached the shore, three of them came down; but upon captain Cook's approach, who landed by himself, they retired; he however followed them, and, by every sign of friendship, endeavoured to persuade them to lay aside their fears, and at the same time shewed them beads and various other articles. These seemed to engage their attention, and at last one of them came near enough to the captain to receive a bunch of beads, which he carried to his two companions, and after some conference they collected courage, and readily joined him. The others, seeing the reception their comrades had met with, came down to meet them. Several of the officers who were in the boats now followed the captain; but the natives made signs that too many should not come at once, and appeared very circumspect and upon their guard, for, as the others approached, they

retired, till having arrived at their houses, they fixed a line, made of the skin of the sea-horse across, and gave the gentlemen to understand they were not to go beyond it. Having settled matters thus far, they brought out various articles of trade, such as sea-horse hides and teeth, seal skins, ropes made of hides, gloves, and half-boots, both curiously ornamented with embroidery. Many different things were purchased, and, having come to a good understanding, the rope was removed, and the captain, officers, &c. were permitted to take a nearer view of their houses. Those which were supposed to be their summer habitations, were nearly of a cylindrical form, covered with the skins of the morse, or sea-horse, and propped up or supported by the bones of whales, as were likewise the roofs of their winter huts. The latter were about five or six feet below the surface of the earth, the bottoms covered with boards, and the tops, after being secured with the bones of whales, as mentioned before, were covered with dried grass and earth, much like those of the natives of Unalashka, but the entrance was at the front, and not on the top. In these were observed many sledges, and various utensils in the fishing way.

The men, for they saw neither women nor children, were stout and well made, and in general below the middle size, though three or four were near six feet high; their colour nearly bordering upon the copper, their faces
broad,

broad, high cheek-bones, small eyes, flat noses, and thick lips: their teeth were bad, and appeared as if worn down to the stumps; they had no holes for the reception of ornaments either in the under-lip or cheek, but they had blue beads, and many others of different kinds, in their ears; their hair was very short, and some were shaved close; in general, they had but little beard. Their dress consisted of jackets with sleeves, some made of dog-skins with the hair on, others with the skin tanned and dressed, and fastened round the middle with a belt; their breeches, stockings, and shoes, were all of a piece, and made of the same materials as the jackets; their shoes were ornamented with embroidery, with does credit to their women, and shews great ingenuity and taste. They were all armed with bows, quivers of arrows at their backs, and spears headed with iron exceeding sharp and bright, and inlaid with white and yellow metal: their bows were by far the best we had seen, but they would not sell one, nor would they trust them out of their hands; their arrows were much like those of America, but the sharp end was composed of sea-horse tooth, and not barbed. They very readily shewed the goodness of their arms by shooting several arrows, which went to a great distance, and with amazing velocity. The person who appeared to be their chief, was quite an old man; he had a mark or line across his nose, and extending beyond his cheek-bones, at the termination of which

which were the forms of two fish: this had the exact appearance of tatowing, and in all probability was done in that manner, but it was the only instance seen. There were numbers of dogs, which they keep for the purpose of drawing their sledges: they were much like those of Kamtschatka, and quite as large. Many of them had evidently been just killed, which induced the captain to suppose they were intended as sacrifices to their gods, to insure them success and victory in case we attacked them. In various spots, at some little distance from their houses, were piles of stones, in which were placed upright the ribs or jaw-bones of whales: the captain was very desirous of knowing the use or intention of them, but could not learn.

The natives behaved with great civility, and the old chief made the captain a present of several fine trout, in return for some beads which he had received, and one of them brought a large piece of sea-horse flesh, which he made signs was very good; but the gentlemen declined eating. They were likewise entertained with a dance: three of them sung, at the same time striking a kind of drum with a stick, while three others danced, putting themselves in various postures, but keeping time to the strokes of the drum. Several of their canoes were seen, which were nearly the same as the large open canoes of Sandwich Sound. The hills were composed of rocks and loose stones, with very little verdure upon them; but the plains were extensive

five

five and well clothed with plants and herbs, amongst which were scurvy-grass, colt's foot, cotton-grass, and monk's hood: trees were quite out of the question, not a twig being seen in any part.

Having made as many observations as the time would permit, the captain took his leave of them, and returned to the ship. At three in the afternoon, we weighed and made sail, and stood to the northward, tracing this part of the coast, which proved to be the continent of Asia, till five in the afternoon, when we bore away to N. E. by N, with the wind at S. S. W. There were many conjectures formed respecting this part we had just left, some supposing it to be part of Asia, and others declaring in favour of its being part of the great island Alatschka, so curiously and accurately laid down in a book intitled Russian Discoveries in the Northern Archipelago, by a Mr. Staehlin. Time however proved the former conjecture to be true, it being the Tschutschinofs, which, in the Russian charts, is laid down several degrees farther to the northward.

C H A P. XIX.

We now proceeded in a N. E. by N. direction, for the coast of America. On the eleventh, at eight in the morning, the extremes of the isles of Disappointment bore from S. 9 deg. E. to S.

75 deg. E. and the north point of the bay we left S. 40 deg. W. our soundings being twenty-five fathom, broken shells and gravel; at noon, our observed latitude was 66 deg. 5 min. N. At four, in the afternoon, we shoaled our water to ten fathom, when we altered our course to E. N. E. the islands of Disappointment bearing S. 26 deg. W. and S. 34 deg. W. and the extremes of land to the eastward N. 66 deg. E. and S. 20 deg. E. At five, our depth of water was only seven fathom, so hauled our wind, and, at half past five, we dropped our anchors, in six fathom, with a brown sandy bottom, the eastern land bearing from N. 73 deg. E. to S. $8\frac{1}{2}$ deg. E. and the isles of Disappointment S. 33 deg. W. and S. 39 deg. W. Soon after captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound to the N. E.; and, after a stay of about half an hour, she returned, with an account of the water proving very shallow in that quarter: this determined him to weigh the first opportunity, because, if blowing weather came on, the ships might drag their anchors, and by that means run into shoal water. At nine, we had a breeze from the northward, which both vessels took the advantage of, and got up their anchors, standing to the westward.

At four the next morning, August 12th, the weather was moderate and fine, our course W. N. W. with the wind at N. but at eight it became cloudy, the extremes of the eastern land, part of America, bearing S. 52 deg. E. and S.

36 deg. E. and the extremes of the land to the westward, part of Asia, from S. 60 deg. W. to S. 49 deg. W. our soundings being twenty-nine fathom, sandy bottom.

At noon, our observed latitude was 66 deg. 19 min. N. when a high peaked hill upon the American shore bore S. 44 deg. E. At eight in the evening, the peaked hill bore S. 24 deg. E. and the isles of Disappointment S. 8 deg. W. and S. 15 deg. W. distant about eight leagues. At twelve we tacked and stood N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. the wind N. W. by N. We were obliged to tack frequently in the course of the day, on account of our irregular soundings.

The next day we had light airs and calms, with fair and pleasant weather, and saw many arctic and other gulls about, with a few guillemots. At eight, the land to the westward, which was now almost out of sight, bore S. 26 deg. W. distant twelve leagues, our soundings from twenty to thirteen fathoms. At noon it became quite calm, when the western land bore from S. 27 deg. W. to S. 34 deg. W. the peaked hill S. 29 deg. E. and the northermost part of the American continent S. 51 deg. E. At eight in the evening, we had a fine breeze from the S. E. our course being N. when the northern part of the eastern land bore S. 70 deg. E. distant twelve or fourteen leagues. At twelve, we had fresh breezes from the southward, with cloudy weather, but no land in sight.

At

At four in the morning, August 14th, we had fresh breezes from the S. E. with squally weather, our soundings twenty-two fathom. At nine, we saw land, the extremes of which bore from N. $67\frac{1}{2}$ deg. E. to N. 14 deg. W. and at ten, it became hazy, with small drizzling rain. At noon, the breeze freshened to a gale, the extremes of the land bearing N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. and E. We had many fulmars about, as well as gulls and guillemots. At two in the afternoon, we shoaled our water to thirteen fathom, so tacked and stood to the S. S. W. At four, wore ship, our course E. N. E. and at five bore away to W. the extremes of the land in sight from E. by S. to N. W. by N. the nearest part bearing N. about three leagues distant. At eight, our soundings were sixteen fathom, and at twelve it was squally, with rain.

The next morning was cloudy, with small rain, and strong gales from the S. by W. attended with hard squalls, which, with a heavy sea going, tumbled us about terribly. At six, we were obliged to take in all our sails but the fore-sail, main-top-sail, and mizen-stay-sail, and to get down top-gallant-yards. At eight, it became rather more moderate, and our soundings were twenty-three fathom, with a muddy bottom. At noon, our latitude was 68 deg. 20 min. N. when we altered our course to N. W. the wind being S. S. W. In the afternoon, the wind decreased greatly, and our soundings were twenty-six fathom. At twelve, we hauled our wind, our course being W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.

At

At one in the morning, August 16th, we bore away, our course N. N. W. the wind S. by W. but at four, as it became thick and foggy, we hauled our wind again. At seven, the fog clearing away, we pursued our former course. Several small birds of the water-wagtail genus flew round the ships, and some perched upon the rigging. At four in the afternoon, our soundings were twenty-three fathom, and at eight, twenty fathom, the bottom a soft mud.

The next day was foggy, with fine clear intervals of sunshine, our course N. N. E. At eight, our soundings were fourteen fathom; and we began to experience more cold than we had done before, the thermometer standing at 35 deg. At ten, we had thirteen fathom, when we hauled our wind, keeping a N. W. course. At noon, our observed latitude was 70 deg. 32 min. N. and at one in the afternoon we descried a large field of ice, extending from N. N. E. to W. by N. and saw several morfes, or sea-horses, swimming about. At four, it coming on foggy, and being very near the ice, we tacked ship, our soundings twenty-three fathom. At half past five, we tacked and stood again to the N. W. but were soon after obliged to desist, and pursue our former course, on account of the ice. We now saw from the mast-head another large field of ice bearing S. W. We continued tacking in this manner till twelve, when, having only thirteen fathom, we proceeded in a W. N. W. direction. We pursued this course till four

Vol. I. O the

the next morning, at which time we tacked in twenty fathom. At six, we had a shower of fleet, and at seven, having only twelve fathom, we again tacked and stood to the N. W. the wind being W. by S. and W. S. W. We were now in rather a disagreeable situation, being unable to proceed to the eastward on account of the shoalness of water, and the wind not permitting us to weather the ice on the other tack; we besides found a strong current setting to the eastward. At eleven we saw the ice again, distant about three miles, and at twelve were close in with it: it appeared higher than that of yesterday, and made in various odd forms, and was that kind of ice called packed ice. We soon after tacked, the thermometer standing at $32\frac{1}{2}$ deg. and our observed latitude was 70 deg. 43 min. N. We saw four or five arctic gulls and two whales. At half past five in the afternoon, we descried a low patch of barren land, almost inclosed with ice, extending from E. to S. E. by S. our distance from the nearest part being about three miles and our soundings thirteen fathom. Captain Cook, called this Icy Cape. Our longitude to-day, at eight in the morning, was 198 deg. 34 min. E. At six, the Discovery, being to the eastward of her consort, shoaled her water almost suddenly to six fathom and a quarter, when she directly fired a gun and tacked, as did the Resolution, whose depth of water was nine fathom. At seven our soundings varied from seven to thirteen fathoms, but very irre-

irregularly, and at eight they were from eight to ten fathoms. We found that the current had carried us several miles further to the eastward than we were yesterday. At half past eleven, we again tacked, standing to the S. W. with the wind N. W.

The next day, August 19th, the weather was very variable; sometimes the sky was totally obscured by showers of sleet and snow, and at other times scarce a cloud was to be seen. At eight in the morning, we tacked and stood to the N. W. with the wind W. S. W. our soundings being thirteen fathom. At eleven, passed many pieces of loose ice, and at twelve saw more ice a-head, our observed latitude being 70 deg. 8 min. N. At two, we tacked and stood to the southward, and soon after, observing many herds of morsees sleeping upon the ice, captain Cook ordered our boats to attack and kill some. In the course of the afternoon, the Resolution's people killed nine, and the Discovery's four. As soon as they were brought on board, the seamen began to cut them up, and a fresh meal being in our present situation a very, desirable object, several steaks were taken off and broiled, which were declared to be very tolerable eating by some, and much disliked by others: the flavour of the meat was fishy, and strongly impregnated with train-oil, and, in its appearance, very coarse and black. Having secured our boats, we pursued our course, and at eight our soundings were fourteen fathom.

It was thick and foggy almost the whole of the next day, August 20th. At three in the morning, thought we saw the appearance of land, the extremes of which bore N. E. and S. E. by S. distant about four or five miles. We had light airs, and our soundings were fourteen fathom.

The fog continued till half past ten the following day, when it became tolerably clear, and we saw land extending from E. N. E. to S. E. by E. At noon, our observed latitude was 69 deg. 33 min. N. our longitude, at eight in the morning, being 195 deg. 56 min. E.; our soundings were thirteen fathom, and we had but little wind. At four in the afternoon, the extremes bore E. by N. and S. by W. our distance off shore being six or seven leagues. At eight, we found a small set of the water from the N. N. E. and at twelve we had light airs and fair weather.

At four the next morning, August 22d, the extremes of the land in sight bore from S. 10 deg. W. to N. 73 deg. E. our distance from the shore about eight or nine leagues. It soon after became thick and foggy, and continued so the remaining part of the day. At eight our soundings were seventeen fathom and a half, with a sandy bottom, our course being W. the wind S. S. W. At noon, we had nineteen fathom, the bottom a hard mud, and at eight in the evening they increased to twenty-one fathom. In the course of the day, we observed many
flocks

flocks of small birds flying to the southward, and saw a great number of ducks. At twelve, we heard a noise resembling that of a surf breaking over rocks: we immediately wore ship and stood off to the E. S. E. our depth of water being twenty two fathom. The winds throughout the day were very light and variable.

In the morning we had light breezes and thick foggy weather, and at half past one past some drift ice. At eight we had twenty-two fathom, and at noon our course was W. S. W. the wind N. At four in the afternoon the fog cleared away, but the weather was cloudy, and we had several showers of snow; the thermometer varying from $42\frac{1}{2}$ deg. to 35 deg. At twelve our soundings increased to twenty five fathom.

We had open cloudy weather the next day, Aug. 24th, with fresh breezes from the N. W. our course as yesterday. At eight our depth of water was twenty fathom, with a sandy bottom, and our longitude about 190 deg. 25 min. E. At noon our latitude was 69 deg. 30 min. N. and in the afternoon we had several showers of snow, and observed a swell from the W. N. W. At eight we had thirty fathoms.

At three in the morning, we tacked and stood S. by W. the wind W. by S. and at five saw the appearance of land to the S. E. which we immediately stood for, but soon after discovered it to be only a fog-bank, so resumed our former course. At six the wind shifted to the S. W. our course being W. N. W. and at

eight we got twenty-nine fathoms, with a muddy bottom. In the afternoon we had fresh gales from the W. S. W. and at six passed some drift wood. At eight our soundings were twenty-eight fathoms.

The wind shifted in the course of the night to N. N. W. our course being W. and W. by S. At six, Aug. 26th, we had some land birds about the ship, and at eight saw the ice from mast-head extending from N. by E. to N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. our longitude being 184 deg. 2 min. E. At noon our latitude was 69 deg. 38 min. N. the ice then bearing from N. E. by N. to N. by W. distant about four or five miles; and our course being W. by S. with the wind at N. N. W. At six, the wind coming round to the south-eastward, we hauled off the ice, being not more than half a mile distant from it. At eight we tacked ship, and stood to the N. E. the extremes of the ice bearing N. N. E. and S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. our soundings being twenty-six fathoms.

At four in the morning, Aug. 27th, we tacked and stood to the S. W. having fresh gales from the S. S. E. attended with rain. At one in the afternoon, saw the ice from W. S. W. to N. W. our soundings being twenty-six fathom, with a muddy bottom. At half past five it came on thick and foggy, and soon after we had rain. We also saw several morfes or sea-horses, and many small birds, which we supposed to be the *tringa lobata* of Linnaeus. At seven, being near the ice, our boats were got out to make
another

another attack upon the sea-horses, which though not very palatable, were still preferable to salt provisions, and they besides afforded us a good stock of blubber, which we afterwards found of singular service to us, as our stock of oil must otherwise have been all exhausted, without the possibility of renewing it. They returned at nine, but were obliged to leave the major part of what they had killed behind, as it came on foggy, and they were apprehensive of losing the ships, as well as being enclosed by the ice. At twelve we tacked and stood to the westward, the wind being N. N. W. and the weather thick and foggy.

The next morning at five, we tacked ship, and pursued a N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. course, having light breezes from the W. by N. and much loose ice about. From eight till noon it was nearly calm, during which time most of our boats were employed in killing sea-horses, which were in this part numerous beyond imagination. We observed many of their young, which they are remarkably careful of, and will defend to the utmost: upon the least appearance of danger they embrace them with their fore feet, and plunge into the water. Our people killed several of them, but the old ones would not quit the boats till they were destroyed also; and once they were very near staving the Discovery's small cutter with their enormous teeth. At four the ice extended from N. to S. S. W. our course being S. with the wind E. S. E. At half past

five we tacked, and stood to the N. E. not being able to clear the ice upon the other tack, the eastern extremity of which bore S. by W. distant about one mile, and extended a considerable distance to the S. W. At seven it blew pretty fresh, and at eight we got down top-gallant-yards, and reefed our top-sails; our soundings were twenty-six fathom. At twelve our course was E. N. E. the ice, which we were very near, bearing N. W. The thermometer to-day was as low as 31 deg.

The next day, Aug. 29th, we had dark cloudy weather, with moderate gales from the W. N. W. and N. W. our course being S. W. At four the ice bore from N. to W. by S. and at eight there fell several showers of small rain, attended with frequent thick fogs. At nine, our longitude being nearly 186 deg. 18 min. E. we saw land, being part of the continent of Asia, bearing from S. S. W. to S. W. our soundings at this time were twenty-three fathoms, with a sandy bottom. At noon, our latitude by account was 68 deg. 46 min. N. when the extremes of the land bore from S. 55 deg. E. five miles distant, to N. 85 deg. W. three leagues distant, the nearest part bearing S. by W. about two miles, our soundings being eight fathom. We soon after tacked, and stood to the N. N. E. the wind N. W. The land to the eastward was low and level, that behind it moderately high, with little or no snow, but the whole as barren as can well be conceived: we did not observe the
least

least ice upon or near the shore. At two we tacked and stood W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At four we had showers of small rain, our soundings were fifteen, and at five twelve fathoms. At six tacked again, and proceeded in a N. E. by N. direction, the extremes of the land bearing S. E. and W. S. W. our distance off shore about three miles. At ten we brought-to, main-top-sail to the mast, for the night.

At two the next morning, Aug. 30th, we bore away and made sail, our course E. the wind N. N. W. the weather dark and gloomy, with continued showers of snow. At eight, our soundings were twenty fathom, and at ten saw the land bearing S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At eleven, the weather being clearer, we saw the extremes of it, which bore S. E. by E. and W. by N. our soundings regularly decreasing as we approached it, from twenty to ten fathoms, the nearest part being about three miles distant. It was of a very moderate elevation, and almost entirely covered with snow, which had fallen in the course of the day. We soon after altered our course to S. E. and at noon the land extended from W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. to E. S. E. our soundings fourteen fathoms. At one in the afternoon our course was N. E. by E. the wind N. by W. At four our depth of water was fifteen fathom, and at six it shoaled to ten, on which account we hauled off. At eight, the extremes bore W. S. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the nearest part being about six miles distant. At half past eleven we hauled the

O 5

wind,

wind, and stood off for the night, our course being N. E. the wind N. N. W.

We bore away again to E. N. E. at two in the morning and at four the land bore S. E. by E. and S. W. by W. our distance from the nearest part being four leagues. At six we bore away to E. by S. and at eight we had twenty-two fathom; the eastern extreme appeared like an island, but we afterwards found that it was connected with the main by low land, and projected considerably from it. This part captain Cook called East Cape. At noon it was hazy and cloudy over the land; our latitude observed was 67 deg. 38 min. N. At four the eastermost land in sight bore S. 9 leagues distant, and the East Cape N. 80 deg. W. three leagues. At half past five saw more land bearing, S. 77 deg. E. so hauled farther off, our soundings being twelve fathom. At twelve it became squally with showers of fleet, our depth of water being thirteen fathom. In the course of the day we saw great numbers of brown sheerwaters, and some puffins and sea parrots.

The next day, Sept. 1st. we had open cloudy weather, with slight showers of fleet. At half past two in the morning, we tacked and stood N. E. by E. At six we observed large flocks of birds flying past us, and at eight our soundings were sixteen fathom, with a black sandy bottom, the extremes of the land bearing S. E. by E. and S. W. our distance from shore being between three and four leagues. At four
in

in the afternoon we were within seven miles of the land, which was moderately high and level, and without those irregular summits so frequent on the American coast: we did not however see the least appearance of trees.

Early the next morning we bore away to E. by N. the wind N. W. by N. and at four we had fresh breezes, with frequent showers of snow. At six we saw some distant land to the eastward, appearing like an island, which bore S. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. We had many whales about, and variety of sea-birds, such as sheerwaters, fulmars, arctic and other gulls, and numbers of the scalloped-toad sandpipers, *tringa lobata*, Lin. Our observed latitude was 66 deg. 40 min. N. and our soundings twenty-one fathom. At three in the afternoon, we saw more land, bearing S. 72 deg. E. and at ten were standing round the eastermost part of the continent, near the spot we anchored off on the 10th of August, our course E. S. E. Part of the fore and the whole of the afternoon were very pleasant: the land, as we proceeded farther to the southward, became in general more lofty and elevated, but still very regular, with many low and long extended plains, which were well clothed with herbs and plants of various kinds.

Our weather the next day was clear and pleasant, with a fine breeze from the N. W. our course S. S. W. At eight we were abreast of the place we stopped at on August the 10th, the north point of the road bearing S. 64 deg. W.

W. four miles distant. The wind being fair, captain Cook pursued his course, and continued to trace the land, which now made a considerable bend to the south-westward. By the help of our glasses, we saw two or three towns as we passed along, but none of the inhabitants would venture out to us. We had many birds about, and a hawk flew by the ships. Our latitude to-day was 65 deg. 31 min. N. At two in the afternoon, we observed a small drain of the tide from the N. E. At four, the two points of the road bore N. 10 deg. E. and N. 40 deg. W. and the southermost land in sight S. 22 deg. W. At twelve, we hauled the wind, our course E. by N. In the morning early, September 4th, we bore away again as usual, our course being N. W. by W. At eight we had no ground at twenty-five fathom; but at eleven shoaled from twelve to seven fathom, and soon after to five: we directly hauled off, and our soundings became gradually deeper. At noon we saw a spit of low land, running off from the southern extreme, which bore S. by W. As we approached this, our depth of water became less. Our latitude was 64 deg. 39 min. N. At three in the afternoon, we bore away for the American continent, our course S. S. E. the wind N. by W. and N. N. W. At four, the southermost land in sight bore S. 46 deg. W. At nine, we hauled the wind, our course being E. by N.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

CAPT. COOK
VOYAGE
IN THE YEARS

1776. 1777. 1778. 1779. 1780.

VOL. II.

COOK

Y. O. A. G. E.

THE

THE

VOL. II.

AN
AUTHENTIC
NARRATIVE
OF A
VOYAGE
PERFORMED BY
Captain COOK and Captain CLERKE,
IN HIS MAJESTY'S SHIPS
RESOLUTION AND DISCOVERY,
During the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779 and 1780;
IN SEARCH OF A
NORTH - WEST PASSAGE
Between the Continents of ASIA and AMERICA.

INCLUDING
A faithful Account of all their DISCOVERIES, and the
unfortunate Death of Captain COOK.

ILLUSTRATED WITH
A CHART.
VOL. II.

ALTENBURG,
Printed and sold by GOTTLLOB
EMANUEL RICHTER.
1788.

50/47/256

THE
LAW
OF
THE
STATE
OF
NEW
YORK

OF
THE
JUDICIAL
DEPARTMENT
IN
RESPONSE
TO
A
RESOLUTION
OF
THE
SENATE
PASSED
MAY
15TH
1846

AND
OF
THE
JUDICIAL
DEPARTMENT
IN
RESPONSE
TO
A
RESOLUTION
OF
THE
SENATE
PASSED
MAY
15TH
1846

AND
OF
THE
JUDICIAL
DEPARTMENT
IN
RESPONSE
TO
A
RESOLUTION
OF
THE
SENATE
PASSED
MAY
15TH
1846

C O N T E N T S.

O F T H E

S E C O N D V O L U M E.

C H A P. I.

Leave the continent of Asia, and direct our course for that of Amerika—transactions in Norton Sound—continue to trace the coast till our progress is stopped by the shoalness of the water—arrival at Unalafchka. I

C H A P. II.

Transactions and occurrences in the harbour of Samganoodha. 21

C H A P. III.

Some description of the island, and its produce—account of the people—stature—drefs—houses—furniture—food—cookery—employment—method of fishing, &c. &c. 27

C H A P. IV.

Transactions and occurrences till our first making Mow'wee, one of the Sandwich Isles. 38

C H A P. V.

Transactions and occurrences till our anchoring in Karacakooah Bay, in the Island of O'why'hee. 44

C H A P.

C H A P. VI.

Are visited by two women of rank, and a chief named Purraah—the arrival of Terriaboò—an excursion into the country—some account of it—the captains receive a present from Terriaboò—leave Karakacooah Bay—the Resolution springs her fore-mast, and is obliged to return—audacity of the Indians in thieving—death of Captain Cook, and proceedings in consequence—procure some of his remains and bury them—our departure.

55

C H A P. VII.

Arrival at O'whàow—find no convenient watering-place—arrive at O'tow'wi—transactions there—depart from thence, and proceed to O'neehow—occurrences there—leave Sandwich Isles, and shape our course for Kamtschatka.

79

C H A P. VIII.

Description of Sandwich Isles—situation—produce—inhabitants—dress—comparative view of the dresses of the various nations seen in the course of the voyage—houses—furniture.

89

C H A P. IX.

Food—cookery—amusements—manufactures—religious ceremonies—morats—priest—weapons—government.

107

C H A P. X.

Transactions and occurrences till our arrival at the bay of Awatschka, in the province of Kamtschatka.

121

C H A P.

C H A P. XI.

An officer sent on shore—his reception there—the Major's letter sent to Bolschaia-reeka—the arrival of the Discovery—one of the governor's domestics arrives—the conduct of Ismyloff—a trade opened for furs—Captain Gore, Mr. King, &c. attended by the German, set off for Bolschaia-reeka—the Russians terribly afflicted with the scurvy—meet with success in hauling the seine.

133

C H A P. XII.

Arrival of the Major—who is received with proper ceremony—and dines with the Captain—he visits the Discovery—and dines there—departs for Bolschaia-reeka—the Captain sends dispatches by him—an eruption of the Awachinskoy mountain—we proceed on our voyage to the northward.

144

C H A P. XIII.

A short description of the town of St. Peter and Paul, and a few articles respecting the Kamtschadales—a revolt at Bolschaia-reeka—salary of the governor—the amount of the annual tribute of Kamtschatka—the duty of goods exported and imported—number of the military order.

152

C H A P. XIV.

Transactions and occurrences from leaving Kamtschatka to our making the coast of Asia.

155

C H A P. XV.

Transactions and occurrences from our making the Asiatic coast, till our arrival at the harbour of St. Peter and Paul.

179

C H A P.

C H A P. XVI.

The changes which took place in consequence of Capt. Clerk's death—his funeral—the arrival of a gentleman from the governor—and of one of the Empress's galliots from Ochotzk—the governor visits us—we depart from Kamtschatka—a short sketch of the Russians and Kamtschadales. 190

C H A P. XVII.

We trace the coast, and fall in with the Kurile Islands—make Japan, and see two vessels of that country—discover Sulphur Island—and bear away for the Bashee Isles, but without success—pursue our course for China—make the islands of Lema—and anchor off Macao—but remove the next day to the Typa—Chinese traders come on board—drunkenness of our people—arrival of two small ships from Manilla—leave China. 198.

C H A P. XVIII.

Arrive at Pulo Condor—transactions there—depart from thence—pass the straits of Banca and Sunda—arrive at Cracatoa—Prince's Island—The Cape of Good Hope—Orkney Islands—and England. 217

CHAP. I.

At half past five the next morning. Sept. 5th, we saw land bearing S. E. by S. which we soon after bore away for, with the wind N. by W. At seven, saw more land, making like a hummock, and bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At eight, our depth of water was twenty fathom, and soon after we passed a dead whale, upon which great numbers of gulls and petrels were regaling. At noon, we had fresh breezes, and the weather became hazy: our soundings were eighteen fathom. At half past five, saw more land bearing S. E. and at seven we hauled up to E. N. E. At twelve, we increased our soundings to twenty fathom.

The weather at four the following morning, Sept. 6th, was fair, our course was N. E. by E. and the wind N. by W. We soon after saw land bearing from N. 9 deg. E. to N. 17 deg. E. The extremes at eight bore N. $7\frac{1}{2}$ deg. W. and N. $7\frac{1}{2}$ E. At eleven we were becalmed, and at noon our latitude was 63 deg. 57 min. N. when the highest part of the land, making in a peak, bore N. 12 deg. W. At eight, we saw the island, Sledge Island, we anchored under

on the 6th of August, which now bore N. 27 deg. W. seven or eight leagues distant; our soundings were thirteen fathom, and at twelve they decreased to eleven and a half.

Our course, at four the next morning, was N. by W. the wind N. E. and the weather fine and pleasant. At eight, Sledge Island bore N. 59 deg. W. and at noon N. 74 deg. W. our latitude being 64 deg. 15 min. N. and soundings ten fathom, with a muddy bottom. At four, our course was N. E. the wind W. when Sledge Isle bore S. 86 deg. W. At nine, we saw a fire on the shore, and soon after two or three Americans put off in their canoes. Captain Cook seeing this, ordered the ships to lay-to, that they might the more easily overtake us; but they would not venture near, but shouted and hallooed for some time, and then returned to the shore. At half past nine, we made sail, and stood to the eastward, our distance from the land being five miles. At eleven, we hauled more in shore, and at twelve our depth of water was thirteen fathom.

Sept, 8th. At one in the morning, having but very light winds, and the ships drifting in shore, we dropped our anchors, and found a tide or current setting to the W. S. W. at the rate of a mile an hour. Sledge Isle now bore W. 9 deg. S. and the easternmost land N. 53 deg. E. At five, we weighed and made sail, keeping a N. by E. course, with the wind at W. At eight we had nine fathom, with a muddy
bot-

bottom, and saw many white porpusses about. At eleven, we bore away to E. N. E. the wind being W. S. W. At noon, our latitude was 64 deg. 21 min. N. when the eastern extreme bore N. 65 deg. E. At four, the extremes of the land bore N. 59 deg. E. and N. 87 deg. W. our distance from the nearest about four miles. At five, were passing a deep bay, formed by the eastern extreme, as set at noon, and another point, which at four, bore N. 2 deg. W. At seven, we were abreast of the east point, at about two miles distance, and hauled round it, carrying regular soundings from fifteen to thirteen fathoms. At eight, we had fresh breezes, with dark, cloudy weather, and soon after let go our anchors; the east point of the bay bore S. 37 deg. W. and the northermost land in sight N. 2 deg. E. This part of the coast was high, though not remarkably so; that next the sea was in some places very rocky, in others low and level, and well covered with verdure, but there was no appearance of wood.

We got up our anchors at four the next morning, and proceeded in a N. N. E. direction, and soon after saw land to the eastward, appearing like two isles. At six, we saw more land to the N. by E. and at half past seven shoaled our water to seven fathom; we therefore hauled more in shore, and kept a N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. course. We now observed plenty of trees of the fir kind upon the sides, but none near the summits of the hills; in size they appeared

to be equal to those of Sandwich Sound. At nine, the weather became very thick and hazy, but at half past it cleared up, and we bore away. At ten, captain Cook made the signal for the Discovery's large cutter, which, in company with the Resolution's, was sent a-head to sound, and soon after the Discovery, as drawing the least water, was ordered to take the lead, our soundings being from eight to five fathoms. We continued standing on till three, when, having only four fathom and a half, the Resolution hauled up to the S. S. E. and fired a gun, as a signal for the Discovery to do the same: the boats were likewise ordered to return. We found the water had a great degree of freshness in it, and was besides not near so heavy as salt water, three ounces of this being eleven grains lighter. At four, our soundings were four and five fathoms, and a remarkable smooth, but rocky hummock, bore N. 13 deg. W. four or five miles distant: this hummock captain Cook called Bald Head. At six, we deepened our water to six fathom, and spent the remaining part of the night upon our tacks.

At four, the extremes of the eastern land bore N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and E. S. E. and Bald Head N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At seven, we were very near the shore, which afforded but little prospect of a harbour: the sides of the hills were well clothed with trees, which appeared to be all of one species. At eight we bore away, our course S. S. W. the wind N. and at nine boats from both ships were sent

sent to explore the shore. Our observed latitude to-day was 64 deg. 33 min. N. when Bald Head bore N. 35 deg. E. and the extremes of the eastern land S. 85 deg. E. and N. 49 deg. E. At two in the afternoon, the boats returned, with an account of having found a tolerably convenient watering place, and that a supply of wood might be procured without much trouble, as the beach was in many parts covered with abundance of drift-wood, which suited our purpose much better than any we could cut. The shore was so strait as not to afford the least shelter for our vessels, but they might ride pretty securely in five or six fathoms, at the distance of four miles from the shore. They saw great plenty of whortle-berries and cran-berries, and brought some red currants on board, which were given to the captain, and near a boat load of grafs for the few remaining goats. The place did not appear to abound with birds, for they observed only a few woodpeckers, *picus tri-dactylus*, among the trees, and some shags upon the shore. The natives had been there very lately, which was evident from the print of their feet in the sand, but they saw nothing of them. Many of the inland hills were a solid mass of rock, without even the least particle of soil upon them. Captain Cook not altogether approving of this place, the boats were got in, and both ships stood towards the eastern land. At half past seven, our course was N. W. by W. the wind N. by E. Bald Head bearing N. 24
B deg.

deg. W. and the extremes of the eastern land N. 7 deg. W. and N. 13 deg. E. our distance from the south end of it four or five miles, and distant land seen over this, extending as far as E. S. E. At eight, we anchored for the night, about three miles to the southward of the eastern land, in nine fathom of water, and found a tide running to the S. S. W. at the rate of a knot per hour.

At half past three the next morning, Sept. 11th, we got up our anchors, and having made sail, proceeded in a N. W. by W. direction till half past six, when we tacked and stood E. N. E. At eight, the south end of the land we anchored under last night, which was generally taken for an island, but which we now found was joined to the main by a neck of low land, bore N. 45 $\frac{1}{2}$ deg. W. five or six miles distant. This, which made in a bluff cape, was called Cape Denbigh. At nine, the Resolution tacked, having got near a shoal; but the Discovery standing on, and not seeing her danger, a jack was hoisted at the fore top-gallant-mast-head, and a gun fired, as a signal, upon which she likewise tacked, but not before she was within two cables length of the shoal. At twelve, both vessels dropped their anchors, our latitude being 64 deg. 19 min. N. We were now in a large bay, separated from that of yesterday by a ridge of moderately high land, and terminating, as observed before, in a rocky bluff, Cape Denbigh, which bore N. 52 deg. W. three miles distant; the other, or eastern

eastern point of the bay, was formed by a hummock, which we afterwards found was detached from the main, bearing S. 51 deg. E. The land at the bottom of the bay was in some parts composed of very low land, in others it was of a considerable elevation; the whole had assumed a brown hue, occasioned by the plants, &c. which at this season of the year, were decaying very fast. At two in the afternoon, boats well manned were sent on shore, for the purpose of cutting wood, of which we saw great plenty upon the beach. The sides of the hills, which were of a very gradual ascent, were well clothed with birch and willows, but they were small in size; among these were great numbers of red and black currant trees, with plenty of fruit. The higher parts and summits of the hills were almost entirely covered with crow and whortle-berries, which afforded a most pleasing and salutary repast to every one on board. Upon different parts of the beach, under the hills, were several huts, but in a very ruinous condition; from their appearance, we supposed them to be erected merely for the temporary employment of fishing: they were built of drift-wood; the roofs, which were almost flat, with a hole in the middle for the evacuation of smoke, were supported by four stout posts; the hearths were placed immediately under this hole; on each side, and at the farther end, were benches, elevated from the bottom about five or six inches, and covered with dry grass, upon which

the natives sit and sleep. In and near the huts were scattered fish and other bones, apparently those of birds; in one was found a pair of snow shoes, and in another several pieces of deers horn. The entrances to them all were sheltered from the S. E. winds, and, upon that part of the shore which was exposed to it, there were no huts, which renders it probable that those winds prevail and blow violently during some seasons of the year. The boats were soon loaded, but we found great difficulty in getting them off, on account of the little depth of water, which obliged us to heave a good deal of our cargoes overboard. The head of the bay is entirely surrounded by a flat which runs some distance from the shore, and even at three and four miles distance there is only four and four fathoms and a half. It was near nine before the boats got on board, and, during their absence, many of the inhabitants had been alongside, of whom were purchased dried fish, berries of several kinds, bows and arrows, and other articles in the curiosity-way. They appeared very plump and full of flesh, had ornaments in a hole on each side their under-lip, and had those bladder-like jackets over their other apparel, which consisted principally of the skins of martins and the spotted field-mice; their hair was short and black, and their canoes were like those of the natives of Unalashka. The boats being cleared and hoisted in, we weighed and made sail, steering for the shore we left yesterday, which cap-
tain

tain Cook thought more convenient in many respects than this, particularly in the article of watering, as we here only found one small spring, and that was situated near the top of a hill.

Our course the next morning, Sept. 12th, at four, was W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. the wind N. by E; Cape Denbigh then bore E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. four leagues distant, and the small isle or hummock which formed the eastern point of the bay, and which was called Besborough isle, S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. Our weather was now fine and pleasant, with scarce a cloud to be seen. At eight, we were running along shore, at about two miles distance, having from seven to five fathoms. At eleven, the Discovery came-to in four fathom and a half, with a sandy bottom, and two miles from the shore. The Resolution stood off and on till three in the afternoon, and then dropped her anchor likewise, when Cape Denbigh bore N. 80 deg. E. Bald Head N. 32 deg. E. Besborough Isle S. 80 deg. E. and the two points of the road N. 16 deg. E. and S. $1\frac{1}{2}$ deg. E. off shore a mile and a half. All our boats were now got out, and the carpenters, coopers, and empty casks sent on shore, and every body was soon immersed in business.

September 13th. All hands employed as yesterday. We found this part of the world very pleasant: the whole face of the country, notwithstanding its barren aspect at a distance, is covered with grass, and interspersed with groves of trees, chiefly those of the pine and

birch: of the former we observed only one species, of the latter four. The low lands were covered with various kinds of berries, particularly crow and whortle-berries; and among the shrubs we found the marsh cistus, *ledum palustre*, Lin., which, upon trial, proved a very excellent substitute for tea, and was valued accordingly. The hills were of an easy ascent, and from the tops of them was a fine prospect inland, where the spectator might behold woods and lawns finely contrasted, with rivulets winding through them in various parts, rendering the scene delightful. Among the land birds, which were neither various nor numerous, we saw the chatterer, the three-toed wood-pecker, the lesser red-poll, the yellow-crowned finch, a species of tit-mouse, the large American bullfinch, and a species of crane. The latter generally were seen in flocks, flew high, and were so very shy as to elude our utmost vigilance. The water fowl were puffins, shags, and a large species of gull, totally white, which may possibly be the *larus eburneus* mentioned in Phipps's voyage.

There were several huts upon the beach, in every respect the same as at the other place. In the forenoon, our people on shore were visited by an old woman and a man, who appeared to be her son; they brought many fine trout with them, which were very gladly purchased. The man was a most miserable spectacle, and apparently eaten up with disease.

The

The 14th was spent in the same manner as yesterday, till noon, when the Resolution hoisted a signal for every one to return on board. This part having been laid down in some charts, particularly in that very accurate little map prefixed to the Russian Discoveries in the Northern Archipelago, as an island, known by the name of the great island Alatschka, captain Cook was determined to put it beyond a doubt either the one way or the other, and for that purpose dispatched the great cutters of both ships, well manned, and victualled, and under the command of lieutenant King, with orders to explore the farthest part of the bay, or found, we were in on the 9th instant, which was the only place where he had any doubt remaining. At five, both vessels weighed, and proceeded towards the other bay, where captain Cook proposed waiting till the arrival of the boats. At half past eight, we anchored for the night, about five or six miles from the shore.

We had fine, clear, pleasant weather the next day, Sept. 15th, and at half past four got up our anchors, and pursued an E. by N. and E. N. E. course, with the wind at N. At noon, our observed latitude was 64 deg. 22 min. N. when Cape Denbigh bore N. 78 deg. W. two leagues distant, and the easternmost land S. 50 deg. E. At six, we came to in five fathom of water, with a sandy bottom.

The weather on the sixteenth was equally pleasant with that of the fifteenth, and all hands

were permitted to go ashore on liberty, and collect berries. Several shooting parties were also formed, who met with tolerable success; but captain Cook, who was more anxious to ascertain the longitude of the place, and to make observations with the dipping needle, than to enter into parties of pleasure, remained on board till near evening, and then just indulged himself with a walk on shore. At eight in the evening, the boats returned, with an account of the whole being a continuation of the continent.

At six the next morning, we got up our anchors and made sail, our course southerly, the wind E. by S. and E. S. E. It was now captain Cook's intention to trace the land from hence to the spot where he lost his anchor on the 19th of July, and then proceed to Unalaska. Our observed latitude was 64 deg. 12 min. N. and at seven we were abreast of Besborough Isle, between which and the main we proposed going, but in the space of ten minutes we shoaled our water from ten to four fathoms and a quarter, so of course tacked ship and stood S. W. our distance from the island being three quarters of a mile. We observed a low point of land running from it, upon which was much drift-wood and two or three houses, but we saw no signs of inhabitants. At twelve, we altered our course to N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the wind as before.

At two in the morning, Sept. 18th, we tacked and stood S. E. by S. and S. E. and at four Besborough Isle bore N. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. three or four leagues

gues distant. At six, the land extended as far as S. 16 deg. W. and at eight, our soundings were nine fathom and a half. The land in this place was moderately high, the westermost point making in a bluff. At half past ten, the Resolution hailed the Discovery to take the lead, and make for an opening between the main and an island, which was called Stewart's Island, and our boats were sent a-head to sound; but some time after, they made the signal of four and three fathoms and a half, and consequently we hauled our wind to the westward. Our observed latitude was 63 deg. 39 min. N. At eight we wore ship and stood to the northward, and at ten brought-to for the night.

At half past five, we bore away to the westward, with the wind at N. E. and at seven our course was S. W. our soundings seven fathom. At ten, we shoaled to five fathom, though nearly out of sight of land, which obliged us to haul still farther off. At noon we had fresh breezes, on which account we hauled our wind, as we were fearful of being entangled among the shoals, which in this part were very numerous. Captain Cook now finding it impossible to trace the coast any farther on account of the great shallowness of water, determined to give it up, and proceed to the island of Unalafschka, where he intended to take a full supply of water, if no other convenient place occurred during his passage there. At one in the afternoon, we saw the land extending from N. N. W. to N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$

W. distant twelve leagues, which part of the coast captain Cook called Point Shallow Water; and at half past three the Resolution bore away, steering a W. course. At four, the extremes of the land bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and N. 60 deg. W. our soundings being ten fathom. At six, the Resolution altered her course to W. S. W. when we had twelve fathom. At seven, we saw Sledge Island bearing N. 64 deg. W. ten leagues distant, and at nine altered our course to S. W. by W. with the wind at N. N. E. and N. E.

We had fine pleasant weather the best part of the next day, with flying clouds, and at four in the morning saw the land from N. by E. to N. by W. At eight, the high land to the N. E. off the isle we anchored under the 8th instant, bore N. $1\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant twenty-three leagues. At eleven saw land bearing S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and at twelve we had fresh breezes, with thick snow showers. Our soundings at three in the afternoon were thirteen fathom, and at four the land, which proved to be an island, bore from S. 29 deg. W. to S. 50 deg. W. and a low hill on a track of low land N. 35 deg. W. three or four leagues distant. At six, we bore away to the southward, standing down the eastern side of the island, at about two miles distance, a cluster of high rocks bearing S. 5 deg. E. As we were now in a sea which we were totally ignorant of, and probably furrounded in a manner by islands, which might have the dangerous circumstance of shoal water annexed to them, captain Cook's usual

usual foresight and prudence induced him to think of laying-to for the night, and at eight both ships brought-to, main-top-sail to the mast, the high rocks bearing S. by W. four or five miles distant, and the south end of the island W. S. W.

At six in the morning, Sept. 21st, we bore away, our course W. and W. N. W. the wind N. by W. and the weather cloudy, with frequent squalls, our soundings twenty fathom. The island extended from N. 61 deg. W. to N. 80 deg. W. and the rocks S. 82 deg. W. distant three leagues. At half past, we saw more land, the south point, bearing S. 62 deg. W., trending round to the westward. At eight our soundings were seventeen fathom, and we saw many shags, and some flocks of geese, which, except their wings, were entirely white; we also observed two ravens or crows. The land, which now had the appearance of three distinct isles, bore from N. 13 deg. W. to S. 65 deg. W. and the rocks N. 21 deg. W. our distance from the shore being three leagues. At half past ten, we found the whole to be one island, but joined by very low land, and soon after we bore away to S. S. W. the wind being N. N. E. Our observed latitude was 62 deg. 58 min. N. and at one the wind changed to N. W. our course S. W. the depth of water being very irregular, from thirteen to eight, ten, and twenty-two fathoms. At eleven, we brought-to, having fresh breezes, with squalls and showers of snow and sleet.

The

The weather the next day, Sept. 22d, was cloudy, with moderate breezes from the N. W. and W. N. W. attended with frequent showers of snow. At four, we bore away, our course S. and S. by W. At eight, our depth of water was twenty-five fathom. Towards noon, the weather cleared up a little, and we got an observation, which gave our latitude 61 deg. 48 min. N. In the afternoon, we saw great numbers of gulls about. Our soundings at eight were twenty-seven fathom, and at twelve they deepened to thirty-four. The thermometer to-day was from $35\frac{1}{2}$ to 39 deg.

At half past five in the morning, Sept. 23d, our course being S. W. saw the island we discovered on the 29th of July, and which, from the amazing flocks of birds, we denominated Bird Island. The extremes of it bore S. by W. and W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. about ten leagues distant, the whole appearing as six islands. Our soundings were thirty-two fathoms. At eight the land had the appearance of only four islands, the extremes bearing S. 31 deg. E. and S. 85 deg. W. At ten we were running along the north side, when we found that the hills, which made as so many distinct isles, were joined to each other by low land, which seemed to form as many peninsulas. The whole had a most desolate and barren aspect, making in most parts in lofty, perpendicular, white and brown cliffs. The hills, were entirely destitute of soil, and probably were composed of solid rock. We this time
saw

saw only four or five puffins, as many sea-parrots, and a few gulls and fulmars. Our latitude was 60 deg. 23 min. N. when the extremes bore N. 29 deg. E. and S. our distance from the nearest part two miles. At two in the afternoon we bore away to S. E. by E. the wind N. W. At four we had thirty, and at twelve thirty-six fathoms.

We had fresh breezes the next day which at twelve at night increased to a gale, with hard squalls, which obliged us to take in the second reefs in our top-fails. We were now totally out of the sight of land.

The gale continued to increase the next day, Sept. 25th, and blew with such violence, that we could only carry the main-top-fail close-reefed, and the main and fore-fail. We had a very heavy head sea running, and in the course of the night experienced frequent and heavy squalls, with small rain, so thought it most prudent to get down our top-gallant-yards.

The weather now became dark and cloudy, with almost continual showers of small rain, which rendered every thing most uncomfortable, and to add still more to our disagreeable situation, the gale kept up with equal violence, and drove us fast towards the coast of Asia, our course being S. by W. which, with the variation and leeway, was little better than W. S. W. Towards noon however it moderated, and we were fortunate enough to get an observation, which gave our latitude 58 deg. 36 min. N. and
in

in the course of the night we had a clear, starry sky, with moderate breezes, our soundings being forty-five fathom.

The next day, Sept. 27th, we had light winds from the S. S. E. our course east, and at eight our soundings were thirty-nine fathoms. In the afternoon we saw a few gulls and fulmars, and had thirty-five fathom, with a muddy bottom.

The wind on the 28th became more favourable, blowing from the S. S. W. our course S. E. At eight we got up our top-gallant-yards, and at noon we were in latitude 58 deg. 4 min. N. In the afternoon saw a whale, and many of the small species of auk, and towards evening one of our people caught a land bird, which proved to be the grey-butcher bird. At eight we had thirty-eight fathom, and in the course of the night we had frequent and rather violent squalls.

Our latitude on the 29th was 57 deg. N. During the afternoon the weather was pleasant, and we saw two whales and many divers about. At eight our soundings increased to forty-seven fathom, and at eleven it became hazy, when we lost sight of each other, but by repeating signals we ascertained each other's situation, and at three the next morning joined company.

The wind the next day, Sept. 30th, was variable in the N. W. N. and N. E. quarter, our course S. S. E. At noon we had fifty-two fathoms, and soon after it became calm. Some of our seamen got out their hooks and lines,
and

and caught several cod and flat fish. At four, a fine breeze sprung up from the westward, when we pursued our course.

The ensuing day was clear and pleasant, with flying clouds. Our latitude was 55 deg. 29 min. N. and we saw several patches of seaweed, feathers, &c. which we looked upon as certain indications of the vicinity of land; indeed we expected to see it every hour, as we knew by our latitude and longitude that we were at no great distance from Unalashka. At half past four the next morning, we descried that island extending from E. $\frac{3}{4}$ S. to S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and the extremes of other land to the eastward, from N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. to E. by N. our distance off shore being four leagues. At eight we had light breezes, and at nine it became nearly calm, which, with the tide being against us, rendered our progress very slow and tedious. At noon our latitude was 54 deg. 4 min. N. the extremes of the eastern land bearing N. 78 deg. E. and S. 10 deg. W. those of Unalashka N. 52 deg. E. and S. 10 deg. W. and distant land to the westward S. W. by S. our distance from the nearest shore being four miles. At one in the afternoon we bore away, before a fine little breeze from the W. S. W. our course being N. N. E. and N. E. Soon after three of the natives came alongside in their canoes, one of whom we recollected seeing when here before; he also remembered us, and on that account received several small presents of tobacco and beads, for which he re-
tur-

turned us dried fish and berries, plenty of which he gave us to understand he had on shore. At three we hauled in for an inlet, which, as we proceeded up it, had the appearance of a commodious harbour. At its entrance, it appeared to be six miles across, and towards the bottom of it, upon a low ridge of land on the western side, was a town, which seemed to be tolerably populous: from this ridge a parcel of rocks extended to some distance; some were barely above the surface of the water. Behind this ridge there was the appearance of a very snug cove. The surrounding hills were high, and some had snow upon their tops, which possibly might have been there the whole summer. We endeavoured to get soundings, but could not succeed at fifty fathom; which circumstance, with the approach of night, and the ledge of rocks above mentioned, by no means induced us to stay there, but on the contrary rendered it necessary for both ships to make the best of their way out again, which they did as fast as variable winds and an opposing tide would permit them. The Discovery stood off and on for the night, but the Resolution kept nearer in shore, and at six in the morning bore away for Samganoodha harbour, which then bore S. S. E. six miles distant, and at eight she dropped her anchor in seventeen fathoms; the west end of mid-channel isle bearing N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and the harbour's mouth S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. her distance from the western shore about half a mile. The Discovery did not

not arrive till one, when she likewise anchored; and many of the natives brought us dried fish and berries of various kinds, and a trade was soon opened on both sides. In the night we heard the barking and howling of foxes upon the shore.

C H A P. II.

October 4th, early in the morning, our empty casks were got on shore, with the coopers; and the observatories were erected upon as convenient a spot as could be found; the coppers likewise were fixed for boiling the blubber we had brought with us from the northward. None of the inhabitants made their appearance till eleven, when they came with plenty of salmon, trout, and halibut, which they had just caught. Some brought berries of different kinds, one species of which was very well flavoured. In the evening several of the women paid the ships a visit, and appeared perfectly satisfied with their reception; they staid all night, and returned on shore in the morning.

The next day, 5th, was cloudy, with showers of rain, and squalls from the east. In the morning our friends visited us as usual, and three of them went into the great cabin, paying their respects at entering, and behaved with a greater degree of good manners than we could have supposed. Several trifles were purchased of

them, after which they offered snuff, which they had in boxes, to every one in the cabin. They gave us to understand, that they were visited annually by the Russians, and from the signs they made, we rather supposed there were some now upon the island. This induced captain Cook to send the corporal of marines, who was an intelligent man, with these people, to learn the truth, and if there really were any, to beg they would accompany him to the ships.

The Resolution's people were very successful to-day in hauling the seine, having caught plenty of excellent trout, and a very large halibut, which weighed two hundred and fifty pounds.

The 6th was heavy, thick, and cloudy, with heavy squalls from the eastward, and continued rains till seven in the evening. The next morning fishing parties were sent out, and the seine was also hauled, both which supplied us plentifully with fish. In the evening, the corporal returned, and three Russians with him, who brought two fish pies as presents to the captains; the crust was made of ryeflour, and the fish was well-seasoned.

These people behaved very well, and appeared willing to give us any information we desired, but unfortunately our total ignorance of the Russian language prevented us from attaining any thing worth notice, conversing by signs being but a very imperfect method. We learned that Kamtschatka produced but little corn, but that vessels from Ochotsk supplied them plen-

plentifully: oxen likewise were tolerably numerous, but sheep and swine scarce. There are about twenty Kamtschadales and eight Russians upon this island, who are possessed of a tolerably good wooden house, which is situated in the bottom of the bay we were standing into on the second instant. They have also arms and ammunition, and a small sloop of about sixty tons burthen. When they first saw the ships in the bay, they were exceedingly alarmed, and apprehended we were Japanese, whom, for some reason or other, they are terribly afraid of. These people were to return to Ochotsk in 1780, in the sloop above mentioned, and were to be succeeded by a fresh set. They told us, that there are upwards of four hundred Russians, besides a great many Kamtschadales, formed into little settlements upon the various islands in these seas.

The 10th was squally, with showers of snow, and the gusts of wind were so strong from off the hills, that we were obliged to let go another anchor to secure the ships properly.

Sunday, October 11th. In the morning, the Russians took their leave, promising to return in a day or two with a chart of these seas. The captains made them presents of rum, tobacco, and several other articles, which they received with many thanks.

On Wednesday evening, 14th, another Russian, in a large canoe, attended by twenty or thirty smaller ones, arrived at an Indian

town situated on the other side the hills, on the western side of the harbour. He was received upon his landing with great respect by the natives, who soon erected him a commodious little hut, after which the women employed themselves in boiling fish for his supper, while the men attended him in his habitation. His under-dress was the same as our's, but over it he wore a blue calico frock, girt round him with a silk sash; he had boots on, and a cap lined with fur. His business appeared to be to collect a tribute or tax from the inhabitants, who were making up bundles of dried fish, tobacco, which they had received from us, and various other articles in their own way. Captain Cook being at the town when he arrived, invited him to dine on board the next day, which he promised to do, and at twelve he came attended by the small canoes as yesterday.

His name was Erasim Gregorio Sin Ismyloff, and a native of Jakutski; he informed the captain that he accompanied lieutenant Sindo in his expedition to the northward. He appeared to be about thirty-four or thirty-five years old, and was a very observing man. But little more information was gained from him than was acquired from the other Russians. The next day he dined on board the *Discovery*, and in the afternoon departed.

Some of the gentlemen of the ship having a desire of visiting the Russian settlement, set off the next morning, 17th. early, but it being a

a rainy day, they did not arrive till evening: soon after supper was served up, which consisted of whale's flesh and boiled halibut; the former was not very palatable, but the latter proved excellent. They had carried a bottle of rum with them, but their landlords soon finished it, as they never adulterate it with water. When they retired to rest, they were shewn into an inner room, their beds being composed of beaver-skins, which were exceedingly warm. In the morning they had halibut and whale, with the spawn of salmon for breakfast, and after a short stay departed. The house was built exactly upon the plan of those at Kamtschatka, and at some little distance was a storehouse, in which they kept the various skins, &c. which they receive from the natives as tribute, till they have a sufficient cargo for their sloop, or till they are relieved by another party, who then reside here for a certain time, and are relieved by a fresh party.

On Monday, October 19th, Ismyloff again paid us a visit, and brought with him a chart of the northern seas, containing Bering's discoveries, and some of a later date, but it was more particularly confined to the coast of Kamtschatka, and the Kurile Islands.

Another Russian also came with a cargo of boots, most of which were purchased; the price of the best was three bottles of rum, the inferior two; which, considering the scarcity of spirits at that time, was very dear. In our

discourse with Ismyloff, he complained much of the treachery of the Americans, who, he says, take all opportunities of destroying the Russians, and sometimes even when they are, to all appearance, upon friendly terms.

Tuesday night was the severest we had experienced for some time: the thermometer stood at 32 deg. and we had much ice in the harbour. In the afternoon of the 22d, two other Russians came on board; one, whose name was Jacoff Iwanowich, was the principal of the island Umanack, which lies to the southward of Unalafschka, and a native of old Russia, which he took particular pains to make us understand, and valued himself upon it accordingly. The other was one of those who first came, and was master of the sloop. They staid with us till Saturday afternoon, and then took their leave, as did Ismyloff and the other.

October 26th, at seven in the morning, a fine breeze sprung up from the S. E. which the captain was determined to make the most of, having been disappointed in getting out on the 22d. The anchors were immediately weighed, and having made sail, we stood out of the harbour, and pursued a N. W. and W. course, intending to circumnavigate the island. At twelve the extremes of Unalafschka bore S. 75 deg. E. and S. 36 deg. W. and the entrance of the bay we stood in for the 2d instant S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. two leagues distant. At six we had dark, cloudy weather, with light and very variable winds, and

and a thick, heavy, moist, and warm atmosphere. At eight we had fresh gales and squalls, and at ten it rained very hard.

C H A P. III.

This, our second residence amongst these people, has given us a greater scope for making observations on their manners, &c. than we could possibly have before. In the former account they are represented different in some things from what they really are; this was entirely occasioned by the little time we had to spare, during our very short and uncertain stay: uncertain, because at that time we were watching every alteration both in wind and tide, to make the most of it, as we were late in the season, and consequently very anxious to pursue our course to the northward, which had already met with many unavoidable obstructions.

This island is called Now'unalaschka by the natives, but the Russians denominate it Unalaschka. It lies nearly in 54 deg. 4 min. N. latitude, and in 193 deg. 36 min. E. longitude; though in some charts it is laid down in 63 deg. 30 min. N. We could not absolutely ascertain its length, but from what was seen we judge it to be about fifty miles. It abounds in hills, some of which are very high; upon various parts of them are found in great abundance, crow-berries, whortle-berries, another species some-

thing similar to a black grape in flavour; and near the bottom grow raspberries, but they are rather scarce. The low land, of which there is but little, is very marshy, owing to the many runs of water that are perpetually flowing from the hills. The soil on the tops of the hills is about two feet deep, under which there is a layer of small stones; the sides of the hills are rich, loamy, and deep, and the marshy and low ground, a fine, deep, black soil.

The only quadrupeds we saw were the arctic fox, and a small species of marmot, without ears, and a short tail; the natives call them anump-cho. Of water fowl they have variety, but the land birds are but few; among the former are the velvet duck, a grey goose with a whitish head, the wings striped, the little brown duck, the painted duck, *anas histrionica*, Lin., sea parrots, puffins, guillemots, and gulls. The latter are eagles, ravens, grouse, plover, sandpipers, finches, water ouzles, swallows, and the common wren. Their fish are halibut, flat fish, cod, haddock, rock cod, trout, and salmon.

As to trees, there are none upon the island that exceed a foot in length: these are willows, of which we observed five species; two species of whortle-berry, two of raspberries, and the black-berried heath, or crow-berry.

The plants were rather numerous, and when we were first there in June, most of them were in flower: we observed among them plaintain,
marsh-

marsh-marigold, violet, saxifrage, orchis, sorrel, dock, milfoil, auricula, geranium, dandelion, coltsfoot, ragwort, and a particular species of lily in great abundance, called by the Russians, *faranne*, *lilium Kamtschatfense*, Lin. there was also great plenty of wild celery, a kind of cresses, and a species of mustard, all of which afforded us excellent fallads.

The low land is generally covered with a long coarse grass, similar to that which abounds at Kamtschatka, and which the women of this island convert to the purpose of making baskets, and mats of various degrees of fineness.

The men are in general from five feet to five feet and half in height, but not unfrequently you find some below as well as above that standard: their face is broad, their eyes rather small, their nose in general flat, their mouth wide, and lips thick; their teeth are but indifferent, being uneven, and frequently discoloured. Their hair is black, and rather long behind, but cut before, so as to reach nearly to their eye-lids, and in that form which we call Tyburn tops. The common dress of the men is a jacket, made of the skins of birds, the feathered side worn inwards; but their best jackets are painted red on the fore and hind part, as low as the shoulders and breast, and at the insertion of the sleeves along the seam, and on the body of the jacket, are fastened strips of fur in rows, one row about eight inches above the other. They also wear strings of beads in
C 5 their

their ears, pieces of bone in the gristle of their nose, which is perforated for that purpose, and bones of various forms in their under-lip.

The women are generally shorter than the men; and their features much more pleasing. They wear their hair over their forehead like the men, but tie it up behind in the form of clubs, and large ones too, as our beaux did some time ago. Those who are the most fond of dress wear a kind of ribbon, curiously embroidered, upon their heads, which they tie under the chin. They likewise have the disagreeable mode of ornamenting their under lips with long pieces of narrow carved bone, as well as their nose with a string of beads, and several bunches of beads in their ears. Their cheeks are tatowed, or marked with one and sometimes two lines, which extend from the middle part to the ears; their chin is likewise curiously decorated in the same manner. This mark is confined entirely to the female sex, who are not permitted to wear it till they arrive at a certain age. A seal-skin jacket with sleeves, and fastened round the body with a girdle, is the only garment they wear; this they ornament with the beaks of the sea parrots, in the same manner as the Kamtschadales used to do. The men, and sometimes the women, wear buskins, which custom seems to have been first introduced by the Russians; and the women are fond of strips of seal skin, round the wrists and ankles. The bonnets or caps which the men make use of have

have been mentioned before; these, which are generally painted blue and green, they decorate with the beards of whales, upon which they place beads, and some of them fix two or three small carved pieces of bone, in the form of an image, upon the upper part, and on one side.

These people have not two jurts or huts, like the natives of Kamtschatka, but reside in the same both winter and summer. The mode of building is as follows: they dig an oblong hole in the earth, about four feet deep, not five or six, as has been mentioned before, the size of which is proportioned to the number of people who are to live in it; at the ends, about three feet from each corner, they fix two strong wooden posts, to which are fastened ridge poles, which are supported by other wooden posts, planted or fixed on both sides, at the distance of about five feet from each other; upon these ridge poles are secured other pieces of wood, upon which they form the roof or ceiling, leaving a hole near the end which admits the light, as well as serves them for a door. The sides of the house are formed by poles which reach obliquely from the ridge poles to the earth, in which they are fixed: over the whole they place a layer of dried grass, upon that a quantity of earth, and so on alternately till it is rendered sufficiently strong. The space behind the wooden posts which support the ridge poles, is destined for their bed places, &c. which they cover with mats.

From

From the hole on the top, is fixed a kind of ladder, by which they descend to the bottom; and though this mode of descent was very awkward to us, the natives pass and repass with the greatest ease. The middle part of the houses, on the outside of the wooden posts, is raised a little above the rest; here they make their fires and dress their victuals. Their huts smell very disagreeably and offensive, occasioned by the dirt and nastiness which abounds in almost every part, for they never take the trouble to clean them, but leave the bones and guts of fish scattered up and down, which, when putrid, and added to the filthy custom of making water in one corner, cannot fail of emitting a most horrid stench. At some little distance from their larger huts, they erect smaller ones, which seem to be repositories merely for their dried fish.

They are not very expensive in their household furniture which consists chiefly of wooden bowls, troughs, and platters, of various sizes and for various uses, and a copper kettle for the purpose of boiling fish. They procure fire by rubbing two pieces of dry wood against each other, and instantly make it blaze by powdering a little sulphur, which they procure in great quantities in the neighbourhood, upon the down of birds, which is placed upon straw for that purpose. In the night they use lamps, which are made of wood, and hollowed so as to contain a quantity of oil; the wicks are
made

made of dry grafs. The knives they now use they procure from the Russians.

Their canoes have been occasionally mentioned before, so that a farther account of their form and texture is needless. They are very careful of them, and as soon as they return from fishing, or any other expedition, they are conveyed from the beach to their huts, and, after being cleared of the water, which, notwithstanding every precaution, will sometimes get in, they are placed, with the hole downwards upon four stakes placed crosswise for that purpose, about two feet from the ground. These canoes are so light, that they frequently ascend the hills with them slung across their shoulders.

Their food consists of whales flesh, fish, berries, and roots. The fish that most abound here are salmon, rock-cod, trout, and halibut, and about the middle and latter end of October they catch cod. The whales are generally taken about May and June, as the summer is then approaching, and they have time sufficient to dry the flesh and blubber, which, in the winter season, is one of the principal parts of their food. With the blubber they eat the dried halibut, which the Russians call paltusina; this seems in some measure to supply the want of bread: sometimes they dip it in train-oil, of which they are very fond; they likewise eat the dried whales flesh with oil. During the months in which the fish, particularly trout, salmon, and cod, abound, they generally boil them in their
copper

copper kettle, of which every family has one. They are not particularly nice in cleaning them; just taking out the guts and gills, and sometimes neither, wiping them with a handful of dried grass, and then put them into the pot. But though they are at the trouble of boiling fish, they frequently eat them raw. The whales, as has been before observed, are caught in May and June, and all the fish which are intended to be dried as a winter stock, which are principally halibut and salmon, are taken at that time, or as soon as they come into season.

Berries also are a capital article of their food. Of these there are two kinds, one which they call oniganack, the other, which is our crow-berry, ashnock; both are very plentiful, but the former less so than the latter. The oniganack is, in taste, something similar to a black grape, but is of a very astringent nature, on which account they generally mix them together, the ashnock being possessed of an opposite quality to the other: the natives prefer them with train-oil, which they think adds much to their taste. Of the roots, the faranne is the best and most agreeable eating: the natives are very fond of it, but get no great quantity to themselves, as they are obliged to give by far the greater part to the Russians. Its taste, when raw, is sweetish and insipid, but when boiled becomes mealy and something like a potatoe. The other roots are only of two kinds, one a species of fern, the other a species of lupi-

lupine; the taste of both at first resembles liquorice roots, but after chewing some time, it becomes acrid and bitter.

The employment of the women is of various kinds. In the summer they assist in cleaning and drying the fish; in autumn they are busied in cutting grass, which they tie up in bundles, and leave to dry. This grass is of considerable use in thatching their huts, as well as making baskets, mats, and many other useful articles: in the middle and latter end of October they gather berries and roots. All the sewing business is entirely confined to them; they make jackets for themselves and the men, and likewise sew the seal skins together, with which their canoes are covered: the making and manufacturing of mats and baskets is another part of their employment, and when a new hut is to be erected, they always dig up the earth to a proper depth: this may be considered as the most laborious part of their business, as they have no proper tools for that kind of work, but are reduced to the necessity of using pieces of wood or bone, which method renders the job very tedious. When the men return from fishing, they assist in unloading the canoes, and carrying them to their proper places; they likewise dress all the victuals. Their leisure hours are generally spent in embroidery, in which they are very neat, some of their performances being really curious. The needles they use are made of bone, but without an eye; the thread is made of sinews split to a proper

proper size. Our needles being so far superior to their own, proved a good article of trade.

The men in the summer catch and dry fish, and kill whales for their winter stock of provision; they also make paddles, darts, the frames of their canoes, and all the different bowls and platters; and after the women have prepared the ground for building a hut, they finish the remaining part: they sometimes too nurse the children, and rock them to sleep. We observed that they converted most of the tobacco they received of us into snuff, which they powdered by rubbing it in a small wooden bowl, with a stick about two feet long, upon the upper end of which they fastened several stones to render it heavy, by which means the tobacco was the more easily reduced to a proper fineness; after this they sifted it through a small, fine basket, and then it was fit for use. They were so fond of it, that, not content with snuffing it, they put it in their mouths, and swallowed it.

The Russians, for political reasons, have taken care entirely to deprive these people of every offensive weapon; the only ones they suffer them to make use of are a kind of dart, with which they kill seals, birds, and sometimes fish: these are about four feet long, and made of fir; one end is formed of bone, into which, by means of a socket, another small piece of bone, which is barbed, is fixed, but so contrived as to be taken out and put in without trouble; this is secured to the middle of the stick by means

means of a strong, though thin piece of twine formed of sinews. The animal, &c. is no sooner struck than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb: the dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and likewise assists to tire him considerably, so that he is easily taken. They throw these darts by means of a thin piece of wood, about twelve or fourteen inches in length: the middle of this is slightly hollowed for the better reception of the weapon; at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short and pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the thumb and other fingers, in order to grasp more firmly. They throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity.

They generally catch fish with hooks made of bone, which they secure to a line made of twisted sinews, and about twenty fathoms long. When they try for large fish, such as the halibut for instance, some of which are of a great size, they fix a bladder upon the line, which, when the fish is hooked, very soon tires it.

The only musical instrument we saw among these people, if it deserves the appellation of musical, was a kind of drum, similar to those we observed at the Tschutschi Nofs: it had only one head, which was composed of part of the

gut of a whale, strained very tight over a frame, to which was fixed a handle. They use no drum-stick, but strike it upon a piece of wood. Their method of singing is pleasing enough, and resembles that of the natives of King George's Sound.

During our stay, we did not observe the least trace of religion, nor any thing which could induce us to suppose that they had even the most distant idea of a supreme Being.

C H A P. IV.

The 27th of October was thick and cloudy, with heavy gales from the S. S. W. and S. W. our course S. S. E. and W. We had no land in sight throughout the day.

Early the next morning, in a sudden and very heavy squall, the tacks of the fore and main-sail of the Discovery, which were the only two sails she had set, gave way, by which the boatswain and three other men were knocked down, and one killed upon the spot. At half past six, we saw the land bearing from S. E. to E. by S. At nine, we tacked, our course W. N. W. the extremes of Unalafschka bearing S. by W. and N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At noon, our observed latitude was 54 deg. 1 min. N. and in the afternoon the body of the man who was killed was committed to the deep. Towards the evening it became more moderate.

At

At two the next morning, we had fresh gales from the E. N. E. with rain, and at three we hauled up to W. by S. the wind veering round to N. W. by N. attended with showers of hail. At half past six, the land extended from S. by E. to E. by N. and at eight we wore ship and stood N. the extremes then bearing S. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. eight leagues distant, and E. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. four or five leagues, the nearest part E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. three leagues. At half past nine, we bore away for the east part, and at ten saw what we at first supposed to be a sail, bearing N. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. but upon a nearer view it proved to be a very high steep rock, with no breakers near it. At noon, our observed latitude was 53 deg. 53 min. N. when the high rock bore N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. three leagues distant. At one, we had strong gales, with cloudy weather, the land bearing E. N. E. At half past two, we hauled off, Unalafschka, extending from E. to S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the nearest part four leagues distant. We passed the night standing off and on.

At six in the morning, Oct. 30th, we wore ship, and bore away for the straits we came through in going to the northward, our course N. E. by N. the wind W. and W. S. W. with frequent and violent squalls of hail and fleet, and a heavy sea going. At noon, the bay of Samganoodha bore S. E. four miles distant, and at noon we were standing between the north point of Providence Bay and the small isle to the northward of it. At four, the north point

bore N. W. by W. three leagues, and the S. W. part of Unalafchka in sight S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. five leagues.

The next day we had open cloudy weather, and the wind, though not so violent, yet blew pretty fresh from the westward. Our observed latitude was 52 deg. 3 min. N. and we saw several sheerwaters and guillemots about.

November the first, our wind and weather was much as yesterday. Our latitude was 49 deg. 54 min. N. and in the evening we reefed our top-sails, as it began to blow fresh. During the afternoon, we saw several albatrosses and sheerwaters.

We had a continued drizzling rain, with thick cloudy weather the whole of the next day, and in the evening it blew a hard gale from the southward, during which the Discovery split her jib, fore-stay-sail, and fore-sail, and, as it continued increasing, it was thought most prudent to bring-to for the night, which was done accordingly under her fore-sail. The Resolution was at this time out of sight. All the night it blew violently, and the sea rising in proportion, tossed our vessels about at a strange rate.

About eight in the morning, Nov. 3d, one of the Discovery's people being at work in the main-top, saw the Resolution laying to, upon the lee-bow, about three miles distant. She immediately made sail and stood towards her, and some time after they both pursued a S. E. by E. course. Our observed latitude was 47 deg.

deg. 58 min. N. The next day we had fresh breezes from the W. and W. by S. and the day following, the weather was cloudy, with a thick heavy, warm, and moist atmosphere, and light, very variable winds till seven, when a fine breeze sprung up from the N. by W. As we proceeded to the southward, the weather increased in warmth, and on the 8th, the thermometer was as high as to 60 deg. our latitude being 40 deg. 40 min. N. On the 11th our latitude was 38 deg. 40 min. N. and the next day the wind shifted from the S. by E. to W. N. W. the thermometer, which till then had stood at $67 \frac{1}{2}$ deg. fell in the space of a few minutes to $58 \frac{1}{2}$ deg.

The 12th and 13th, we had a swell from the W. N. and on the 16th, our latitude was 32 deg. 45 min. N. The next day was fair, with flying clouds, but our wind was not altogether so favourable, being S. S. E. At eight in the morning we tacked and stood to the eastward, and soon after saw a tropic bird. We now found the heat rather troublesome; and having been so long inured to cold and moderately warm weather, the increase of warmth relaxed us considerably. The thermometer to-day stood at 74 deg.

At eight in the morning, Nov. 19th, we tacked ship, and stood E. S. E. the wind S. by W. At two in the afternoon it became very dark in the N. W. quarter; soon after we had a heavy shower of rain, and the wind veered

round to N. W. We saw numbers of mother Carey's chickens, and in the evening we had fresh gales from the N. by E. with frequent and heavy squalls.

Our latitude the next day was 30 deg. 25 min. N. and in the afternoon the wind became more moderate. In the course of the day we saw many flying fish, and some bonitos.

Our friendly gale continued all the 21st, and we observed many bonitos, flying fish, and several dolphins about the ship, one of which was nearly caught, but the line unfortunately broke. Our observed latitude was 27 deg. 52 min. N.

In the early part of the morning, Nov. 22d, we had light airs, but at six a fine breeze sprung up from the N. W. and we had a few flying showers, after which the sky became pretty clear.

Our breeze shifted the next day to N. E. which proved to be the regular trade-wind. In the course of the day we saw a very large whale, which swam three or four times round the ship. We had many bonitos about, and our latitude was 24 deg. 48 min. N. but not a bird of any kind to be seen. The thermometer to-day was from 70 deg. to 76 deg. We were now in constant expectation of seeing land; and the following day, being in latitude 22 deg. 34 min. N. and of course no great distance from Sandwich Isles, we in the evening shortened sail. At half past six in the morning, Nov. 25th, the

the Resolution bore away, steering a due west course, captain Cook intending to fall in with the eastermost of the islands, which we before saw only at a distance. At eight, the signal was made for the Discovery to keep at the distance of six miles upon the Resolution's starboard-beam. At eleven it became perfectly clear, which gave us a fine opportunity of seeing about us. Our observed latitude was 21 deg. 15 min. N. and we were by our reckoning about fifty-six leagues from the eastermost island. No land however appearing, at six the Resolution hoisted the signal for the Discovery to come under her stern; which being done, both vessels pursued a W. S. W. course till twelve, when they lay-to, main-top-sail to the mast.

At half past six in the morning, Nov. 26th, the haze clearing away, we saw high land ahead, and upon the starboard-bow: upon which both ships made sail, steering a south and south-easterly course. Soon after we descried more land to the westward; at ten, the Resolution finding she could not weather the eastermost point, bore away to the westward, running along shore. The land rose with a very gradual ascent, the inland part terminating in a lofty hill; there were plenty of trees, and the whole was covered with a fine verdure. At half past ten, some of the natives, who had been fishing, came near the ships, but were rather shy at first; a few beads and nails however soon removed all apprehension, and

they readily came along-side. The canoes were in every respect the same as at A'tou'wi, as well as the natives. We bought several crabs of a singular species, and most beautiful scarlet colour, and variety of other fish. From what we could understand, they appeared to know of our being in these parts before. In the course of the afternoon many more came off, bringing with them fish, bread-fruit, a few plantains, and two or three hogs; they were very extravagant in their demands, but they had to deal with those who knew the value of iron as well as themselves, and upon our appearing very careless about the matter, they at last readily took what was offered them. This in fact was the only method we could pursue; for had we given them their own price, our stock of iron would by no means have been equal to our wants. In the evening we stood off and on for the night.

CHAP. V.

The next morning was fine and clear, and we stood off and on for some time; but at eight many of the natives came off and traded with us, upon which both vessels lay-to. We observed that some of them had three or four of their fore-teeth out; at A'tou'wi we remarked something of this kind, but never saw more than one wanting, which was generally on one
side

side or other of the mouth, and not in front. We questioned them about it, and they all made signs of their being knocked out, which possibly may be some religious ceremony. Among other articles of trade, they brought some of the largest and best feathered cloaks we ever saw, and likewise some of the caps. Our purchases to day consisted of bread-fruit, tarrow, ripe and green plantains, and a few pigs. One or two brought a few sweet potatoes, but they were very indifferent. The trade on our part was nails, knives, scarlet cloth, and small hatchets. Several ladies made their appearance, and were very desirous of coming on board, but strict orders were given to the contrary. Many double canoes also came along-side in the course of the day, some of which were large enough to contain thirty people, without incommoding each other in the least. Most of the Indians who came off to-day were curiously tatowed, particularly about the hands, arms, thighs, and legs, and some in every part of their body, except the face. Our latitude was 21 deg. 4 min. N. and in the evening we made sail, keeping a N. by E. course. We now observed a large tract of land to the westward, which appeared to be a separate island; the Indian name of this, off which we now were, was Mow'whee.

The 28th and 29th were spent in turning to windward, as was the forenoon of the 30th, captain Cook being desirous of getting round the south-east point of the island. In the after-

noon at three, though we were between seven and eight miles from shore, many of the natives came off in their canoes, among which were some double ones, which carried sails, nearly in the same manner as those of the Friendly Isles. Captain Cook observing this, ordered both vessels to lay-to: we purchased of them great plenty of bread-fruit, a few tarrow-roots, and some of their puddings, which were made of mashed bread-fruit, and were not disagreeable. They brought off no hogs nor fowls, which rather proved a disappointment to us. One of the Indians, who appeared to be something superior to the rest, informed us that there were ten of these islands in all; that four of them were very large, and have each a separate king; the others he said were small, and tributary to one or other of the former. The largest was situated farther to the eastward, and was called O'why'hee. In the evening we made sail, standing to the northward, and N. by E. the wind at E. and E. by N. About eight a large sailing canoe overtook the Resolution, and continued with her all night, towing a-stern. At twelve we tacked and stood S. S. E.

When day light appeared, we found ourselves much farther to windward than we expected, which circumstance must have been occasioned by a current from the westward, the effects of which we had experienced more or less ever since our arrival among these islands. In the morning we descried O'why'hee, bearing
about

about S. E. by E. At ten the canoe left the Resolution, and made for Mow'whee, captain Cook standing for the former. Our observed latitude was 20 deg. 42 min. N. and the thermometer stood at 76 deg.

December 2d, we had fresh breezes from the eastward, with open cloudy weather, and were employed turning to windward. As we passed along we observed several patches of snow upon the highest part of the land, and at ten, being pretty near the shore, both ships lay-to for their canoes, which began to come off in great numbers. The shore was irregular, and made in cliffs, which in many places projected into the sea, and formed small bays, but none large enough to admit our vessels with safety, it being the weather-side of the island, on which account a heavy surf was perpetually breaking. The country appeared very delightful, being cultivated in almost every part, and interspersed with the villages of the natives, each of which consisted of about fourteen or sixteen houses, and some of them appeared large: the inland parts were very woody, and the whole afforded a much more pleasing prospect than Mow'whee. Our observed latitude to-day was 20 deg. 17 min. N. We found the venereal disease raging among these poor people, in a violent degree, some of whom were infected most terribly; and it was the opinion of most, that we, in our former visit, had been the cause of this irreparable injury. In the course

fe of our traffic we had purchased a few hogs, with abundance of bread-fruit, sweet potatoes, tarrow, and puddings; and having pretty well cleared their canoes, we at six made sail. In the night we observed a very heavy dew fall.

The next day, we stood off and on: the weather was cloudy, with a heavy, damp atmosphere, and the whole island was enveloped in clouds. About three several of our new acquaintance put off to us in their canoes, and having disposed of their stock, which consisted of twelve small hogs, and a quantity of bread-fruit, they departed, and we stood to the northward.

The two following days were spent in turning to windward, and in the afternoon of the 6th, both ships brought-to, for canoes which our friends put off, laden with abundance of hogs, bread-fruit, and tarrow, but not a single coco nut, which appears to be a scarce article in these islands. In the evening the weather became very thick and cloudy, with showers of rain, and fresh breezes from the eastward.

The 7th was pleasant, with flying clouds; and we continued turning or rather endeavouring to turn to windward, which now became tedious to a degree, especially as we had lost the assistance of our friendly current. The eastermost part of the island still remained at a great distance, but captain Cook signified his determined resolution to get round it, if possible, as it would be madness to attempt anchor-
ing

ing on this side. At ten, being well in with the land, both ships tacked and lay-to, when great numbers of canoes put off as usual, and in them many of the women, who were now permitted to come on board, as it was out of our power to leave them in a worse state than we found them. Poor wretched unhappy beings; what a curse is entailed upon them! — there being a swell to-day, the motion of the ships by no means agreed with our poor friends, most of whom betrayed evident marks of sickness, especially the ladies, who, in the midst of their amorous intercourse, were not proofs against the efforts of nature, but generally overflowed their unfortunate swains, with a stream not the most pleasing. Our trade to-day was very brisk, and we bought plenty of hogs, bread-fruit, tarrow, sweet potatoes, and plantains, both ripe and green. In the evening we made sail, and the next day we had fresh breezes, with frequent showers of rain, and a heavy swell from the E. N. E.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, were employed in turning to windward; and, having nearly exhausted our stock of fresh provisions, on the 13th we lay-to for canoes, and again procured a fresh recruit. The weather was variable, sometimes cloudy and rainy, at others fine and clear. Our latitude on the 20th, was 19 deg. 45 min. N. and in the afternoon we bought a few hogs, &c. We had still a long tract of land to get round, which, with an almost constant

stant eastern wind, and a heavy swell from the same quarter, rendered our situation very disagreeable and irksome.

On the 21st, we again lay-to, and purchased a considerable number of hogs, bread-fruit, potatoes, plantains, and tarrow: having now secured a stock sufficient to support us for several days, we, in the evening, made sail, being determined to stretch a good way to the northward, in order, if possible, to clear the easternmost point of the island.

On the 24th, the ships lost sight of each other, and did not join company till near a fortnight afterwards. The 25th, being Christmas day, the ships companies had double allowance of provision and grog, and in the afternoon we caught two sharks.

The 27th was very unsettled, being alternately calm and squally, with thick, heavy, cloudy weather, which altered for the better next day; but, on the 29th, resumed its former appearance, till towards night, when it became fair, with calms.

In the afternoon of the 30th, a light breeze sprung up from the westward, which, at six in the evening, shifted to the southward. The whole day was rainy and very disagreeable.

1779. January the 1st, we had a fresh breeze from the S. S. E. Our latitude was 20 deg. 10 min. N. The wind continued in the S. S. E. quarter till the 3d, when, at eleven in the forenoon, a breeze sprung up from the east-

eastward, and in the course of the night we had some passing showers.

The 2d was fine and clear, and our breeze now freshened up considerably. Being now a good distance to the eastward of the island, we steered a S. W. course, and at noon altered it to W. by S. being well to the southward. Our latitude was 19 deg. 25 min. N. and at three in the afternoon we saw the land right a-head, about six leagues distant, according to the best judgment we could form, as it was very thick and hazy over it. At night, we hauled our wind, standing off and on, and had a few passing showers.

In the morning at five, we descried the land, bearing W. and at eight the extremes in sight bore N. $32\frac{1}{2}$ deg. W. and S. 65 deg. W. our distance from shore being four miles. At nine, we had many of the natives in their canoes along-side, who were welcome visitors, as our stock of hogs, bread-fruit, &c. was nearly at an end. This part of O'why'hee, the S. E. side, was less cultivated and more thinly inhabited than the other side, but afforded many rural and delightful prospects, the houses of the natives appearing in various spots, surrounded with trees, and at some little distance intermixed with plantations of various kinds. At noon, our observed latitude was 19 deg. 19 min. N. and at two the Discovery brought-to, and sent her large cutter in-shore, to sound a place which had the appearance of a harbour, but at five she
retur-

returned without success, having found nothing that could answer that purpose; they had sounded about a mile and a half from the shore, but got no ground at forty fathom, and when nearer in, found a heavy sea running close inshore. The inhabitants brought off five or six hogs, some potatoes, a great quantity of salt, fish, both dried and salted, but not a single bread-fruit, or tarrow-root. We also purchased seven fine albecores, the largest of which weighed twenty-nine pounds. At six, we hauled our wind, and stood off and on for the night, under our double-reefed top-sails and mizen-stay-sail, as we had a very fresh breeze.

The next morning, Jan. 6th, at six, we bore away, keeping a S. W. course, and at half past ten hauled up for a harbour, about five leagues from what appeared to be the western point of O'why'hee; but soon after, some of our people at the mast-head seeing the Resolution, we bore away for her, steering a W. by N. course. Our latitude to-day was 18 deg. 59 min. N. At half past one in the afternoon, we joined the Resolution, and captain Clerke waited upon captain Cook. It seems, on the night we parted company, that, at twelve, she had tacked and stood towards the land, whilst the Discovery, on the contrary, had pursued her course. Through the darkness of the night, however, she had got so close to a ledge of rocks, which lay at some distance from the S. E. point of the land, that it was with the utmost diffi-

difficulty and danger she could clear them: hazardous as the attempt was, she was obliged to continue her course, for if she had tacked, in all human probability she must have gone ashore when in stays; fortunately, however, by keeping her as close to the wind as possible, she weathered them.

In the course of the afternoon, we purchased some fine hogs, plantains, potatoes, tarrow, bread-fruit, coco nuts, and sugar-cane. Of the two latter articles we had seen none before: the sugar-cane was excellent, but the coco nuts greatly inferior to those of the Society Isles. At six in the evening, we made sail, and stood off and on for the night.

January the 7th, we had fine clear, pleasant weather, and at ten, being well in shore, we, according to custom, brought-to for our friendly visitors: though most of us now began to be most heartily tired of this work, and were impatient to find a secure harbour, where we might enjoy the blessings of nature quiet and undisturbed. Several of the Indians to-day were much surprised at the size of the ships, and took very exact dimensions of them, both in length and breadth. We continued this method for several days, bringing-to in the morning and standing off at night. The winds, from the 8th to the 15th, were very light, and chiefly in the westerly quarter, which rendered our progress down this side of the island very tedious, and we found a strong current setting to the

eastward. We were now off a part of the island, which had rather a remarkable appearance, there being large tracts of a dark and almost black matter, which we at first supposed was the soil which the natives had dug up and manured: but we afterwards found it was the produce of a volcano, being in fact nothing but lava. We now began to be apprehensive that this island afforded no shelter for our ships, as we had nearly made the circuit of it, Mow'whee having been opened on this side of it for several days past. The next morning, however, Jan. 16th, we saw a part of the land, which had the appearance of one, and at eight the Resolution's pinnace, attended by the Discovery's large cutter, were sent in-shore to examine it, and in the evening they returned with the agreeable and pleasing news of having found a tolerable good one. Trade to-day was very brisk, and we had great numbers of the natives both on board and along-side, who began to shew their dexterity in the thieving way, and even some of the arees were as bad as the mob. Night coming on we made a stretch off, intending at day-break to make the best of our way for the harbour.

The next morning was clear and pleasant, but we were unlucky in having no wind; of course, all our boats were a-head towing, and with much difficulty we arrived in the harbour at half past ten, attended by an incredible concourse of the people in their canoes: the shores
and

and hills were likewise lined with them, and at a moderate computation there could not be fewer than eight thousand. It was with the greatest difficulty that we could move or stir on board, for the ships were thronged with them in every part, the men having taken possession of the upper-decks, and the women being nearly as numerous below. In this situation, we were obliged to turn them out of the ship till we were moored and a little set to rights; but this was not effected without some trouble, for if they were drove away in one part, they crowded in in another. But at length we got them off the quarter deck, and centries were placed in the gangways to prevent their return. In the afternoon we moored ship, and in the evening we were again crowded with company, especially the women, who were remarkably anxious to engage themselves to our people. As night came on, the men departed, but the ladies were so much attached to the ships, that they determined to spend the night there; a favour which was accordingly granted them.

C H A P. VI.

Monday, Jan. 18th. In the morning, at day-light, our friends began to make their appearance, bringing off every thing the island produced in the greatest abundance. The Resolution's rigging wanting many repairs, her top,
E 2
masts-

mafts, &c. were taken down, the launches and other boats were got out, and the aftronomers and other tents, with the marines, were fent on fhore, and erected upon a fpot of ground in the neighbourhood of the morai, or burying place; on which account the adjacent ground is deemed facred, and nobody but fome particular people, whom we fupposed were priefts, were permitted to approach it.

This morning a woman of great diftinction vifited the fhips: fhe was diftinguifhed from the inferior fort by being exceffive fat, the mark of an aree in thefe as well as in the Friendly and Society Ifles, though not in fo high a degree: her wrifts were adorned with an enormous pair of bracelets, compofed of boars tusks, each of which formed a curve of at leaft eight inches; fhe wore a necklace of braided hair, in the front of which was a large piece of bone, curioufly formed and highly polished, and was clothed in a much greater quantity of cloth than ufual. She took a good deal of notice of every thing, and, having fatisfied her curiofity, departed. In the afternoon, fhe returned with another woman, much fuperior to herfelf in fize, but without thofe bracelets; fhe appeared to be her fifter; they ftaid on board upwards of two hours, and then returned to the fhore, after having received feveral prefents from the captains, fuch as beads and looking-glaffes, with which they were much pleafed. Befides thefe women, we had feveral other vifitors of confequence, amongft

amongst which was a young man whose name was Purraah, and, as we were informed, a principal attendant of Terriaboó, who was the king of the island: he was about five feet eight inches in height, his person was pleasing, and he appeared to be possessed of great good nature.

In the afternoon, some of the natives stole a large knife from the butcher, which we used in cutting up the hogs. This young man no sooner heard of the theft than he got into his canoe, and in about two hours returned with it; and afterwards appeared very assiduous in preventing the natives from thieving. There was also another regulation he put in practice, which was, to order all the women on shore during the day, but to return at night. This proved of singular use to us; for if they had been permitted to stay, they would have attracted the attention of our seamen so much, that nothing would have been done. The next day, 19th, the Discovery sent her launch on shore for stones to ballast her, which job the Resolution took care to finish before our departure from Samganoodha.

The 20th, all hands were busily employed, some about the rigging, and others in the holds; the caulkers about the ship's sides, and the sail-makers on shore, mending and altering sails, in two houses of the natives, near the observatories.

The 21st and 22d were cloudy, with small rain; but on Saturday the 23d, we had fine clear weather. We supposed there had been

much wind out at sea, having a swell in the bay, and a heavy surf breaking upon the beach.

This morning, 24th, Purraah informed us that Terriaboó would be here to morrow; and at the same time ordered all the women to leave the ships, and go on shore, and the canoes that were along-side to depart, and not to open a trade again till farther orders. Captain Cook not approving of the Resolution's birth, shifted her to another.

In consequence of yesterday's order, we were to day entirely by ourselves, not a soul daring to approach us. In the afternoon Terriaboó arrived in a very large double canoe, and went on board the Resolution.

The next day, Tuesday 26th, the king again visited the captain, and in the afternoon went on shore in his canoe, attended by two other large canoes, each, as well as his own, carrying a vast number of caps, cloaks, images composed of basket-work, and covered with red feathers, which were intended as a present to captain Cook, who soon after followed.

The day following, 27th, the king made the captains a present of coco nuts, bread-fruit, plantains, sugar-cane, and thirty hogs each. Salt being a very plentiful article here, the butchers were continually employed in corning pork.

The next morning, several gentlemen of both ships made an excursion into the country; another party had been sent the day before by cap-

captain Cook, with directions to make what observations they could, relative to the soil and produce of the place. On Saturday evening both parties returned, and the latter made their report to the captain. After ascending part of the hill, which was covered in every direction with plantations of sugar-cane, sweet potatoes, tarrow, plantains, and bread-fruit trees, which were by far the largest they had seen, they arrived at a spot of land entirely uncultivated, and over-run with long grass and ferns. At some distance from this were four or five small huts, the habitations of a few poor people, whose business appeared to be, to cultivate several plantations of tarrow, that probably belonged to some of the arees or principal people. They had nothing to dispose of, but two small fowls, a few roots of tarrow, and a small quantity of poey as they called it, which was a kind of pudding made of potatoes, mashed up with water, and constitutes the principal part of the food of the lower class of people. The soil in this part was light, and of a different kind to that below. Having purchased the fowls and tarrow, they left the huts, and proceeded to the wood, which was about two miles distant, through a considerable tract of waste ground, entirely over-run with long grass, ferns, and the *dracaena terminalis*; the foot-path was sometimes pretty good, but in general stony, though not in so great a degree as the lower parts: these stones were evidently

the production of a volcano. On entering the wood, they were entertained with the notes of a variety of birds, which rendered their walk doubly pleasing; and having several boys with them who professed the art of bird-catching, they were set to work, and in a short time procured several. They use a kind of bird-lime for this purpose, and are besides very expert in imitating the different notes of birds.

As they proceeded, they arrived at a long tract of wild plantain-trees, which far exceed the cultivated ones in size; they produce fruit like them, but it never arrives at perfection. The path now became very dirty and slippery, the soil being a stiff yellow clay, interspersed with large stones. They saw a variety of trees, one species of which was very tall and large, and its leaves greatly resembled those of the spice-trees of Vandiemens Land; this is the wood of which the natives make their canoes.

Some time after they arrived at some huts or rather sheds belonging to those who had been building, or rather forming canoes; at a little distance lay the remains of a large tree, which they had been at work upon. It was proposed that they should dine here, and the fowls and tarrow being produced, the men made a fire, and the huts, though so small and ruinous, being furnished with an oven, every thing was ready in a short time. They at first intended spending the night there, but not being furnished with sufficient clothing, and the Indians telling

telling them what cold they would experience, it was agreed to repair to the huts they had left in the morning, and there take up their lodging. Having after dinner pursued their former path, as far as it was practicable, they turned back, and in the evening arrived at their place of destination. In the course of the night they found it very cool, though in the day it was hot to a degree, and the numbers of rats that were perpetually running over them, prevented their sleeping too much.

In the morning, having breakfasted upon some roasted tarrow, they walked down the hill to the westward, to procure something more substantial for dinner; and in the space of half an hour arrived at some houses most delightfully situated, amidst a number of bread-fruit and plantain-trees, and having purchased two small hogs and some bread-fruit, set off for their last night's habitation, and in their way put up several flocks of black and white plovers, that were feeding in the plantations. Having left their provision to the care of the two natives they had brought with them, they proceeded in a N. W. direction, with an intent to penetrate through the wood, which at the distance they then were, appeared very thin; but upon their approach they found it considerably more over-run with underwood and ferns than that to the northward, and forming several deep vallies, which effectually stopped their progress in that direction. They tried in several

other places, but meeting with the same obstructions, were obliged to give up the point. The next morning was fixed upon for their return to the ships; but they took a different route to their former one, proceeding nearly in a W. N. W. direction, through innumerable plantations of the paper mulberry-tree, bread-fruit, and plantain-trees, which formed an extensive garden, and rendered the houses which were situated there delightfully pleasant. In the course of their walk, they observed several morais or burying places, very different from any they had seen before, and which the shortness of their time, to their great regret, would not permit them to examine. Having arrived near the summit of the hill, or rock which forms the N. W. part of the bay, stones and cinders became very predominant, not the least soil being visible; and here and there a solitary house was placed, which rendered the scene still more melancholy and afforded a striking contrast to the former part of their walk. At some distance from this, they observed nothing but a dreary tract of cinders and stones, and at the termination of the hill, this volcanic confusion became much more striking, there being caverns of various sizes forced open by the heat of the fire, at the bottoms of which the lava, at first sight, appeared even almost in a fluid state. Having descended this hill with some difficulty, they were met at the bottom by great numbers of the natives, who crowded round

round them so as almost to prevent their moving; at length, however, they got to the beach, and having hired a canoe arrived on board.

In the night some of the houses of the natives caught fire, and were soon burnt down.

On Monday morning, Feb. 1st, the launches of both ships were employed in bringing off wood from the shore, which captain Cook had purchased of the King; and in the evening there was a heivah on shore, which consisted of boxing, wrestling, &c.

The next day in the afternoon, Terriaboó presented captain Cook with near two hundred small hogs, a great number of coco nuts, bread-fruit, tarrow, and potatoes; and in the evening there was another heivah, after which some fire-works were exhibited for the diversion and amusement of his majesty.

February 3d, we were preparing for sea, and the next morning, Thursday 4th, at half past five both vessels weighed and made sail, attended by a numerous retinue of canoes, both double and single, and many of both with sails. Our wind was very light, and our observed latitude was 19 deg. 30 min. N.

The next day, Feb. 5th, at ten, we had a fine breeze, which continued till five in the evening, and then it became calm. Terriaboó visited the Discovery, and dined with the captain; he brought with him a great number of coco nuts, tarrow, some hogs, and several fine fish, and in the afternoon went on shore,
as

as did most of the natives who accompanied us in their canoes.

In the morning at four, we had a breeze from the E. N. E. which in the evening freshened into a gale, and continued all night, and drove us considerably to leeward of Mow'whoe, where it was captain Cook's intention to stop for some days, being assured by the natives that the island afforded an excellent harbour.

The gale continued without intermission till five in the afternoon of the next day, when it became very moderate, and the wind shifted to the southward, but soon after became variable with heavy squalls, which kept up more or less all night. During the morning the ships lost sight of each other.

The next day, Feb. 8th, it moderated, but still kept in the E. N. E. and N. E. by N. quarter. In the morning we saw the Resolution a good distance to leeward of us, and at eleven were under the lee of the north point of O'why'hee; we saw many porpoises. At noon the weather became cloudy, with heavy squalls of wind and rain, and in the evening it was very variable and unsettled, being alternately calm and squally, with the wind in every direction of the compass.

At two in the morning, Feb. 9th, the Resolution hailed the Discovery, and informed her that she had sprung her foremast, on which account captain Cook intended to make the best of his way to the old harbour. Our weather
prov-

proved very disagreeable, with a strange unaccountable sea, attended with a very short and heavy swell, one of which came rolling in at the great cabin windows, and almost carried away every thing in it. Our observed latitude was 20 deg. 5 min. N. We found a strong current running to the northward.

The next day was cloudy, with heavy showers of rain, and the whole of it spent in endeavouring to regain our port, but without success, so were obliged to stand off and on all night.

Thursday, the 11th, was fine, with flying clouds, and at half past six in the morning, the Resolution anchored in the bay; the Discovery not being far enough to the eastward, was obliged, to tack and turn to windward, and at nine dropped her anchor likewise. All hands were immediately employed in preparing to get out the Resolution's fore-mast, which job was next day effected, when it was conveyed on shore, and the carpenters of both ships set to work upon it. The natives came off as before, and we purchased hogs, bread-fruit, tarrow, and other productions of the island, as usual; but we could not avoid observing that they were more bold and daring in their attempts to thieve than before.

Saturday the 13th, the weather was clear and pleasant, and our carpenters were at work upon the mast, while our launches were employed in filling water, out of a kind of well in the rocks, near the head of the bay. The natives were

were on board as usual, trading for hogs, &c. and the women were also trading in their way. It must be observed, that many of the Indians had been, both now, and before, very attentive to the armourer whilst at work, and took particular notice of the tongs and chissels which he made use of, with his mode of using them; and finding that they were so essentially necessary in the forming the different iron-work, they had long beheld them with an eager eye, and were fully persuaded, if they were but once possessed of them, they also could work as well as we. Urged by this motive, one of them at the instigation of Purraah, as we afterwards found, watched an opportunity, while the armourer of the Discovery's back was turned, seized the tongs and jumped over-board; some of our people immediately pursued, and soon took him, and being brought on board, he received a severe flogging. In the afternoon, another fellow, set on likewise by Purraah, ran from the opposite side of the deck, and in the face of several people seized both tongs and chissel, with which he made off. This was so sudden and daring an attempt, that for some time we were at a loss how to act, and the man had got on board a canoe that was waiting for him at a distance, before a boat was sent in pursuit of him. Several muskets were fired, but without effect, and the canoe had greatly the advantage of our boat. Purraah, who was at this time on board, said he would endeavour to

to recover them, and immediately put off. After a long chase, the canoe got in-shore, and the man landed: the boat arrived soon after, and Mr. Edgar, the master of the Discovery, who had been sent in her, landed also. The natives upon this pelted them with stones, and a skirmish ensued; Purraàh, who soon came after, seized Mr. Edgar, and secured his arms behind him. At this instant, the Resolution's pinnace arrived, and one of the men, seeing Mr. Edgar's situation, struck Purraàh with his oar, who instantly seized and broke it, and now the bustle became more general. Captain Cook, who was on shore, and heard the firing, and likewise saw the boat in pursuit of the canoe, came in the midst of the scuffle, and having quieted the people as much as he could, inquired into the affair, and upon receiving the above information, insisted upon the stolen goods being restored, and after some time Purraàh returned them. Our people in the boats, endeavoured to take the canoe, which we found was the property of the above man, but were obliged to desist, after receiving some severe blows.

The next morning, Feb. 14th, at day light, the Discovery's large cutter, which had been secured to the buoy, was missing, these audacious rogues having contrived to carry it off in the course of the night, without being perceived. This was a theft which could not be overlooked on any account, as the loss of so capital

a boat might prove of great consequence to us in the remaining part of the voyage. Captain Clerke waited upon Captain Cook, and informed him of what had happened. After some deliberation, the best method that could be thought of, a method which, in other islands, had often been tried, and always met with success, was to secure the king; and the only way to do this was to invite him on board, and then place centries over him, after which we could make our own terms with them. It was also thought adviseable to sent boats to different parts of the bay, to prevent any of the natives from making their escape in their canoes. Things being thus far settled, the Resolution's great and small cutter, attended by the Discovery's small cutter and jolly boat, as well manned and armed, were dispatched to the various parts of the bay, with orders to stop all canoes that should attempt to make their escape, and if they proved refractory, to fire at and kill some of them, as captain Cook was determined to let them see he was not to be trifled with any longer. In the interim, the captain, with the lieutenant of marines, went in his pinnace, attended by the launch, in which were the marines and some of the officers, all well armed, to the N. W. point of the bay, where the king resided. The natives, suspecting possibly that some enquiry would be made relative to the boat, had assembled there in greater numbers than usual. Upon landing, the marines were drawn

drawn up in a line upon the beach, with the serjeant at their head, and captain Cook, with Mr. Philips, proceeded to the king's house; but not finding him there, enquired of the natives where he was, who told him he was at a house not far distant. They walked on, and found him, and, after some little time, the captain invited him to go on board, which he very readily was going to do, but some women, and others of his attendants, who probably were apprehensive of some design, earnestly begged and intreated that he would not. Almost at this instant, three Indians in a canoe arrived from the other side of the bay, with an account of one of their principal arees being shot by our people. They had been to both ships, where they told their story in very lamentable terms; but not meeting with that pity and redress which they probably thought they had a right to expect, they proceeded to the shore, where their tale was received in a very different manner. A general murmur of discontent was heard to prevail, and many of them began to arm themselves with spears and daggers. This circumstance was observed by Mr. Philips, and he communicated his apprehensions to captain Cook, who was at this time in the midst of a crowd, and of course was not able to watch their motions. The serjeant of marines also, who was at some distance, saw them arming; and, as the tumult rather increased, called several times to the captain to warn him

of his danger; but there seemed to be a degree of infatuation attending him, which rendered him deaf to every thing! The mob now pressed upon him, and he was seen to push them back, exclaiming, at the same time, "get away—get away!" At length one of them behaved very insolently, and threw stones at him: the captain, having his double-barrelled gun, fired, but missed him, and shot the next man to him. The marines, hearing the report of the gun, imagined that some mischief had been done, and, without orders, began to fire also: this rendered matters still worse; and captain Cook, now seeing his danger, was making to the boats as fast as the crowd would permit him, but received a stab between his shoulders from a chief who was behind him; the man was going to repeat his blow, but was shot by the serjeant of marines. The marines had no sooner fired than the people in the launch, from the same reason, fired likewise, and now the uproar became general: the captain did not fall in consequence of his wound, but still pressed towards the boats; the Indians, however, rushed upon him, and, with clubs and stones, soon put a period to his existence! The commanding officer of the Resolution, which was at least half a mile nearer the spot than the Discovery, alarmed at the report of the guns, gave orders for the great guns to be pointed and fired them, which appeared to create much slaughter and confusion. Mr. Philips,

Philips, and his party of marines, were obliged to jump into the water, but some of them not being able to swim, were dragged on shore by the natives, who soon dispatched them. The remaining number with difficulty reached the boats; the serjeant of marines was wounded in the neck, and received a severe blow upon the head from a stone; one of the private men had the point of a spear, which proke off, fixed under his left eye; Mr. Philips was wounded in the shoulder, and a corporal and three private men were killed. The Indians behaved with great resolution and intrepidity, and notwithstanding a severe fire was kept up for some time afterwards, they maintained their ground, and as soon as one fell, another immediately supplied his place.

Finding it impossible to recover the captain's body, the boats ceased firing, and made the best of their way on board; and soon after, Mr. Williamson, the third lieutenant of the Resolution, waited upon captain Clerke with the above melancholy news.

Let us for a moment take a slight retrospective view of this sad affair! — The natives certainly had no intention at first of destroying captain Cook or any of his party. The cause first originated in the death of the aree, who was shot by our people: it was this circumstance which alarmed them — and in consequence of this it was that they armed themselves. At this period captain Cook might have returned on board with safety; but he was unfortunate in

missing the man who behaved insolent to him, and shooting another—he was unfortunate in the firing of the marines—and equally so in the firing of the people in the launch; all which happened in the space of a minute. In short, the whole appears to have been caused by a chain of events which could no more be foreseen than prevented!

The tents, observatories, and the Resolution's mast being on the opposite shore, a strong party were soon after sent to protect them, while the people were getting their things off. The boats which were sent to prevent the escape of the canoes, coming on board, were likewise dispatched to assist in bringing off the mast, &c. Observing a great number of the natives running towards the tents, the Discovery fired several great guns, which put a stop to their proceedings for some time. Several of the seamen and marines took possession of a morai near the tents, which was considerably elevated above the common level, and, as the Indians approached, fired at them, which kept them at bay, but did no great execution; for they had no sooner thrown a stone than they ran behind their houses, and by this means prevented our men from taking aim.

About noon, the Resolution's mast, with the tents, observatories, &c. were brought on board. In the afternoon, the launch of the Discovery, with the Resolution's large cutter, pinnace, jolly boat, and small cutter were sent in

in shore with a flag of truce, under the command of Mr. King, the second lieutenant of the Resolution, who was in great esteem with all the principal people of the island, to try if the captain's body could be procured by fair means. Upon the approach of the boats to the shore, the natives began to throw stones; but when the flag was hoisted, they desisted, and several came off to the boats. The body being demanded, some told Mr. King that it should be brought off on the morrow, others said that it was cut to pieces. Nothing farther could be learned from them; the boats therefore returned. The ships companies, exasperated to the highest degree at the loss of their commander, and still more enraged at this behaviour of the Indians, desired captain Clerke's permission to go on shore, declaring that they would bring off the body, in spite of every thing, and burn down the town: this rash request of theirs was, however, prudently denied. During the night, a good look-out was ordered to be kept, lest the Indians should meditate an attack, and a boat was directed to row continually round the ships.

Monday, Feb. 15th. Flying clouds, with showers of rain. About ten in the morning, three of the natives, one of whom was a priest, came off with a flag of truce. He told us we should have the captain's body to-morrow, and was very desirous that captain Clerke and Mr. King should go on shore with him; but this

was entirely out of the question. In the afternoon, the effects of captain Cook were disposed of; and about half past seven in the evening, we were alarmed by the firing of two muskets on board the Resolution. Upon enquiry, we found that the centry had discovered two Indians in a canoe under the ship's bows: they begged us to desist from all acts of violence, as they came on terms of friendship; and having hauled their canoe into the pinnace, which was along-side, they came on board, one having a bundle under his arm. Mr. King, who ran upon deck immediately upon the discharge of the muskets, perfectly recollected one of them, who had always shewn a great attachment to captain Cook. When introduced into the great cabin, they untied the bundle, which, upon examination, contained the fleshy part of a man's thigh, the bone being taken out: this, they told us, belonged to captain Cook, and was all that remained of him, the rest being burnt. As they had brought this off by stealth, they were fearful of coming on board till it was dark, lest they should be observed by any of their own people. Having staid till ten, they returned to the shore.

About twelve, three girls from the Morai side of the bay, swam on board, and soon after a canoe, in which were two Indians, came along-side, but were desired to return, which they did very quietly. The girls remained on board.

Tues-

Tuesday the 16th. Pleasant weather, with flying clouds. Several canoes passed and repassed from the shore to the Resolution. About noon, three of the natives came off in a canoe, and paddling towards the Resolution, one of them got up and waved the hat which belonged to captain Cook, threw several stones, and slapped his posteriors. This being observed from the ship, several muskets and four great guns loaded with round shot, were fired at them, but without effect: they however did some mischief on shore, for soon after two Indians came off in a canoe, and told us they had killed one of their chiefs.

The command of the Resolution, in consequence of the death of captain Cook, devolved to captain Clerke, and Mr. Gore, first lieutenant of the Resolution, succeeded captain Clerke; Mr. King and Mr. Williamson were appointed first and second lieutenants, and Mr. Harvey, master's mate, was made third.

February, the 17th. In the morning, the Discovery hauled nearer the watering-place, in order to protect the boats from the insults of the natives during their taking-in water. Upon our people's landing they were at first quiet, but soon after collected themselves, and began to fling stones. Several great guns were fired from the Discovery, which checked their progress a little; but they soon began again, and being sheltered by their houses and walls, our muskets did very little execution. In the

afternoon, before the boats went again, the Discovery fired a number of guns, loaded with round and grape shot, into the midst of the town; after which the boats were sent on shore, and our people set fire to the houses, which cleared them effectually. In this attack, six of the natives were killed; and the sailors were so much enraged, that, in spite of every thing, they cut off the heads of two, one of which they tied to the bow of the Resolution's large cutter, and the other they carried on board; but as soon as the captain was informed of the affair, he gave immediate orders for the heads to be thrown overboard. Many Indians, who had assembled upon the hills immediately above the watering place, pushed down large pieces of rocks, but they fortunately did no damage except killing one of their own people. This was observed from the Discovery, and, in order to dislodge them, two or three swivels were fired, which answered the purpose very well.

One of the Indians was taken prisoner, and carried on board the Resolution. This poor fellow fully expected to be killed, and even after he was released, could at first scarcely believe otherwise; but finding we had no such intention, he was at a loss to express his gratitude sufficiently; every day during the remainder of our stay, he brought us bread-fruit, tarrow, plantains, and several hogs, and was almost continually on board. Towards the
even-

evening, a priest, named Kari-kàah, who resided near the Morai, and had been our friend even to the last, came on board with a pig, which he presented to the captain who made him several presents, after which he returned to the shore.

Thursday the 18th. In the morning, the boats were again dispatched for water, but not an Indian was to be seen. About seven in the evening, one of them came swimming off to the ship upon a piece of wood, whereon was tied a bundle of roasted bread-fruit; it was purchased of him, and he staid on board near an hour, and then returned to the shore. Whilst this man was with us, a canoe with three Indians came along-side, laden with bread-fruit and sugar-cane: we very gladly bought their commodities, after which they departed. Hogs now were a very scarce article, so that at length we were obliged to begin upon our corned pork.

Friday morning, the boats were sent for water as before, which was now filled without the least molestation from the Indians. Many canoes were paddling about, all of which carried flags of truce. In the afternoon a chief came on board the Resolution, from Terriaboo', to captain Clerke, informing him that he would bring all the remaining bones of captain Cook, and at the same time begged that we would enter into a league of friendship with him, and lay all animosities a-side; that Terriaboo'

was very sorry for the melancholy affair that had happened, and if we should ever come to this island again, he intreated that we would not hurt or molest them. These terms being agreed to, he departed very well satisfied. This man was dressed in one of those elegant long cloaks, with a green wreath round his head.

The next morning, at eleven, the chief came on board, bringing with him two bundles of cloth, which contained the bones of our unfortunate captain; the upper part of the skull, the scalp, with the hair and ears, the bones of the thighs, legs, and arms, and the hands on which was the flesh, were all that remained; the ribs and vertebrae he told us were burned. They had cut off the long hair behind, which he said was in the possession of Kommàah-màah, a chief nearly related to Terriaboó. The hands had several incisions in a longitudinal direction, both upon the back and inside, and a quantity of salt had been rubbed in, with a view most likely to prevent putrefaction.

Things being thus amicably settled, we the next day, Sunday 21st, purchased several fine hogs and plenty of bread-fruit of the natives, who now came on board without the least signs of fear; among the rest was Kari-kàah, our friendly priest. In the afternoon, the sad remains of captain Cook were committed to the deep, with all the honours due on such an occasion.

The

The 22d we were making all ready for sea. The natives, who were aware of our intention, brought off great plenty of hogs, tarrow, bread-fruit, plantains, and sugar-cane, of all which articles we bought a sufficient stock, and at six in the evening unmoored ship. At half past eight, every thing being ready, we weighed our anchors, and having made sail, stood out of the bay, but not without many sighs at leaving the remains of our unfortunate commander behind us.

C H A P. VII.

The next day we had light, variable airs; and our observed latitude was 19 deg. 54 min. N. We observed a heavy swell from the northward: and in the evening and all night it blew a fresh gale from the N. E. It was the captain's intention to have gone to Mow'whee, but finding it impracticable to fetch it under two or three days, the wind, which continued to blow with violence, being against us, he gave up the point, and at nine the next morning, Feb. 24th, we bore away, intending to make the best of our way to A'tou'wi. At ten we discovered several patches of shallow water, so stood right before the wind in order to avoid them, after which we resumed our former course again. This shoal-water was occasioned by a spit or bank, which ran in a S. W. direction from a small island

island called Kaowr'avee, nearly adjoining to Mow'whee. Our latitude to-day was 20 deg. 43 min. N. In the afternoon we had light airs and very smooth water, occasioned by the surrounding land. At half past two, many Indians put off to us, bringing fish of various kinds, some tarrow, and a few small hogs. Amongst the natives who came on board was a man apparently about forty years old, whose height was no more than four feet one inch; he was very well proportioned, and in every respect as lively and active, and in as perfect a state of health as those of the common size. We saw a woman at O'why'hee, something smaller than this man. At night we stood to the southward.

At four the next morning, we wore ship, and stood to the S. W. and at eight we had light breezes, when the high land of Mow'whee bore N. 80 deg. E. We found a current setting to the eastward; and at noon our observed latitude was 20 deg. 43 min. N. when the extremes of Aranni, an isle to the westward of Mow'whee, bore N. 33 deg. W. and N. 44 deg. E. the high land of Mow'whee N. 79 deg. E. the extremes of Kaowr'avee S. 66 deg. E. and S. 87 deg. E. During the night we had light variable winds.

Friday, Feb. 26th, we had clear and pleasant weather, with flying clouds, and a fine breeze from the N. E. In the first of the morning, we were standing along the S. W. side of Morotai: the N. E. extreme was rather lofty,
from

from thence to the western point it became low and apparently not much cultivated. We observed several smokes near the sea-side. At nine sounded, and found ground at eighteen fathom. Our observed latitude was 21 deg. 11 min. N. and at two in the afternoon saw the island of O'wha'ow bearing W. and distant about eight or nine leagues: it was high, but not so elevated as O'why'hee or Mow'whoe. This was the island we saw to the eastward, in our passage to the northward last year, in January, immediately before we discovered A'tou'wi. In the night we stood off and on.

Saturday was cloudy, with a few showers of small rain. At four in the morning, we bore away for O'wha'ow, the wind E. N. E. and E. our course W. and S. W. At ten we were well in with part of the north-side, the southernmost point bearing about S. E. There were several small rocky isles situated about half a mile to the E. S. E. of it. Its appearance on this side was very rocky, making in many broken, craggy hills, which though not very high, were covered with clouds at their summits. Having taken a slight view of this part, we hauled up to the N. W. which course we continued till eleven, when seeing more land to the south-westward, we bore away again, the wind E. S. E. our course S. W. We found this land was a continuation of O'wha'ow. Our observed latitude to-day was 21 deg. 50 min. N. and at half past two, we anchored in thirteen fathoms, with

with a fine white sandy bottom, about two miles from shore, on the western side the island, and near a sandy beach; our soundings were from twenty to thirteen fathom. The Resolution's pinnace and large cutter were got out, and the captain, with Mr. King, went on shore, with a view of finding a convenient watering-place. During their absence, several of the natives came off to us in their canoes; we purchased one small pig, and three or four roots of tarrow, which were all they brought off, except a few baked roots, which in their external appearance resembled yams; they were of a tough, stringy nature, but yielded a sweet thickish juice, which if it could be kept would have been a good succedaneum for sugar; its Indian name was Tee. We bought some of the same kind of root at Tonga-taboo. Among other intelligence, we learned that they were at present engaged in a war with the natives of Morotai, and that all the arees, with their large canoes, were absent upon that occasion, which was the reason of our seeing so few inhabitants; a circumstance which we could not help remarking. At five the pinnace and cutter returned, with an account of a rivulet or run of fresh water; but the beach, which made a division between it and the sea, was so low and level, that at high water the fresh was impregnated with the salt, to a considerable distance. This being the case, the boats were hoisted in, we weighed our anchors and stood out

out to sea. This part of O'wháow had a pleasant appearance; it was of a moderate elevation, and well clothed with verdure, but we saw very few trees: as you approach the north point it becomes rugged and very irregular, and increases considerably in height. We hauled our wind all night, to give the land a good birth, steering a N. and N. by E. course.

The wind the next day was E. N. E. and the weather pleasant, with passing clouds. At four the next morning we bore away for A'tou'wi, keeping a W. S. W. course. At noon our observed latitude was 22 deg. 8 min. N. which being more to the northward than we wished or expected, we altered our course to S. by W. At four in the afternoon saw the island of A'tou'wi extending from N. 26 deg. W. to N. 63 W. and about seven leagues distant. At six we were a-breast of the Sugar-Loaf mount, but night coming on, we hauled our wind, and stood off and on till morning.

Monday, March 1st, at five in the morning, we bore away: from six to eight we were running along-shore at about three miles distance, our soundings being seven, eight, and nine fathom. At half past eight we let go our anchor, in twenty-five fathom, a sandy bottom, nearly in the same spot as when here before. We soon after moored ship, when the eastern part of the road bore S. 67 deg. E. the bluff on the west side of the watering place N. 33 deg. E. the west point of the road N. 71 deg. W. and the

the extremes of O'neèhow from N. 71 deg. W. to S. 81 deg. W. our distance from shore about two miles and half. At nine, the launches, cutters, pinnace, &c. were hoisted out, and soon after we had many canoes along side, but they brought off but few articles of trade. At one in the afternoon, the Resolution's launch was sent on shore for a load of water, attended by the large cutter, to traffick with the natives. Upon the first landing of our people they were very civil, but soon began their old trade of thieving, which they were the more encouraged to do, as our party was but small. The first attempt was upon one of the water buckets, which one of them made off with: a musket was fired at him, but without effect. The next thing was the cooper's bag, in which there luckily was nothing but a few bungs; the third was Mr. King's hanger, which they snatched out of his hand. Having with much difficulty filled all the casks, they were got off, and our people were preparing to embark: some of them were already in the boats, when the Indians pressed close upon them, and attempted to wrench the muskets out of their hands; and one of them threw a stone at the serjeant of marines, which knocked off his hat, upon which orders were given to fire, which three of the marines did, and killed or mortally wounded one of them. This threw them into some confusion, which our people took the advantage of, and put off. Nine fine
hogs

hogs and a few roots of tarrow were however purchased.

The next morning at eight, the launches of both ships, with the pinnace, large and small cutters, all well manned and armed to protect them, were sent on shore to fill water. We had a great concourse of the natives on board and along-side, of whom we purchased an amazing number of very large hogs, which kept our butchers and salters continually employed, and plenty of potatoes and tarrow, but very few yams. At six in the evening the boats returned, having met with no molestation from the Indians till they put off, when one of them threw some stones.

Wednesday, the 3d, at seven, the boats well manned and armed, were again dispatched, and we continued to purchase hogs, potatoes, &c. as abundantly as yesterday. In the morning, a chief, attended by several women, one of whom we supposed to be queen of the island, when here before, came on board on a visit to the captain, who made them several presents of bracelets, hatchets, nails, &c. with which they were much delighted. At two in the afternoon the boats returned, having completed the Resolution's stock of water.

The following day, trade was very brisk for hogs; but tarrow, potatoes, &c. were rather scarce.

On Friday morning at nine, the Discovery wanting to complete her water, her launch,

attended by the Resolution's pinnace and large cutter, manned and armed, were sent on shore for that purpose. They returned at half past two with a present from the queen, who was one of the women that came on board with the chief on Wednesday, which consisted of a great number of mats of different sorts, and various degrees of fineness, bracelets composed of boar's tusks, feather ruffs, for the neck, and several kinds of cloth.

At eight the next morning, the queen and her attendants came on board to the captain, who made them various presents in return for the mats, &c. which she sent on board yesterday. She was short and lusty, about forty years of age, and very plain with respect to person. It seems she, at that time, was at war with Tomahana, who, she said, was an usurper, and that the government of A'tou'wi belonged to her. She was very desirous for some of our people to stay and fight for her, promising them every good thing the island produced in the greatest abundance.

Sunday morning, at ten, we were visited by Tomahana, to whom some of the natives paid great respect: others again, whom we supposed to be of the queen's party, took not the least notice of him. She was on board herself at that time, but nothing passed between them except a few angry looks.

In the afternoon, Káhava, the queen's son, visited both ships, and made several presents to

to the captains of each, which consisted of carved images, eatuas, mats, and a curious awa bowl. They, in return, complimented him with a large glass bowl, some red cloth, hatchets, and beads. He was about twelve years old, and a fine looking boy; his attendants, which were numerous, carried him up and down the ship's sides. The queen, understanding we were in want of vegetables, sent on board great bundles of sugar-cane, and plenty of tarrow-roots.

Monday morning, was fine and clear, and at eight we took up our anchors and made sail, shaping our course for O'nee'how. At three in the afternoon, we dropped our anchors again, in twenty fathom of water, with a sandy bottom. When moored, the extremes of the island bore N. E. by N. and E. by S. our distance from the shore being two miles. A few of the Indians came off to us with a small number of yams, and two or three small pigs. Our observed latitude to-day was 21 deg. 47 min. N.

The next day was cloudy, with showers of rain. The wind was so turbulent during the night, that the Resolution drove, though both her anchors were in good holding ground. In the morning, four or five canoes came off with a few yams, which we gladly bought, as they were the only roots that would keep for any length of time. Of these we purchased, when last here, a considerable stock, but were much

disappointed in our expectations this time, the season proving a bad one.

As the trade on board was very slack, the launch was sent early the next morning on shore, to see what could be done there, and at ten she returned with several hogs and some yams.

On Thursday she was dispatched again, and on Friday several canoes arrived from A'tou'wi, with a present of mats, &c. from the queen. On Saturday the master, with the pinnace and cutter, were sent round the north point of the island, to see if it was practicable to anchor there, as we supposed we should be furnished with a greater supply of yams, as they all appeared to be brought from that part. They returned however, without being able to find a convenient place.

The next morning, March 14th, we unmoored, and, as we did not propose moving that day, the launch was sent as usual, and returned with a few yams and salt.

On Monday morning, at seven, we weighed and made sail, standing W. by S. and W. S. W. with a view of stopping at a small low island, which the natives call Mògoo-papòppa, as they informed us it abounded with turtle. We had a heavy swell from the W. N. W. and our observed latitude was 21 deg. 47 min. N. At eight, not seeing any thing of it, we stood off and on for the night.

C H A P. VIII.

This range of islands, distinguished by the name of Sandwich Isles, lay in a N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. direction by compass, and are situated between 22 deg. 15 min. and 18 deg. 53 min. N. latitude. There are in all twelve, viz. O'why'hee, Mow'whèe, Morotai, Kawravee, Aranni, Morokinnee, O'who'ow, A'tou'wi, O'nèehow, Orrahdowa, Taoora, and Mògoo-pàpoppa. Of these O'why'hee, Mow'whèe, O'wha'ow, and A'tou'wi, are the largest, and have each of them a king, to one or other of which the smaller isles are subject.

O'why'hee, which is the easternmost and by far the largest, is somewhat of a circular form, extending about seventy-five miles from E. to W. and eighty-four from N. to S. its circuit being two hundred and seventy miles. Both the eastern and western points are composed of tolerably low land; that to the eastward rises by a gradual ascent to a very lofty hill, or rather mountain, whose top has several patches of snow upon it. The western one also rises regularly to a hill, which is separated from the other by a deep valley, but is not so high as the former. The north and south sides afford a great contrast in their aspect: the former has the appearance of a garden, being covered with an immense quantity of plantations, consisting of sweet potatoes, tarrow, and plantains, which are frequently surrounded with hedges of sugar-

sugar-cane, and abounds with fine water falls: — the latter, on the contrary, has a very barren aspect; in many places there is little else to be seen but large masses of black rocky matter, which we afterwards found was the produce of a volcano, and not a single run of water to be seen. That which we procured at Karacöoah Bay, was brackish, and indeed almost unfit for use, as it proved very cathartic in its effect; and had it not been for a small well in the cavity of a rock, which with some trouble, supplied our wants, we must have left the place without a stock.

This island consists of six districts, or provinces, viz. Káoo, Apöona, Ahéedoo, Amacöoa, Koharra, and Aköna: in the latter, Karacöoah Bay is situated. The N. W. side is composed of an upright mass of rock, the top of which is a perfect garden; the S. E. side consists of a long tract of low land, upon various parts of which are placed the towns of the natives: the head of the bay rises very gradually, and is terminated by a ridge of high land, covered with trees, which runs nearly across the island. The land in this part is very stony, and even the interior parts are not free from them, and all bear evident marks of fire. The present race of inhabitants do not remember this island in a state of eruption, but it must once, at least this side of it, have been absolutely in a flame. The N. W. point affords the most striking appearance of this kind, as has been mentioned before; not-

notwithstanding which there is a large town built upon it, and even the king frequently resides there. The soil along-shore, where it is free from stones, is light, thin, and sandy, but as you advance up the country, it becomes loamy, rich and deep, and on the mountains it is rendered rich from the continual fall of leaves and rotten timber. Otaheitee and the Society Isles can boast of a much better soil; there it was deep, black, rich, and loamy, but notwithstanding this difference, many of the productions do not arrive at so great a degree of perfection as at O'why'hee. The bread-fruit, for instance, is superior in size, as well as flavour to that of the Society Isles, and the tree itself grows considerably larger, and spreads in a surprising degree; the sugar cane too is by far the largest we ever saw, and yields great quantity of juice.

The air of these islands is in general salubrious, especially at O'why'hee, where we had regular sea and land breezes; but at A'tou'wi and O'nèehow, we found a considerable alteration in the climate; the weather was mostly cloudy and frequently rainy, and the wind high, in consequence of which coughs and colds prevailed.

With respect to quadrupeds, we saw only hogs, dogs, rats, and bats. The dogs are bred for no other purpose than to eat, but not so universally as at the Society Isles, nor are they so numerous. The rats are more abundant, but bats are not very common.

The birds are very numerous, though not various, some of them can vie with those of any country in point of beauty. Five different species may be referred to the *certhia* genus of Linnaeus: one, which, from the structure of its beak, was called, by our seamen, a par-roquet, is quite an anomalous bird, and probably will afford a new genus. Among the more common ones, are owls, a plover, nearly the same as our whistling plover, curlews, and ravens; the former and latter rather scarce. Upon our first arrival at Karacacöoah Bay, the natives brought off several geese, which were quite tame; they were not unlike the Chinese geese; they called them Na-na. By what means they procured them, we could not learn. They have ducks, and upon the coast are found a species of tern, two or three species of petrels, and a few gannets.

The coast abounds with variety of fish, among which is the albecore; of these, during our run along the S. E. side of the island, we one day bought sufficient for the ship's company, some of them weighing near thirty pounds. The natives salt these, and indeed every kind of fish they catch that are tolerably large. This fish, however, was bought only at one small town, situated in a very barren spot, not far from the east point, nor was there any salted fish offered to sale but at this place, at A'tou'wi, and O'nèehow.

Among

Among the rest of the fish was a species of *jaculator*, but different from the *chaetodon rostratus*, of Linnaeus. Of the *sparus* genus, there were various kinds, and some new species, and at A'tou'wi and O'nèehow the *cavilla* was very common among the salted fish.

Many of the vegetable productions of these islands are the same as at the Society and Friendly Isles; those which they have in common with them, are bread fruit, coco nuts, plantains, sugar-cane, yams, tarrow, and a sweet potatoe of an orange colour, which eats something like a carrot. The sweet potatoe, which abounds here, *convulvulus batatas*, Lin., is not found at the Friendly Isles, but at Otaheitee we saw one small plantation of it, not far from Point Venus. All these islands do not, however, produce the above mentioned articles; at O'why'hee, except the yams, they were all in great plenty, but at A'tou'wi we got neither bread-fruit nor coco-nuts, though they have a few of both, but in no perfection. At O'nèehow we got little else than yams, potatoes, and sugar-cane; once, indeed, two small bunches of plantains were bought, but the fruit was small.

The awa tree, *piper methysticum*, Forst., so universally known and made use of in all the tropical isles, for the purpose of intoxication, is by no means plentiful among these islands. We saw only five or six plants growing near one of their houses at O'why'hee: what

they used, we observed, was always dry, from which circumstance we supposed they procured it from some of the neighbouring islands, or at least from the northern or more distant parts of O'why'hee. The cloth tree is suffered to grow larger here than we ever saw it before; this, with the candle tree, *aleurites triloba*, Forst., and the no-ne, *morinda citrifolia*, Lin., are also the productions of the Friendly and Society Isles, and the small green Otaheitee apple is tolerably plentiful. The sides of the hills are covered with variety of shrubs, among which is one well known in the West Indies by the name of the bonduc or nickar tree, *guilandina bonduc*, Lin., We also found abundance of wild ginger and turmerick, both which are common at the Friendly and Society Isles: the *dracaena terminalis* grows in almost every part of the island, and some beautiful shrubs of the *vacinium* genus were found. The etou of Otaheitee is a native of this place, though not common; the natives seem to be ignorant of its use as a dye. The woods, which are confined principally to the hills, are thick and extensive; upon penetrating about a mile, you fall in with a long range of plantain trees, which, for want of proper air and culture, assume a different appearance with respect to colour from the general run, being of a harsh, dull, and rather dark green; they are tall, and the fruit is small, hard, and bitter, and seldom ripens.

This

This fruit, bad as it is, is sometimes eaten by the lower class of people. Among a variety of other shrubs, we found a species of raspberry, the fruit of which was rather insipid. There are only two kinds of trees which can properly be denominated timber; the first, in the shape of its leaves, bears a strong resemblance to the spice trees of Vandiemens Land, and grows to a great height; of this the natives make their canoes. The second is found at Otaheitee, where it is so small as scarcely to deserve the name of a tree, but at this place is nearly equal to the other in point of size. Most of the plants, of which there was variety, were out of flower, but ferns and mosses were quite in a perfect state.

Thus far the productions of O'why'hee only have been considered: with respect to those of the other isles, we can say but little, not having the time and opportunity of examining them. The soil of O'wha'ow is of a red colour, which kind of earth, the natives informed us, was most favourable for the produce of yams. A'tou'wi is high, and the inland parts are woody: the soil is loamy and rich, even close to the water side. The S. W. part of O'nèehow is low level land, but the N. and N. E. parts are high and rocky: the soil is a sandy loam, almost covered with loose stones; the whole island, which is small, produces scarce a tree. Taoòra is nothing more than a bluff rock, which is steep on all sides, with a slight verdure on the top;

top; its sole inhabitants are sea-fowl, such as petrels, albatrosses, boobies, and gannets.

The inhabitants of O'why'hee are very numerous; during our cruice of the north part, the hills, for the shore on that side is in general steep and lofty, were almost covered with them, and when we anchored in Karacacöoah Bay, the number was almost incredible. A'tou'wi is well populated, and O'nèehow, though small, has many inhabitants. However, all the islands produce a much greater quantity of provisions than the natives can consume.

The men are above the middle size, stout, well made, and fleshy, but not fat. Corpulency is not altogether so great a mark of distinction in these as in the Society Isles: and tallness, for which the Otaheiteans have great partiality, is also overlooked. Their colour is in general brown olive. The women are in general masculine, though there are some delicately made, and the voice of them all is soft and feminine. The hair both of the head and beard is black; that of the head the men wear in the form of a helmet, that is, a long frizzled ridge from the forehead to the neck, the sides being much shorter. This fashion seems to prevail only among the principal people, that of the inferior sort being of an equal length in every part. Most of them were very desirous of parting with their beards, which, they said, were disagreeable and troublesome, and were fond of being shaved by our people. Some of the
priests

priests wore their beards long, and would not on any account part with them. The women wear their hair long before, but very short behind, which is not the most becoming mode; and, like those of the Friendly Isles, they have a way of rendering it of different colours, red, yellow, and brown. The features of both sexes are good, and we saw some of the females who might really be called fine women. Their teeth are even and perfectly white. In general, they seem to be very healthy, and we observed several who appeared to be of a great age. As to diseases, we saw none who laboured under any during our stay, except the venereal complaints; coughs and colds, indeed, were pretty general, and one man died. From what we could learn of his disorder from the natives, it was a violent griping or colic.

Both men and women appeared to be of a good disposition, and behaved to each other with the tenderest regard: when they did fall out, which sometimes was the case, occasioned by the upsetting of a canoe, or some such trifling accident, they only scolded a little, and this was soon over and forgotten. We never saw them strike each other upon any occasion. They are all thieves, from the aree to the toutou, but not quite so expert at it as our Otaheitee friends.

The custom of tatowing prevails greatly among these people, but the men have a much larger share of it than the women; many, particu-

ticularly some of the natives of Mow'whèe, have one half their body, from head to foot, marked in this manner, which gives them a most striking appearance. It is done with great regularity, and looks remarkably neat; some have only an arm marked in this manner, others a leg; some again have both arm and leg, and others only the hand. The women are for the most part marked upon the hand, and some upon the tip of their tongue, but of these we saw but few. Both sexes have a particular mark, according to the district in which they live, or it is rather the mark of the aree, or principal man under whose jurisdiction they more immediately are. We never saw the operation of tatowing performed, nor could we procure a sight of the instruments used upon this occasion, but it is likely they are much the same as those of the Friendly and Society Isles.

Both men and women are very cleanly in their persons; the latter wash their whole bodies in fresh water, twice, and sometimes three times a-day; but the women of Otaheitee have the advantage of them in one point of cleanliness, which is eradicating the hairs from under the armpits. This is a custom we observed no where but at the Society Isles.

There are no people in the world who indulge themselves more in their sensual appetites than these: in fact, they carry it to a most scandalous and shameful degree, and in a manner
not

not proper to be mentioned. The ladies are very lavish of their favours, but are far from being so mercenary as those of the Friendly or Society Isles, and some of their attachments seemed purely the effect of affection. They are initiated into this way of life at a very early period; we saw some, who could not be more than ten years old.

Their clothing consists of cloth of different kinds; that worn by the men, which is called marro, is about half a yard wide, and four yards long; that of the women three quarters of a yard wide, and of the same length as the men's; this they call pah-ouwa; they both wear it round their middle, but the men pass it between their legs. This is the general dress of both sexes, but the better sort sometimes throw a large piece loosely over their shoulders. Besides the marro, they have several other kinds of cloth, which derive their names either from the different uses they are applied to, or their different texture and pattern; all, however, as far as we could learn, are made from the Chinese paper mulberry tree. The principal of these is the capa, which is about ten or twelve feet long, and nearly as many wide, and is thick and warm: they wrap themselves up in this when they retire to sleep. They have another kind, which is white, and much thinner; this, as has been before observed, they throw loosely over their shoulders; it is sometimes twenty or thirty yards long, and wide
in

in proportion. The marro and pah-ouwa are curiously painted of various patterns, but the others are generally white, or dyed red, black, and yellow.

The principal ornaments of the men, are the feather-caps and cloaks; some of the latter reach down to their heels, and have a most magnificent appearance. They are made for the most part of red and yellow feathers, which are tied upon fine net work; the caps are composed of the same kind of feathers, which are sometimes intermixed with black; they are secured upon a kind of basket work, made in the form of a helmet. Both caps and cloaks are made of various patterns and sizes. The cloaks are not all composed of the same kind of feathers, but are sometimes varied with the long tail-feathers of the cock, with a border of yellow or red, and sometimes with those of the tropick bird. Both caps and cloaks, however, are only to be seen in the possession of the principal people. They have also a kind of fly-flap, made of a bunch of feathers fixed to the end of a thin piece of smooth and polished wood: they are generally made of the tail-feathers of the cock, but the better sort of people have them of the tropick birds feathers, or those belonging to a black and yellow bird called mo-hó. The handle is very frequently made of one of the bones of the arm or leg of those whom they have killed in battle, curiously inlaid with tortoise-shell: these they deem very valuable, and will not

not part with them under a great price. This ornament is common to the superiors of both sexes.

The women too have their share in the ornamental way: that which they value the most is the *erai*. This is a kind of ruff or necklace made of red, green, black, and yellow feathers, curiously put together, and in most elegant patterns, which really do honour to the fancy of the ladies, whose business it is to make them. They never think themselves dressed without one or two of these round their necks, and those who can afford it wear many. Others again are composed of small variegated shells, disposed in a very neat manner; and some consist of several rows of twisted hair, with a piece of carved wood or bone highly polished, the bottom part forming a curve. The higher the quality of the wearer, the greater is the size of the wood or bone, and the quantity of the twisted hair. The next thing is the *poo-remah* or bracelet; the most valuable are made of boars tusks, fastened together side by side with a piece of string, by means of a hole drilled through the middle: the larger the tusks, the greater the value. Sometimes two shells tied round the wrists with twisted or braided hair, serve the purpose of bracelets, but even in this case they shew great nicety, being particularly careful to match them as near as possible. They were prodigiously fond of those we gave them, which were only a few beads, secured by thread

upon a strip of scarlet cloth, and made to button round the wrist. So much did they at first value them, that a small hatchet and one of these would purchase a hog, which without it could not have been bought for three large hatchets. The women were perpetually teasing the men to dispose of their various articles for these bracelets; at least, one of them was always to make a part of the price.

It may not here be amiss, perhaps, to take a slight comparative view of the dresses of the various nations we met with in the course of the voyage.

The poor forlorn inhabitants of Vandiemens land, have as little idea of dress as any set of beings in the world; for both men and women, except those who had their children with them, were as naked as when born. The hair of the latter is shaved quite close, except a very narrow circle, which surrounds their head nearly in the middle, while that of the former is matted together, with brown earth and grease, in small lumps: their faces are sometimes daubed with the same mixture, and their bodies and arms are marked with elevated lines and curves, but without regularity.

The new Zealanders have a greater claim to taste. The men wear a ha-hoo over their shoulders, secured before with a needle of bone, ornaments in their ears, an uncouth image of green stone upon their breast, a pata-patow sticking in their girdle, a carved staff in their hands,

hands, their faces are curiously marked, their hair is oiled and tied in a knot upon the top of their heads, and three or four feathers stuck in it. The women oil their hair, paint their cheeks, and sometimes their eyes and nose with red, their lips are tatowed, which renders them of a blue cast, and they wear a ha-hoo like the men.

The refined natives of the Friendly Isles are very careful in their dress. Both women and men wear a piece of coloured cloth, which reaches half way down the leg, and nearly up to their armpits, and tied round their middle with a sash of the same kind; their hair combed smooth, and anointed with oil highly perfumed with odoriferous flowers and plants; they also rub their necks, breasts, and arms with it, and adorn their necks with a necklace of sweet smelling flowers.

At Otaheitee and the Society Isles, the dress of both sexes is nearly the same. It consists of a great quantity of cloth wrapped round them, and a large piece, which is generally scented, thrown loosely over their shoulders. They anoint their hair with coco-nut oil, and the women ornament it with flowers. The arreois of both sexes mark their face and nose with red, which is a privilege confined to the members of that society.

The continent of America affords a striking contrast to the two last mentioned people; there the greatest neatness and cleanliness is observed;

here filth and dirt seem to be the principal objects, and a man who washes his hands and face would become a subject of ridicule. In King George's Sound, the men are clothed in the skins of animals, or a kind of cloak made of the bark of the fir or cypress tree; their hair is thick, shaggy, and matted with grease and dirt, over which they scatter the down of birds. Their faces are painted of various colours, and in various forms, and sometimes plaistered all over with grease to a considerable thickness; this they scrape off regularly in different places with their nails, which gives them an appearance altogether curious. In their ears they wear pieces of copper, and sometimes bracelets of the same metal, with a small piece of brass or copper in their nose. Their caps are made in the form of a tin cover, and some terminate in a round knob. The women here are quite out of the question.

In Sandwich Sound the dress varies. Both sexes wear jackets with sleeves made of animal or bird skins; the caps are not quite so large, and some of them are furnished with a top, similar to a barber's puff; they wear strings of beads in their under-lip, which are perforated on purpose, as well as the gristle of their nose, through which they put pieces of bone, and frequently strings of beads; and their faces are painted.

At the island of Unalafschka, the men wear bird-skin gowns, ornamented with strips of beaver skin; their hair is long behind, and rather

rather short before. Their caps or bonnets are ornamented with beads; they wear two pieces of carved bone in a hole in the under lip, and the gristle of their noses is perforated. The women are dressed in seal-skin jackets, tied round their middle with a girdle of the same, and ornamented round the collar and on the fore-part with the beaks of the puffin and sea-parrot; the lower part of the sleeve is embroidered. Their hair is short before, and tied up behind in a club with a strip of embroidery; their cheeks and chin are tatowed; they suspend a string of beads from the gristle of the nose; their under-lip is ornamented like the men's, and their wrists and ancles are surrounded with bracelets of seal-skin.

The inhabitants of the Tschutschki Nofs on the Asiatic coast, wear jackets and breeches of leather very well tanned; their half-boots are curiously embroidered, and their hair is cut very short.

The natives of Norton Sound upon the continent of America, in lieu of the hole in the under-lip, have it on one and sometimes both sides the mouth, in which they put pieces of bone as ornaments, not like those of Unalafschka, but short and round. They are dressed in jackets made of the skins of beasts, and their hair is very short.

Such is the general dress of the various countries we have visited; but we generally observed there was one thing or other in particu-

lar, which they were more desirous of having than any thing else; this varied according to the different mode of dress in the different countries. At Vandiemens Land, indeed, they would scarce take any thing we gave them, but at New Zealand a small piece of white paper or Otaheitee cloth was valuable. At the Friendly Isles a necklace of various coloured beads, particularly blue, was the grand object. At Otaheitee and the Society Isles, an ear-ring composed of three beads, suspended at some little distance from the ear, was the only present for the ladies. At Sandwich Isles nothing could be done without a poo-remah, or bracelet. At King George's Sound, a piece of copper or brass in the form of a bracelet was a valuable article, particularly if bright; with these the beaux of the village decorated themselves. At Sandwich Sound, and along the coast to Norton's Sound, as well at the island Unalafschka, blue beads were the desirable object.

But to proceed from this digression. The houses of these people are almost always built near the sea side, and so disposed as to form villages, but they want that cool refreshing shade, which the happy natives of the Friendly and Society Isles enjoy, for scarce a tree is to be seen near them. Nothing more can be said with respect to their form and size than has been already mentioned. Here they sit for the major part of the day, the sun being too power-

powerful without doors; but as the evening approaches they generally prefer sitting on the outside, at which time it is usual to see most families before their door.

Their furniture is very trifling, consisting only of three or four gourd shells for the purpose of holding their articles of food, and a large one to contain water.

CHAP. IX.

Their food is principally vegetable; though the chiefs indulge themselves more frequently in the use of pork than we ever observed at the Friendly and Society Isles; and the priests come in for a share, for we never saw them without it at their meals, but then they are moderate in the quantity they eat.

We observed a singular ceremony among the priests before they eat, which seems peculiar to their profession. They always address themselves to one of their deities in a kind of prayer, which is generally sung by two or three of the eldest in company, the rest striking their hands gently together: this continues for the space of five or six minutes, when one of them cuts off a few slices of pork, which, with some potatoes, tarrow, &c. is offered to the deity, during which only one speaks, and that in a very different tone and manner from the former. After this is ended, they all make

responses, and he who offered the things begins again in the same singing tone as at first, after which the responses are made as before. Two of the old people then drink a cup of awa, another repeating something at the same time, which appears to be a kind of blessing: after they have done, he also drinks, one or both of the others repeating the same words as before; they then began their repast. In some of the priests houses we observed a difference in the manner of the first prayer; the former was delivered in a singing tone, the latter in a plaintive one; but the remaining part of the ceremony corresponded exactly with each other.

They have great abundance of fish, which the women are particularly fond of: they eat them raw, guts, scales, and all; and use an immoderate quantity of salt with them.

Tarrow, bread-fruit, and sweet potatoes, are universally used among them, and are plentiful to a degree: coco-nuts and ripe plantains are rather scarce, on which account the women are forbid to eat them.

Their method of cooking is much the same as at the Friendly and Society Isles. Of potatoes, tarrow, and bread-fruit, they make a kind of thin pudding, which they call poey; this is done by mashing the potatoes, &c. very small after they are baked, and mixing them with water.

Their general drink is water, or the milk of the coco-nut: but all the chiefs use the a'wa, and some of them to excess, as was very evident from

from their skins, which were as rough and parched as can well be conceived, and their eyes red and inflamed. This appearance they are all very fond of, and, so prevailing is custom, esteem it as a particular mark of distinction. The women were not averse to eat with us, though the men were present, and would frequently indulge themselves with pork, plantains, and coco nuts, when secure from being seen by them.

Though one would suppose that the heat of the climate would naturally induce these people to sleep much, particularly after their meals; yet this custom is not so prevalent as at the Society and Friendly Isles. The women employ themselves in their various occupations of making mats, painting and glazing cloth, &c. and the men in making spears, clubs, fish-hooks, and canoes.

Their amusements are boxing, wrestling, singing, dancing, playing at bowls, and some other games, which we did not know the meaning of. The two former are upon the same plan as at the Friendly and Society Isles, and conducted with as great good nature on both sides. Their songs are not various: they are sung nearly in the same tone as at Otaheitee, but their dances are different from any we have yet seen. They have none of those graceful movements which are so peculiar to the natives of Anamooka, Amsterdam, &c. nor the lewd motions which characterize the people of the

Society Isles. Whenever they can collect seven or eight girls together, they generally strike up a dance, which is an amusement they are very partial to. They first begin by repeating, or rather singing several words, which appear to be in rhyme, all of them at the same time slowly moving their legs and striking their breasts gently with their right hands; this being finished, they all jump in a violent manner, but in exact time, striking their breasts or sides much harder than before, and repeating the word *he'ora*; those who continue this exercise the longest, are allowed to be the best dancers. This, with very little variation was the only dance we saw, except one, which was performed by an old woman, and accompanied with a drum. The movements were something like those of our hornpipes; she had bracelets composed of dog's teeth, fixed upon a kind of netting, round her ancles, which by the continual motion her legs were in, made no disagreeable music. The drum was beat by a man, who at the same time accompanied it with a song.

These drums were the only musical instruments that were observed among them. Their manner of playing at bowls is nearly like ours; the bowls are about two inches and half in diameter, an inch in thickness, and flatted on the sides, but broadest at the center. They seem to be a composition of lime, or something similar to it, and very neatly and exactly formed.

Their

Their manufactures are cloth, mats, ropes, and lines of various sizes. The former is the produce of the same tree as that of Otaheitee and the Friendly Isles, and their manner of making it varies but little from that of those islands, with this difference only that in general its width does not exceed three quarters of a yard, and its texture is very thick and strong; but in those pieces which are wider, it is manufactured considerably thinner. They suffer the trees to grow to a larger size than we observed before; the instrument they use to beat out the bark, is upon the same construction as at Otaheitee, but the groves or channels are much wider.

After the pieces are brought to their proper width, and sewed together, they are laid out to bleach; after which they are ready for the next process, which is painting or dyeing them. The colours used upon this occasion are red, black, and yellow; the latter is seldom used, except when they dye whole pieces.

The red is extracted from the bark of the root of the no-ne, *morinda citrifolia* Lin. When it is thoroughly dry, they pound it into a coarse powder, adding the kernel of the candle tree, *aleurites triloba*, Forst., having mixed them properly together, they pour a certain quantity of water upon them, and then the composition is strained, after which it is ready for use. This mixture at first has a brownish yellow appearance, but when dry becomes red.

We

We could never learn the composition of the black dye; but the yellow is produced from the turmeric root, which they call ouro'nnah. To this, they likewise add the bruised kernel of the koo-kowe, or candle tree, which seems to be a most useful article in their dyes: probably from its oily nature it may serve to fix the colours, for all of them are immoveable by water.

From the great variety of patterns, one would suppose they use many different instruments in printing their cloth: but this is not the case, their whole stock consisting only of three or four. The long strait lines are made with a thin piece of wood, about twelve inches in length, and shaped something like a sharp-pointed knife, and by pressing it upon the cloth, after being dipped in the colour, farther from, or nearer to the point, they can readily make lines of various lengths. The spots are made with a wooden instrument, with teeth like a comb; and when they put on a greater quantity of colour than ordinary, they use a brush.

As they stain or paint a piece of cloth, they scatter a powder over it made of bruised pumice stone, which they call opoo'na; this appears to have no share in the production of the colour, but merely to prevent it from blotting as they fold it up.

They have a method of glazing some of their thinner kind of cloth, by rubbing it with a smooth shell upon a flat piece of board, which
ren-

renders it very smooth and glossy: all this kind of cloth was agreeably scented.

Of the bark of the cloth-tree, they likewise make two kinds of line; one, of the size of our whip-cord, which they use as fishing lines; this is frequently upwards of a hundred fathom in length. The other is made in the same manner as the thongs of whips, and is prodigiously strong: they use it for the purpose of hoisting up the sails in their canoes.

But their largest ropes are made of the bark of a small tree, which is very common in the woods. These were so long and well made, that many were purchased for the use of the ships as running rigging, for which purpose they answered very well. They likewise make very fine twine of the bark of a shrub which they call a'reemah.

Mats are another considerable article of their manufactures, which, as well as those used for sails, are made of the leaves of the same species of pandanus, as at the Friendly and Society Isles. It is something remarkable that we could find neither the flower nor fruit of this plant; upon enquiring of the natives, they told us it had none.

The mats are of various patterns, and of different sizes and degrees of fineness: some of them are twenty-four feet long, and eight feet wide, others not above five feet long and eighteen inches wide. The women, whose employment it is to manufacture them, are very dex-

dextrous, and make them with great facility and dispatch.

Their fish-hooks are very like those of the other islands, and in general are composed of the same materials; though some of the principal men, who wish perhaps to appear singular, have them made of the bones of those they slay in battle. These they set most value upon. Some of the hooks, particularly those they take sharks with, are very large; these are made of a very hard wood, with a point of bone.

The next articles that come under consideration, are their canoes, which are as well made, and highly finished as any in the world. As their tools, like those of Otaheitee, are very few, constructing one of them must of course be a work of time. The bottom is composed of the trunk of one entire tree hollowed out, the colour of which is something like mahogany. The sides are formed of a different wood, of a light yellowish colour; they are well secured to the bottom part, by strong cords, which are passed through holes made with a kind of auger. The head and stern are both alike with respect to form, so that they may be paddled any way without any inconvenience. The single canoes are furnished with an out-rigger, which is placed on the left side. The double ones are of the same form as the single, and are joined together in the same manner as at the Society Isles: both vary greatly in size, from
twelve

twelve to sixty feet, and sometimes more; the largest we saw belonged to Terriabod, and measured seventy-two feet. All the double and many of the single ones carry a sail, the form of which is something like those of the Friendly Isles; none have more than one mast.

Those people whose business or occupation it is to make them, are obliged to live in the woods for the time, and having fixed upon a tree of a proper size, they erect one or two small huts near it. They then fell the tree, and work upon it as it lies, and having finished the bottom part, they with great trouble and difficulty convey it down to their houses, where they complete the whole.

Sometimes they penetrate ten or twelve miles into the woods before they can find a tree that will answer their purpose. Their paddles bear some resemblance to those of the Friendly Isles, but the blade is longer and not so broad.

Their language is a mixture of that of the Society and Friendly Isles, but the former mostly predominates.

Of the manner in which they dispose of their dead, and the forms and ceremonies used upon that occasion, we can say scarce any thing, as only one instance that we know of occurred during our stay. Immediately upon the death of the person, his friends and relations assembled together and deplored his loss, with loud lamentations and expressions of grief, which continued till the following day, when they
threw

threw his body into the sea. They told us, they always burn the bodies of their chiefs; and the night after that unhappy affair of captain Cook, we observed several fires upon the hills, which we at that time were unable to account for, but upon enquiry afterwards, they told us they had been consuming the bodies of those chiefs who were killed in that skirmish.

Their morais or burying places are erected in different forms; that in the neighbourhood of our observatories consisted of an area or platform, about one hundred yards in length, and forty in breadth, which was considerably elevated above the surface of the earth by vast heaps of stones, and surrounded with wooden pales about four feet high, upon which were fixed a number of human skulls, belonging to those who had at different times been sacrificed to their deities. The area was divided into two parts; in the first, on the left hand side, was a wooden image, representing, as they told us, their great God, whom they distinguished by the appellation of eatua aronah, which signifies the chief of the gods. A quantity of cloth was wrapped round this deity, and a number of coco-nuts, plantains, &c. were placed before it as offerings.

Opposite to this was another deity, but of an inferior rank; and behind this were the remains of an old house, in which were four rude carvings in wood, which represented other of their deities.

In

In the second part, at the end of the area, was a large pile of stones, upon which were fixed many long poles, but eight in particular far exceeded the rest in length: between the poles, a number of others were placed across and length-ways. Before the pile, were twelve of their inferior deities, which they call cawhi, represented by carved wooden images, with monstrous faces, and exceeding large mouths beset with teeth.

These stand in a semicircular form, at some little distance from the pile, extending beyond it both to the right and left hand. The place where they were fixed was about two feet higher than the rest, and covered with straw. At a small distance from these, and in front of the pile, was a kind of small scaffolding, which consisted of four poles, with several others tied across, to strengthen the whole. It appeared to be erected for the purpose of placing the various offerings to their gods, for the bottom of it was covered with plantains, coco-nuts, and the remains of a pig. Behind this, and opposite to the pile was another house, equally as ruinous as the former, but without any deities in it.

On the left hand, at some little distance from the morai, were three or four houses, which are inhabited solely by priests, under whose care this morai seems wholly to be. Before each of their houses, one of these carved images is placed, wrapped round with cloth,

and near it a small pole is erected, upon which they place plantain, coco-nuts, pigs, and dogs, killed for that purpose, which sometimes emit a most disagreeable stench, for they hang till they decay and drop to pieces.

We remarked, that no one ever presumed to enter the houses of the priests, except their own families, nor did we see a woman amongst them. Whether they are prohibited marrying, we cannot pretend to determine, but there were several boys who lived with them, and some not exceeding five or six years old.

Of their religion we can say nothing, except that they appear to have no veneration or respect for particular birds, as at the Friendly and Society Isles.

Their weapons are slings, spears, wooden daggers, which they call pah'ow-wa, and clubs. They are not so dexterous in the use of slings as at the Society Isles; for though they throw stones with great force, they very frequently miss the object. The mats are an excellent defence against the stones, and even spears; they usually dip them in water before they put them on, which renders them tough, and of course not so liable to be penetrated.

Their spears are made of wood, and are from ten to fourteen feet in length, gradually tapering from within seven inches of the point, which is furnished with five rows of barbs, to the other extremity. The pah'ow-wa's are generally about twenty inches or two feet in length, and

and are also made of wood; the blade is somewhat rounded in the middle, the sides are sharp, and terminate in a point. In the handle is made a hole, through which they put a strong piece of line, which they secure round their wrist, so that it is almost impossible to disarm them. This weapon is intended for close engagements, and in their hands is a most destructive one.

The form of government, from what few observations we could make, seems to be much the same as at the other tropical islands; and, from many enquiries, we have every reason to suppose that the crown is hereditary. The natives informed us, that it has been in the possession of the present king's family for five generations past.

Kapo'orahoo-awyka'ah is the first king of O'why'hee these people mention: he had an only son named Kunnaro'oa-gooah, who succeeded him. The island of Mow'whee was at that time a separate state, and the name of the king was Kowmoko'a-ha'ah: he likewise had an only son called Pappika-neehow, who, at his decease, succeeded him. These two were contemporaries; the former had three sons, the eldest was named Kahaa-va, the next Kaow-keea, and the youngest Kunna-maanoo; the latter had an only son, whose name was Kahow-reèka.

Kahaa-va and Kahow-reèka succeeded their fathers. The first had only one child, whose name was Kiyenèwa-mummow; the other, on

the contrary, had two, Kamaah-maah the eldest, and Tuhiteere the youngest. Kaha'a-va dying, O'why'hee devolved to Kiyenewa-mummow, and at the death of Kahow-reeka, Kamaah-maah became king of Mow'whee. The former left two sons, Terriaboo, the present king of O'why'hee, the eldest, and Kaoo-wah the youngest: Kamaah-maah died without male issue, but left a daughter, whose name was Roahow.

Terriaboo, after his succession to the throne of O'why'hee, married the widow of Kamaah-maah, whose name was Kororah, and by her had a son named Koorahow. During this minority, the management of affairs at Mow'whee was under the inspection of Kororah and Roahow.

Tahi-teere, brother to Kamaah-maah, finding that, by the succession of Koorahow, the government of Mow'whee would descend to another family, took up arms, with an intent to depose Kororah and her son, and place himself upon the throne: but Terriaboo espousing the cause of his son, went over to Mow'whee with a large army, and at length, after several battles, defeated Tahi-teere; the last of which happened near the latter end of November, the time we first discovered that island.

Koorahow, at this period, was old enough to take the reins of government in his own hands; Terriaboo therefore married him to his half-sister Roahow, and placed him upon the throne. However, Tahi-teere was suffered to retain

retain part of his brother's dominions, which are the islands on the north and western side of Mow'whee, viz. Morotai, Aranni, Kaowravee, and Morokinnee; but upon condition that he pays certain yearly tributes to Koorahow.

At the death of Tahiteere they again become the property of Koorahow, who likewise succeeds to the throne of O'why'hee after Terriaboo's decease, as being his eldest son. Terriaboo has two other sons living, which he had by Kahna-kubbarah, whom he married after the death of Kororah; but it seems these have no right to the crown, as they are born of a woman who is not of the blood royal.

C H A P. X.

At half past five the next morning, Tuesday, March 16, we bore away, keeping a S. W. course, the wind being E. N. E. At seven, the Resolution made the Discovery's signal to keep on her starboard beam, at four miles distance, with an intent to give us a greater scope of vision. Our latitude at noon, was 21 deg. 27 min. N. and at five in the afternoon, the Discovery was ordered by signal to come under the Resolution's stern, as we found, by the distance we had run, that we must have passed the island. In the evening, one of the seamen caught a noddy, which had perched upon the shrouds.

It was captain Clerk's intention to proceed from Sandwich Isles to Kamtschatka, and, as the longitude was by far the most considerable part of the distance, he came to a resolution of running it down nearly in the latitude we were then in; and as it was a new route, he was in hopes of discovering something in his way worthy of observation. With this view we still pursued a W. by S. course with the wind E. N. E. Our observed latitude was 21 deg. 18 min. N. and our variation 10 deg. 3 min. E. In the evening we reefed our top-sails, that we might be prepared for any sudden squalls.

In the evening of the next day, March 18th, several boobies were observed flying round the ships, and one was caught; it was entirely white, except the tips of the wings, which were black. The following afternoon, we had likewise many birds of the tern kind about us, and a man of war bird.

Saturday, March 20th, we had light airs from the N. E. and in the morning caught a shark. This voracious fish had been three times hooked before, in the space of ten minutes. The next day we had fine weather, with flying clouds, and a light breeze from the E. N. E. At five in the afternoon, being in longitude 191 deg. 54 min. E. thought we saw the appearance of land to the N. by E. but at a great distance, and in the evening three man of war birds were observed. Our variation to-day was 11 deg. 24 min. E.

Mon-

Monday the 22d, our breeze freshened from the E. N. E. and the weather was cloudy, with a few very slight showers of rain. In the evening, we had a heavy rowling sea going.

Our breeze increased the next day to a fresh gale, with a heavy swell from the N. by E. and the weather was cloudy, with frequent showers of small rain, till the afternoon, when it cleared up, and the clouds began to disperse. We saw two or three boobies and a man of war bird in the morning, and our latitude was 19 deg. 58 min. N.

Our gale continued till Thursday morning, March 25th, when the wind shifted to E. by S. and it became almost calm. To-day we cleaned and smoaked between decks.

Friday the 26th, the weather was fine, but the winds were very light. At eight in the morning, we saw the appearance of land upon the starboard bow; but at noon it almost all vanished, except one part making like a hummock, and in the afternoon our supposed land proved to be a cloud.

From the 27th to the 30th, we had scarce a breath of air stirring, and the heat proved rather troublesome, the thermometer standing at 82 deg. and 84 deg. The captain, finding that to continue in these latitudes any longer would retard the ships greatly in their passage to Kamtschatka, by reason of the very light winds which prevailed, gave orders at six in the evening to haul up to N. W. Our longitude

then was 180 deg. 39 min. E. and our latitude 20 deg. 21 min. N.

The next day was perfectly calm, and in the afternoon we saw several dolphins about the ship, and caught a shark.

In the morning however a light breeze sprung up from the N. E. by E. and at nine we had a squall attended with rain, which rendered the air much more cool and agreeable. In the afternoon there were many man of war birds about, and towards evening it lightened.

Friday, April 2d, was cloudy, with a few showers of rain, and a fresh breeze from N. by W. Our observed latitude was 22 deg. 36 min. N. and we observed many sheerwaters skimming over the surface of the sea.

Our breeze shifted the next day to N. [E. our latitude was 24 deg. 38 min. N. and our longitude 176 deg. 18 min. E. In the evening several showers of rain fell and we had many flashes of lightning.

Sunday, 4th, was cloudy, with frequent showers of small rain, and the wind shifted to E. by N. Our latitude was 26 deg. 21 min. N. and in the afternoon saw an albatross. During the night we had much rain.

The next day the weather became very thick, heavy, and cloudy, with almost continued showers of small rain, and our breeze shifted to a gale. Throughout the night it rained violently, and continued so till ten the next morning, when it ceased, and became quite calm: but at
eleven

eleven a violent squall came on, and the wind almost in a instant sprung up from the N. N. W. upon which we altered our course to west. We observed to-day a great number, of what we at first supposed to be Portuguese men of war, as the seamen call them, *holothuria*, Lin., upon the surface of the water, but upon a closer inspection they proved to be a different animal, and belonged to the *doris* genus of Linnaeus. We likewise saw many beautiful snails of a fine purple colour, *helix janthina*, Lin., and some small crabs, whose colour was light blue. In the afternoon there were many albatrosses about.

Our latitude the following day, April 7th, was 30 deg. 6 min. N. and we had a heavy sea going. About five in the afternoon the weather cleared up; and the next day the wind was variable from N. to N. E. and in the afternoon it shifted to east. In the night however it gradually veered round to south.

Friday, the 9th, the weather was pleasant, with flying clouds and haze, and the thermometer stood at 71 deg. Our observed latitude was 32 deg. 16 min. N. and longitude 166 deg. 58 min. E.

In the afternoon we observed a great quantity of scum, or rather spawn, upon the water, which the sailors ludicrously called sea saw-dust; and the sea appeared remarkable light-coloured.

Our winds now became very variable. In the morning, Saturday, 10th, it blew from the N. E. by N. but shifted to E. in the afternoon, and at night to S. S. E. and S. We had a heavy swell from the N. N. W.

The next day was cloudy, with continual rain, the wind S. and the thermometer stood at 62 deg. and 64 deg. Towards noon, it blew a gale from the S. W. Our observed latitude was 35 deg. 30 min. N. and our longitude 166 deg. 30 min. E. We saw a puffin in the afternoon, and passed a bunch of sea-weed. At six, our friendly gale left us, and the wind shifted to W. and about half an hour after to N. W. where it remained till nine, and then veered round gradually to N. E.

In this corner it remained for four days, during which time it blew heavy gales, which pushed us on at a fine rate to our port. We now began to find a material alteration in the climate, the thermometer varying from $50\frac{1}{2}$ deg. to 41 deg. Our latitude on the 12th, was 37 deg. 10 min. N. and we saw many porpoises, sheerwaters, and a few albatrosses. Our grog, which from our arrival at Sandwich Isles to this time, had been served out at a very short allowance, was this day issued out in full quantity.

On the 13th, we had small rain, with heavy, cloudy weather, our course N. N. W. The Resolution, in consequence of the heavy seas, and her perpetual labouring as it were, became

became very leaky, making eight inches of water within the hour, which kept our pumps almost constantly at work. Her upper works were also very bad, which rendered every thing wet and uncomfortable. In the evening it blew so fresh that we were under the necessity of taking in all our sails except the fore and main-sail, and of getting down top gallant-yards.

On the 16th, we had light, variable airs, with open, cloudy weather. Our latitude was 42 deg. 8 min. N. and the thermometer varied from 39 deg. to $43\frac{1}{2}$ deg. We saw several albatrosses, and a few fulmars and brown petrels.

The next day a fine gale sprung up from the E. S. E. and, the weather being tolerably fine, all the wet things were got up from between decks, to dry, and fires were placed in various parts of the ship, as there was scarce a dry board in her, on account of the many heavy seas she shipped. In the course of the night we had heavy gales of wind from the southward, attended with rain and sleet.

The 18th was cloudy, with small rain, and the thermometer was at $38\frac{1}{2}$ deg. and 41 deg. About seven in the morning, we passed a log of wood, and saw a flock of ducks, and many small grey petrels. Our latitude to-day, by an indifferent observation, was 46 deg. 9 min. N. At two in the afternoon, the wind shifted to W. S. W. and we had several heavy showers of snow, which brought down the thermometer
to

to $30\frac{3}{4}$ deg. in a very short time. In the night, much snow fell, and the wind was very turbulent from the S. W. with a heavy rolling sea going. Our variation to-day was 7 deg. 31 min. East.

The 19th, we had much snow with a few intervals of sunshine, the thermometer varying from $29\frac{1}{2}$ deg. to 34 deg. The water now appeared of a dark green colour, which seemed to indicate soundings. In the night, the wind shifted from S. S. E. to N. N. W.

The next day was fine and clear, though cold; our course N. E. In the morning, we saw many gulls, and our observed latitude was 49 deg. 48 min. N. In the afternoon we saw a whale, and in the night had several flashes of lightning and showers of sleet.

Wednesday, April 21st, we saw a small land-bird and several gulls. Our latitude was 50 deg. 26 min. N. and at five in the afternoon we sounded, but found no ground with one hundred and twenty fathoms of line, though the water still had that dark appearance.

Thursday was cloudy, with showers of sleet, which, as it froze very hard, encompassed our rigging so much as to render it difficult to work the sails. At six in the morning we again sounded with ninety fathom, but were no more successful than yesterday. At eleven, a flock of ducks flew past the ships, and at noon, being in latitude 51 deg. 28 min. N. began to look out for the land.

The

The next day, we had thick foggy weather, with the wind at N. E. At one in the morning we sounded, and found ground at seventy fathom, with a muddy bottom; and at five, saw land, part of Asia, extending from N. by W. to S. S. W. It made in high mountains, and was quite covered with snow. The weather being very foggy, we, at six, tacked and stood off till noon, when we tacked again, pursuing a N. N. W. course. Our latitude to-day, by double altitudes, was 52 deg. 11 min. N. At four in the afternoon, we again saw the land, the extremes of which bore N. and S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. We had now many flocks of ducks and gulls about us. At half past seven in the evening, we tacked ship, our soundings fifty-eight fathom, with a soft muddy bottom. In the night, we had moderate breezes, with sleet and hard frost, the thermometer standing at 30 deg.

At two in the morning, we stood in for the land, but the weather being thick and hazy, we, at six, tacked ship. At four in the afternoon, we just got a glimpse of the land, which bore N. W.

Sunday, April 25th, at four in the morning, we made for the land. At nine, the wind was E. N. E. accompanied with showers of snow, and we saw nothing of the land till eleven, when, it clearing up, we found ourselves abreast of an opening, which we supposed to be the entrance of the bay of Awatschka. Having no knowledge of this part of the coast, and being
unable

unable to determine our latitude accurately, for want of an observation, we soon after stood off. By our account, we were seventeen miles to the southward of the bay; and, as there was an opening laid down in the Russian charts nearly that distance from Awatschka, we concluded it was it. At four in the afternoon, we tacked and made for the land. The weather was very cold and severe, with fresh breezes from the N. E. and frequent showers of snow, the thermometer standing at 28 deg. At eight in the evening we stood off for the night.

Monday the 26th, was thick and cloudy, with continual showers of snow. At four in the morning, we again made for the land, but at nine, the weather being very thick, and the wind blowing a gale from the N. E. we wore ship and stood to the E. S. E. At three in the afternoon, the wind coming farther to the eastward, we tacked, and observed a N. by E. course till twelve at night, when we stood from the land. We had incessant snow showers the whole night.

At six the next morning, we tacked ship and pursued a N. W. course. At seven, it became rather clearer, and we had a glimpse of the sun, a pleasure which we had not experienced for three days before. At ten we saw the land under our lee and upon the starboard bow; from the appearance of it, we supposed ourselves considerably to the southward of Awatschka, and after running in with it till eleven, we tacked;

tacked; but our observed latitude at noon, which was 52 deg. 45 $\frac{1}{2}$ min. N. proved that we were nearer our port than we imagined. We soon after let out all our reefs, and at two made for the land. Our soundings, at eleven, were fifty-eight fathom, the bottom a grey sand. The land in this part rises in moderately high hills, which were well stocked with trees, but at this time were almost entirely enveloped in snow.

The Discovery was at this time out of sight, and did not arrive in the bay till the first of May. At five, we were well in with the land, and saw many small and very particular species of whale; they were black, their head round, with two white stripes on each side their neck, and a remarkable long and narrow fin upon their back; in size they were about four times larger than a porpoise. This fish is probably what the Russians call katfatki. At half past six, finding that we were not able to reach the mouth of the bay, which was about four miles a-head of us, we tacked and stood off till twelve.

At four the next morning, we tacked, and at six were well in with the land, having a light breeze at N.; but soon after the wind came off shore, and we were obliged to tack. At nine, it became calm, and our observed latitude was 52 deg. 47 min. N. At four in the afternoon, we were standing into the bay, with a fine little breeze from the S. W. our course N. N. W. our soundings decreased very gradually from

from twenty to six fathoms; and in the latter depth we, at seven in the evening, let go our small bower anchor, the northermost point of the bay bearing S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. the southermost S. by E.

We now were anxious to find out the Russian ostrog, or town, which, from the accounts we had received at Unalafschka from Ismyloff, we were led to suppose was a capital one, considering the place, and which he told us was secured by a fortification that mounted forty guns. But how great was our surprise, when, upon examining every corner of the bay with our glasses, we could only discover a few huts at the bottom of a small bay, which proved to be the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul. Upon our landing, a day or two after, our laughter was sufficiently excited, upon finding this town dwindled to a poor forlorn hamlet, containing only twenty-one wooden buildings, including jourts, balagans, and houses; and the formidable battery shrunk up to two guns, one of which was a two-pounder; the other a swivel. The bay, which is extensive, was nearly filled with ice, and we saw prodigious flocks of ducks of various species, and also gulls, sea parrots, Greenland pigeons, ravens, and eagles. During the night, a great quantity of ice drifted out of the bay with the tide.

C H A P. XI.

The next morning at six, Mr. King, first lieutenant of the Resolution, was sent on shore, to see if it was practicable to open any kind of intercourse with the Russians or Kamtschadales, and to deliver two letters which were given the captain by Ismyloff: and Mr. Bligh, the master, was directed to sound the bay which lays off the ostrog, and to see if it afforded a good birth for the ships. He returned at nine, with an account of its being secure, and that the depth of water was eight, nine, and ten fathoms.

During the time of his being employed in this business, a man belonging to the village, being upon the ice in his sledge, and not seeing Mr. Bligh, or any of our people, came upon them all at once, which so terrified the poor Russian, that he made off with all the expedition his dogs could use; but being willing to satisfy his curiosity, he again ventured nearer, but not being much pleased with the appearance of our people, he wheeled round, and returned to the village. By this time Mr. King had landed, when three others in sledges came to reconnoitre, but soon made off as the other had done; he, however, still proceeded towards the village, where he was met by a party, whom he joined, and was afterwards conducted to one of the houses. At ten, we took up our anchor, and, with all the boats a-head towing, made the best of our way for the bay in which

the ostrog was situated; but the want of wind, and the obstructions we encountered from the ice, rendered it very tedious. At noon, Mr. King returned: the party who met him consisted of fourteen or sixteen Russians and Kamtschadales, all armed with muskets and bayonets fixed, and headed by a man of a very decent appearance; upon the delivery of the two letters, one of which was directed to the commanding officer at this place, the other to major Behm, the governor of Kamtschatka, who resided at Bolschaia-reeka, he very politely desired him to walk to his house, which was small, and built of wood, and tolerably clean, though very hot. Breakfast was soon prepared, which consisted of tea and rye-bread and butter; after which he conducted Mr. King to the different houses, &c. of the village. Upon their return, which was about three hours after, they found dinner made ready, and a better one than was expected; it consisted of beef cut small, some baked rice, mince-meat puffs, a large bird, which was supposed to be a goose or something of that kind, with bread and butter; the drink, which was quasse, tasted like small beer mixed with water, and had a slight acid flavour. During this repast, at which there was only this gentleman and Mr. King, his wife not daring to sit at table, he informed him, as well as signs would permit, that he held the rank of serjeant, and had the command at this place; the letter to major Behm, he said, should be for-

forwarded directly, but that it would be full four days before an answer could be returned, as their only method of travelling was in sledges drawn by dogs.

At seven in the evening, we let go our anchor in eleven fathom, and soon after moored ship, when the two extremes of the harbour bore S. $7\frac{1}{2}$ deg. E. and S. 11 deg. E. The night was very severe.

All hands were employed the next day, Friday, April 30th, in overhauling various parts of the rigging and other articles. We observed several sledges passing and repassing from the ostrog towards Bolschaia-reeka, but not a soul ventured near the ship. This morning we descried our consort at a great distance making for the bay: and some time after a boat was dispatched to a look-out house upon a hill, situated at the entrance of the bay, with a flag to hoist, with a view of informing her of our arrival. Several of the gentlemen went on shore to visit the serjeant, and two bottles of rum were sent to him from the captain; in return for which he sent on board a fine fowl of the grouse kind, *tetrao urogallus*, and twenty trout. In the afternoon, our gentlemen returned from the shore, where they experienced every civility from the serjeant, who began to have many symptoms of the scurvy upon him, particularly swelled legs, attended with livid spots.

Saturday was fine and pleasant, with passing clouds and haze. In the course of the night, we had boats out with shooting parties, but their success was by no means equal to their expectations, the ducks, &c. being very shy. At ten in the morning, the Discovery came in, and anchored near us; and some time after our launch, with a strong party of hands, were sent to endeavour to cut a passage in the ice up to the ostrog, large enough to admit a boat, but it proved too great an undertaking. In the afternoon, the carpenters were employed in caulking the ship's sides, and the sail-makers repairing the sails; the other people were at work in the hold, getting provision to hand for our northern cruise. In the night we had fresh breezes with showers of snow.

May the 2d, the weather was very cold, thick, and heavy, with showers of small snow. The thermometer was as low as 28 deg. and in the afternoon it cleared up, but froze very severely in the night.

We had fresh breezes the next day from the west, which prevented the caulkers from working: the carpenters were sawing plank, and the sail-makers still repairing sails. This being the day on which the major was expected to arrive, Mr. King was sent on shore to receive him. The boat in which he went was soon after surrounded by a quantity of drift ice, upon which the launch was dispatched to her assistance, and was entangled in the same manner, as was the

the Discovery's jolly boat: men and boats from the ship were ordered to get them off, if possible, but without success. In the evening Mr. King returned on board, but nobody had as yet arrived.

At four the next morning, the ice making its way out of the bay with the tide, we recovered our boats, without their having received any material damage. At nine a number of sledges were dispatched from the ostrog to the border of the ice nearest the ships; the pinnace was sent to them, and brought on board six Russians and a German. They were introduced to the captain, and the latter delivered him a letter from the major, which was wrote in German. Fortunately we had several people on board, who both spoke and wrote that language. The purport of it was, that he had sent one of his domestics to treat with us for any thing we wanted; that we could be supplied with fresh provisions from Bolschaia-reeka, and many other articles; but they were rather exorbitant in their demands, charging a hundred rubles for an ox, and other things in proportion. The letter was directed to the commander of the English packet-boat. This mistake in the direction proceeded entirely from the account which Ismyloff had given of us, in his letter to the major: it seems he had represented the ships only as two packet boats; that there were no officers on board either, and that he looked upon us in no better light than a set of sharpers,

and that they would do well to be upon their guard. This genius, who was desirous of assuming the character of a superior officer, during our stay at Unalafschka proved at last to be only a writer to the company of traders. When in his cups, which was a circumstance not very uncommon, he frequently had derided the smallness of the vessels, saying they were not ships but packet-boats, but we did not expect that he would have gone so far in his ill-natured representations as we found he had. The major's letter however was couched in very polite terms. After breakfast, they all returned to the shore, and at two in the afternoon the German came on board again, attended by a Russian merchant and a priest. The latter had quite the appearance of a gentleman; he wore his own hair, his beard was long and flowing, and his dress consisted of a light grey-coloured cloth coat, with large open sleeves, a kind of cassock of very light cloth tied round with a party coloured silk sash, and his stockings were black. His name was Roeman Varashagen, his parents were Russians, but he was born at Kamtschatka. His house was situated at the head of the bay to the westward, at a small village called Paratounka. The merchant, whose name was Feodositch, was a native of Moscow, which city he left in 1778, being induced by the great advantages arising from trade, with the northern parts of China, to settle in these distant parts. The German is a native

native of Loeftland, and has lived with the major many years. They were much pleased with their reception, and at six in the evening returned to the shore.

The next day, Wednesday, May 5th, they dined on board the Discovery, and in the afternoon by the permission of the captains, a trade was opened for beaver and other skins, many of which the merchant very gladly purchased. The price was thirty rubles for the best, and the inferior ones in proportion.

On Thursday, the weather was thick and disagreeable, with showers of small snow, and a very cold raw wind from the E. and E. S. E. In the morning, trade began very briskly, but the merchant finding that the stocks of furs greatly exceeded his expectations, made a considerable alteration in his price; and every one being anxious to dispose of what he had, they were in general sold greatly below their value. In the night the greatest part of the ice floated out of the harbour, and one large piece struck the Resolution with such force as to make her drag her anchor.

Friday morning at six, captain Gore, Mr. King, and Mr. Webber, who acted as interpreter, attended by the merchant and German, set off for Bolschaia-reeka, upon a visit to the governor. Most of the Russians were most terribly afflicted with the scurvy, and one man had been ill near four years; he had lost the use of both legs, the joints of which were so contract-
ed

ed as to render them immoveable. This disorder is entirely occasioned by their filthy manner of living: in the winter season they shut themselves up in their houses, which absolutely resemble ovens, and will not admit the least fresh air. Immersed in this nasty atmosphere, which is rendered still more disagreeable by the smell of dried fish, and exhalations from many other things, for they are too lazy to offer their sacrifices to Cloacina out of doors, it is no wonder that it rages with such violence among them. Their wives, on the contrary, and the Kamtschadales, who are obliged to be the slaves, are never affected with it.

The air the next morning was, comparatively speaking, very warm, the thermometer rising up to $49 \frac{1}{2}$ deg. and great quantities of ice floated out of the bay: the snow began to dissolve too. The carpenters, sail-makers, and caulkers, all employed in their several departments. Towards evening it became cool, with fresh breezes from the S. E. and E. S. E. and the thermometer fell to $37 \frac{1}{2}$ deg. $\frac{1}{2}$; in the night we had several showers of snow.

Sunday, the 9th, was cloudy. About seven in the morning, we had a heavy squall from the E. S. E. during which the Resolution's launch laying along side, deeply laden with a small anchor and several hawfers, and the carpenter's caulking tools, shipped so much water, that she went down, and was with great difficulty recovered again; fortunately, the anchor and haw-

hawsers were secured in her, but the tools were all lost. In the afternoon we had frequent showers of snow.

We had fresh breezes the next day from the N. N. E. with snow. At this time we were in a very poor state, with respect to fresh provisions, and was it not for a few cod fish, and now and then a duck or gull, which we shot, we might as well have been at sea. At four in the afternoon, it blew a perfect gale, and we were under the necessity of striking yards and top-masts, but in the evening it became quite calm. Captain Clerke received a letter from Mr. King to day, informing him that they would not be able to reach the end of their journey till this night, on account of the tediousness of travelling, which was sometimes by water in flat-bottomed boats, forced on by two men with poles; as to their sledges, they could only use them in the night, as the thaw rendered it impossible to travel in the day.

The greatest part of the 11th was passed in removing the ships nearer in shore, and on the 12th a party was sent to cut wood, and our empty casks were got on shore to repair. The Resolution was found to be in a sad state, many of the trunnels being so rotten as to crumble to pieces. At eleven the captain went on shore, and was received with great respect by the serjeant, who with his little boy dined on board.

The next day, 13th, the weather was fine and clear, the thermometer varying from 31 deg. to 50 deg. The scorbutic people on shore, in consequence of the assistance they received from us, were getting better, and the wild garlick made its appearance; but notwithstanding they were so well acquainted with its virtues in their disorder, it was with the utmost reluctance they quitted their houses to seek for it. Such extreme laziness was scarce ever known before. The ice and snow began now to leave us very rapidly, and vegetation came on fast.

Friday was fine, clear, and warm, and all hands were busy. Many shooting parties were out, who observed the tracks of bears in the snow, and met with many foxes, which were all of the red kind; they likewise saw two white hares, but they were shy. In the evening the weather became thick and foggy.

Saturday morning was foggy till ten, when it became clear; and at eleven a party was sent to haul the seine; they brought on board near fifty trout, and upwards of three hundred flat fish; the former were very poor and indifferent, but the latter were in full season, and were remarkable fish, being studded as it were in every part with small prickly knobs, the fins and tail, being striped with black and brown. In the afternoon, the butchers were sent on shore to kill a small bullock, which the captain had procured for our Sunday's dinner.

The

The next morning was likewise foggy, but as yesterday, it cleared up between nine and ten; the wind was S. E. by S. Fresh beef was served to the ship's company to-day, which was the first we had tasted since our departure from the Cape of Good Hope in December 1776, being two years and five months. In the afternoon several Russians came on board, and were entertained by the sailors as well as circumstances would permit. In the night John Macintosh, one of the carpenter's crew, who had been troubled with a severe dysentery ever since our departure from Sandwich Isles, departed this life.

On Monday morning a party was sent to collect greens for the ship's company; they consisted principally of wild garlick and nettle-tops, and when boiled up with wheat, proved a most excellent and salutary breakfast; we also hauled the seine, and caught plenty of fish. About ten the captain received another letter from Mr. King, informing him of the very great civilities they had experienced from the major, who in a day or two promised to return with them. Several head of cattle were ordered down to the ships, and we were to be supplied with a large quantity of flour, for which he would take nothing but a receipt; saying, that he was certain the empress would be happy to accommodate any of his Britannic Majesty's ships, with whatever it was in her power to give.

The

The next day all hands were employed in putting the ships into some degree of order for the reception of the governor. At ten we hauled the seine, and met with good success.

Wednesday, the 19th, was cloudy, and every body was busied as yesterday. In the evening, the ice which surrounded the ostrog, floated out of the bay with the ebb tide.

The 20th, was fine and pleasant; and the weather warm, which in some measure impeded the journey of our expected visitants, by causing a general thaw. Our latitude to-day, observed with a variety of quadrants, was 52 deg. 58 min. $\frac{3}{4}$ N.

C H A P. XII.

The first part of Friday morning was thick and foggy, but about nine it cleared up. Our carpenters, sail-makers, wooders, &c. all busy in their several employments. At five in the afternoon the serjeant came on board, and informed the captain that major Behm would wait upon him in the morning.

At nine the next morning, he came on board, attended by the priest, Feodositch the merchant, a master of one of the empress's galleots, which pass and repass from Bolschaia-reeka to Ochotsk, another merchant belonging to the company, and the master of the small sloop that was at this place. He was received by

by all the marines under arms, and saluted with thirteen guns. He was near six feet high, rather corpulent, and was very polite and affable in his address. He wore his uniform, which was dark green, with plain gold buttons, a scarlet waistcoat trimmed with broad gold lace, and a gold laced hat with a white cockade. After breakfast, he was shewed the different cabins and births of the ship, and seemed much pleased to find them so neat and convenient: he expressed his surprize at seeing such a number of men so perfectly healthy after so long a voyage, and remarked that we must certainly have taken every precaution in the world to prevent the scurvy, which in all their ships makes terrible havock among the men. The size of our vessels appeared to strike him, as being too large; but when he reflected upon the length of time voyages of this kind took up, and the great necessity there was for room to stow away provisions, he acknowledged himself rather mistaken. The vessels which the merchants in general fit out, are seldom more than fifty or sixty tons burthen, and carry forty men; out of which number there are frequently only ten or twelve return, being either cut off by the natives, or destroyed by the scurvy.

In the evening he returned to the shore; and the next morning at ten came on board again, and stayed till near one, when he proceeded to the Discovery, where he was received with the same ceremony as yesterday. Trade
was

was again renewed, but the Russians would not offer so high a price as before. Towards evening most of them returned to the shore, singing, and not a little elevated.

The best part of the morning, Monday the 24th, our people were getting in single ballast, and at ten the major and the gentlemen with him came on board; they breakfasted with the captain and dined in the gun-room. On Tuesday they again dined with captain Clerke, and at their departure, which was at half past six in the evening, both ships were manned, and saluted him with thirteen guns each, and three huzzas, which were returned from the pinnace. He was very desirous of making a pecuniary present to the ship's company, which the captain would by no means permit; he however insisted upon giving the pinnace's crew something, as a reward for the trouble they had been at in carrying him backwards and forwards. He expressed a great desire to be informed of the event of the remaining part of the voyage, which captain Clerke promised him he would do. Both the captains made him presents of rum, wine, salt beef, and pork, both which he is very fond of, and a variety of articles in the curiosity-way, which he proposed giving to the empress, upon his return to Petersburg. This morning the Discovery's people, who were out with the seine, caught as many fine herrings as served both ship's companies for two days, besides a great number that were left behind;
and

and the toyon or chief of the Kamtschadales at this place presented the captains with three quarters of a wild sheep, *capra ammon*, Lin. which is esteemed a great delicacy.

Wednesday morning at one, the major set off for Bolschaia-reeka, attended by Mr. King and Mr. Webber, who were to accompany him part of the way. As he proposed leaving this part of the world in the course of a month, having at his own request, and by the permission of the empress, resigned the government to captain Wasilowitz Ismyloff, and to return to Peterburgh, captain Clerke thought it a very convenient opportunity of sending dispatches, &c. to the Admiralty. Copies of the voyage, drawings, and charts, directed to the British ambassador at the court of Russia, were accordingly packed up, which the major promised to take care of. All our hands were very busy cutting wood, getting casks on shore, taking in ballast, and caulking the ship.

Thursday and Friday, the weather was thick and foggy, and all hands were employed as usual.

On Saturday evening, May 29th, we caught with the seine some very fine smelts, and on Monday took a wolf-fish, *anarhichas lupus*, Lin. The shore now began to assume its proper hue, and the wild celery and faranna sprouted up very fast. Among other birds, we could plainly distinguish the cuckow, nightingale, and wood lark.

On

On Wednesday afternoon our launch was sent to the store-house for the flour we were to receive. It was packed up in a kind of skin or parchment bundles, each weighing about two poods, and was coarse and indifferent, though the best that could be procured in this part of the world: but, bad as it was, it proved a welcome supply for us, who should have been much distressed without it. The sloop was by this time nearly rigged; she was, it seems, destined for the island Unalaschka.

Thursday, June 3d, we were employed in stowing away the flour in casks, and bringing off wood and water. In the evening it became thick and heavy, with fresh gales from the westward, attended with continual rain.

All the next day was thick and cloudy with continual showers of rain, and gales of wind from the N. N. E. N. E. and E. It being the anniversary of his majesty's birth day, both ships fired twenty-one guns. In the course of the night, we had several snow showers.

We had thick, hazy weather, with drizzling rain, on Saturday, and light breezes from the S. E. and S. S. E. Our people caught great numbers of fine cod to-day, most of which they very prudently salted, and put by for future use.

On Sunday morning, twenty-two head of cattle arrived from Bolschaia-reeka, for the use of the two ships, and the major sent the captain a large jar of honey, some fresh butter, a jar of
of

of figs, and a great number of eggs; and the toyon or chief of a Kamtschadale town, which lay near the river Awatschka, presented the captain and gentlemen of the gun-room with twenty brace of ducks.

In the afternoon, the butchers were sent on shore to kill one of the bullocks for to morrow's use.

It rained on Monday throughout the day, and on Tuesday, June 8th, the winds varied all round the compass. Our people were employed in bending sails, getting in hay, and making ready for sea. The butchers were on shore killing some of the oxen, and the remaining ones were to be taken on board alive.

In the afternoon of the 10th, Thursday, the priest, with his wife and daughter, visited the captain, and upon going on board the Discovery was saluted with five guns, an honour which is seldom paid to the clergy.

Friday was thick, heavy, and cloudy, with squalls from the N. E. and E. attended with small rain. In the morning we prepared to unmoor, the wind appearing favourable for our getting out of the bay; but upon the return of the jolly boat, which was dispatched to observe the true state of the wind, it was found to blow directly in; so we moored the ship again.

The next morning was more favourable; and at three we began to unmoor; but the small bower-anchor had taken such hold in the ground, which was a stiff clay, that even with

the assistance of several treble blocks, we could not weigh it till near three in the afternoon. At a quarter past five, the best bower was got up, and we made sail towards the mouth of the bay, but at half past seven dropped our anchor again in ten fathom and a half, having a soft muddy bottom, the two points of the bay bearing S. E. by S. and S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.

June 13th, at four in the morning, we weighed and again made sail, having the boats a-head to tow us. At half past ten a breeze sprung up from the S. by E. which, with the tide that began to flow, obliged us to let go our anchors again for the present, the two points of the bay bearing S. by E. and S. E.; two rocks at the mouth of the bay S. E. by S; a small rocky island E. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.; and the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul N. At five in the afternoon, we took up our anchors, but a thick fog coming on, we once more were under the necessity of dropping them.

It was very foggy the next morning till eight, when it began to disperse a little, and we soon after weighed and made sail, with the boats a-head towing; but at nine, having a breeze from the S. E. and the tide being against us, we came-to in eight fathom, with a sandy bottom, the points of the bay bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.: the rocks at the mouth S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.; the Awachinskoy mountain N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E; and the rocky island N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At ten a party of our people were sent on shore to collect greens for the

ships company, and those on board employed themselves in fishing. In the afternoon, three Kamtschadales came on board in a boat, with a present from the serjeant of two very large salmon, which they called chavitsi; the captain returned some rum as an equivalent. In the course of the day, the above mountain emitted a great quantity of smoke, and during the night it was in a perfect state of eruption.

The next day, Tuesday 15th, the whole bay appeared as if in a fog, occasioned by the vast quantity of smoke and ashes from the volcano. The ship was in some places covered near an inch deep with them. In the afternoon, after a loud and violent noise, a heavy shower of small stones fell around us, which was the case, more or less, till the evening, when it thundered and lightened pretty much, which was not to be wondered at, when we consider the quantity of sulphur and other fiery matter with which the air was loaded. About ten, all was still and quiet, and remained so during the night.

At two the next morning, taking the advantage of a breeze from the N. W. we got up our anchors, made sail, and stood out to sea. At eight, we had light airs and calms, our distance from the land about two leagues. The remaining part of the day the breezes were light and variable. We saw a few sheerwaters, guillemots, and sea parrots; but as it was the breeding season, birds of all kinds were scarce.

C H A P. XIII.

At the time that Muller and Kraschininnikoff published the history of Kamtschatka, the various parts of that province were in a flourishing condition; but the small-pox has since that period committed such heavy depredations, that many towns and villages have been entirely depopulated.

In 1769, twenty thousand of the natives died of the small-pox, seven thousand of whom paid tribute.

The town of St. Peter and St. Paul, which is situated upon a spit of low land that extends nearly across the harbour, at present consists of only twenty-one buildings, including jourts, viz, huts partly under ground, ballagans, which are houses elevated upon poles, and houses; the best of which are composed of wood, and the intermediate chinks filled up with moss, &c. At the head of the harbour are two other buildings, one of which serves for a storehouse, the other is a kasarma or hospital. The church which Muller mentions, stood behind the hospital, but there are not now the least traces of it; the only one that is within any reasonable distance, is at the village of Paratounka, on the western side of the bay, which is the residence of the priest. The windows are all composed of the skins of salmon sewed together, except those in the serjeant's house, which are made of talc, and admit the light nearly as well as glass.

Bol-

Bolschaia-reeka is the largest town, and consists of near a hundred houses, all of which are built upon the same plan as at Petropaulouski; is likewise the residence of the governor.

The Kamtschadales have, in a great measure, adopted the manners and customs of the Russians, who marry and intermarry with them. Amongst themselves, they enter into the marriage state very young, generally when thirteen or fourteen years of age. The women are very ordinary, being short in stature, with broad faces, small eyes, very high cheek bones, and little noses; in short so little, that when you view them in a profile, only the tip is to be discovered.

In every village there is a toyon or chief, who, in any trifling disputes, is always applied to; but if they are of a serious nature, they come under the cognizance of the principal person in the place; if he finds it difficult to settle the affairs, they are transferred to the governor at Bolschaia-reeka, from whence there is no appeal.

Major Behm, who is a native of Livonia, has formerly been in the Swedish service; he came to this place in 1773. In 1770, there was a revolt at Bolschaia-reeka, which happened as follows: — several men, amongst whom was a Polish gentleman, who had, for some capital misdemeanors, been banished to this part of the world, observing the murmuring and great discontent which at that time prevailed among
 L 3 the

the Cossacks and Kamtschadales, on account of the very severe usage they experienced from the Russians, took the advantage of their situation, and by fair words and large promises, brought over a number of them to their interest. A time was fixed for the execution of their scheme, which was to murder the governor, whose name was Nieloff, and most of the principal people, and to make their escape. Everything being ready, they rushed into his house, and having dispatched him, as well as several others who were there, they, in the midst of the confusion which this affair occasioned, fled to the sea side, seized upon a sloop which was lying there, and made for the northern parts of China, where they landed, and have not since been heard of.

The salary of the government of Kamtschatka amounts to a thousand rubles a-year; the pay of the serjeant at Petropaulousky is forty-six rubles per annum. The sailors in the merchants service have no pay, but receive twenty rubles for every good sea beaver-skin they bring, and in proportion to the inferior ones.

The annual tribute of the province of Kamtschatka is computed at seven thousand rubles: none are taxed till they arrive at the age of eighteen years, when each pays a sable skin. The duty on articles of every kind that pass and repass from Ochotsk to Bolschaia-reeka, brings in a considerable sum: upon landing in the province of Kamtschatka, they pay half a ruble for every

every pood, and when they convey any goods across the Penzhinskoy sea to Ochotsk, the duty is a fox skin for the like weight.

There are six galliots at Bolschaia-reeka belonging to the empress, which are set apart for the sole purpose of transporting provisions, &c. from Ochotsk to that place.

In the whole province of Kamtschatka, which is extensive, there are not above four hundred and ninety, or five hundred of the military, including Cossacks; out of which there are one hundred and fifty at Bolschaia-reeka, and thirty-one at St. Peter and Paul.

C H A P. XIV.

Thursday, June 17th, was calm throughout the day, with a few showers of small rain. Our observed latitude was 52 deg. 47 min. N. The next day we had a breeze from the S. S. E. quarter, and the weather was clear and pleasant, though rather cold. We proceeded in an E. N. E. direction till half past ten, and then bore away to N. E. the northermost point of land at that time bearing about N. by E. In the afternoon, the wind shifted to S. S. W. and it came on very thick and foggy. We saw a whale, a few guillemots, sea parrots, and sheer-waters.

Our wind and weather continued the same as yesterday, and our course N. E. In the evening we saw an albatross and two or three ful-

mars; and at eight got a cast of the lead, but found no ground at a hundred and sixty fathoms.

Sunday, June 20th, the weather still continued very foggy, with fresh gales from the S. S. W. At half past two in the morning, we saw the land extending from N. to N. W. by W. At three, the Resolution altered her course to E. N. E. and fired four guns as a signal for the Discovery to do the same. Soon after, the fog became very thick, and continued so till near seven, during which time guns were fired every half hour, which were all answered by the Discovery. Our latitude to-day was 54 deg. 55 min. N. and the variation 9 deg. 35 min. to the eastward.

The following day was tolerably clear, our wind and course as yesterday, till three in the afternoon, when the former changed to N. At two we saw the land, the extremes of which bore N. W. by N. to W. N. W. and soon after hauled in for it, our course W. N. W. At eight, it became calm, and soon after we sounded, but got no ground at ninety fathom. In the afternoon, a little breeze sprung up from the S. by W. our course N. by E. and at ten in the evening passed a dead whale, upon which a great number of gulls and petrels were regaling, but it stunk most abominably.

Early the next morning, the wind changed to W. and soon after to W. N. W. our course as before. At eight, we had light airs, and the

the extremes of the land bore S. 44 deg. W. and S. 74 deg. W. our distance from it about six leagues.

Wednesday the 23d, was clear till six in the morning, when a thick fog came on, and the wind veered regularly from N. to E. by N. and in the afternoon to S. by W. our course still N. N. E. Our observed latitude was 57 deg. 11 min. N. and the variation 13 deg. 3 min. E. We now began to observe a considerable increase in the length of the days, it being light at two in the morning, and not dark till near twelve at night.

The 24th, was clear throughout the day, our course N. E. by N. till eight in the morning, when we resumed our old one. We observed an infinite number of gulls about, and many arctic gulls. In the evening, our breeze left us.

The next day we had fine, clear, warm, and pleasant weather, the thermometer varying from 44 deg. to 56 deg. A great number of gulls about, and some arctic gulls, which drive the others about at a strange rate, till the poor frightened birds void their excrements, which the others immediately catch in their beak and swallow, apparently much pleased with the dainty morsel. Linnaeus calls this bird the parasite, from its nasty, sordid manner of living. Our latitude to-day was 59 deg. 8 min. N. and at one in the afternoon a very thick fog came on. At eight in the evening, we altered our course to E. by N. as the Russians in their charts had

L 5
laid

laid down a cape in latitude 60 deg. North, which makes a considerable bend to the eastward. As it was so thick that we could scarce see the length of the ship, guns were fired every half hour, as signals to the Discovery. We founded with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line, but got no ground.

It was foggy throughout the whole of the next day, with a nasty haze that rendered every thing wet and disagreeable. In the afternoon, we saw several small blue petrels, and at eight again tried for ground with a hundred and sixty fathoms, but without success.

Sunday the 27th, we altered our course to N. E. by N. with the wind at S. W. The fog still continued, which rendered our vision very circumscribed. Our latitude by double altitudes was 59 deg. $48\frac{1}{2}$ min. N. At two in the afternoon, we saw several shags and many small blue petrels; and soon after, the weather becoming clear, we altered our course to N. N. W. with a view of making the land, and made all sail.

Monday was rather hazy, though not unpleasant, the thermometer rising as high as 56 deg. At five in the morning, we passed some drift-wood, and half an hour after saw land, part of the Asiatic continent, bearing N. W. At eight its extremes bore N. 10 deg. W. and S. 85 deg. W. distant about six leagues. At nine we struck soundings at twenty-four fathom, with a bottom of gravel and shells; and soon after bore away to the N. E. The land was moderately high, with

with patches of snow upon it, in various places: there was a deep bay or inlet, nearly a-breast of us, which appeared to be an entrance into some river. Our latitude by double altitudes was 61 deg. 56 min. N. and the variation was increased to 20 deg. 56 min. E. At two our soundings deepened to thirty-two fathom, and at six the extremes of the land bore N. 31 deg. E. and S. 73 deg. W. the nearest part N. 55 deg. W. at about four leagues distance, and land seen from the mast-head, N. E. by N. At nine we had thirty-eight fathom, and at twelve forty-two, with a bottom of coarse gravel.

Tuesday the 29th, the wind was W. N. W. in the former part of the morning, and the weather cloudy. At two our depth of water was forty-six fathom, with a stoney bottom, and at four, forty-eight fathom, with a shelly bottom, at which time the land extended from N. 35 deg. E. to N. 40 deg. W. distance about six leagues. At five we had the wind at N. W. and our soundings were fifty fathom, with a bottom of soft mud, and at eight they deepened to fifty-eight, the bottom sandy. The weather was so hazy as to prevent our seeing the land, and we had several showers of small rain. We observed great numbers of guillemots and fulmars about, and saw a seal. In the course of the morning, our seamen caught some very fine cod. In the afternoon the wind changed to N. E. our course E. S. E.; the weather being cloudy and rainy, we saw nothing of the land

land till six, when the extremes of it bore N. 5 deg. W. and N. 25 deg. W. about ten leagues distant. In the evening there were many whales about.

We had light airs and calms the whole of the ensuing day, and of course could make but little progress to the northward. Our people were again successful in fishing, and one of them brought up with his line a species of the hydra of Linnaeus. At noon our soundings were sixty-four fathom, with a shelly bottom, and at four the land extended from N. 31 deg. W. to N. 76 deg. W. We saw to-day two very large seals, and many fulmars, guillemots, and arctic gulls.

Thursday, July 11th, the winds were light and variable, and the weather foggy till half past two, when it cleared away, and we descried the land bearing from N. 59 W. to N. 83 W. distant about twenty leagues.

The next day was very foggy, with a nasty, raw, penetrating, moist atmosphere; the wind S. W. our course N. E. by N. At eight in the evening, we struck soundings at fifty fathom, with a muddy bottom. The thermometer was to-day from $35\frac{1}{2}$ deg. to 42 deg.

The 3d, was somewhat cloudy, and the wind shifted to the S. E. corner.

At noon we were in latitude 63 deg. 35 min. N. and at half past, saw the island of St. Lawrence bearing N. by W. distant about eight leagues. Our variation was 26 deg. 53 min. E. and

and at four the continent of Asia bore N. 13 deg. W. and N. 51 deg. W. and the island N. 23 deg. W. At five we saw another island bearing E. and at eight our soundings were twenty-nine fathom, the bottom black sand and shells; at ten, twenty-five and at twelve twenty-two fathom, with a stoney bottom. We had numbers of guillemots and small crested awks about us to-day.

The 4th was cloudy, with a wet haze, the wind S. S. E. and our course N. At two in the morning, our soundings were twenty fathom, at four twenty-three fathom, and at eight in the evening twenty-six fathom, the bottom a fine sand. At twelve the weather became very foggy. Our nights were now changed into day, for in fact we had nothing else but day-light, which upon the whole proved rather disagreeable, as it appeared very strange to retire to rest, with the sun shining in our faces.

Our course the next day was N. by W. and N. N. W. the wind S. by W. At half past twelve saw land to the north-eastward, which we directly hauled up for. At three in the afternoon we were a-breast of it, when its extremes bore N. 44 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and N. 75 deg. E. about three miles distant, and part of the coast of Asia nearly W. This island was small, and its shores composed of perpendicular rocks: it was of a moderate height, and had many patches of snow upon it, but we saw no appearance of verdure. That part of the coast of Asia to the westward, was the Tschuk-tsch

tschi Nofs, or, as captain Cook denominated it, the Bay of St. Lawrence, but the weather was too thick to distinguish any particular part of it. We observed several large gulls about entirely white, and myriads of very small birds of the auk genus. The beak was compressed, and large in proportion to the bird; its colour was dark brown, or rather black, the breast whitish, and towards the abdomen it was of a reddish brown colour. At half past three we bore away to N. W. by N. and at five we had twenty-eight fathom, with a sandy bottom. At six we saw the south part of the Serdze Kamen, a rock on the Asiatic coast, so called by the Russians from its supposed resemblance to a heart, bearing S. 64 deg. W. and the extremes of the island S. 41 deg. E. and S. 51 deg. E. At seven we altered our course to W. by S. and at eight bore away to N. by W. at which time, the southern extreme of the coast of Asia bore S. by W. and our soundings were twenty-eight fathom. At ten we descried part of the American continent, making in a peaked hill, which bore S. 64 deg. E. and now we had both continents in view at once. Some time after we passed a piece of ice, and at twelve our soundings were thirty fathom.

Our course the next day was N. by W. the wind S. S. E. and the weather cloudy.

At four in the morning our depth of water was twenty-nine fathom, when the extremes of the land, Asia, bore S. 53 deg. W. and S. 5 deg.

5 deg. E. At six we saw several sea-horses, and passed some pieces of ice. At eight it became rather foggy, and our depth of water was twenty-six fathom. At half past one in the afternoon, we saw more sea-horses, and at two descried ice a-head. At five we being well in with it, the large cutter was hoisted out, and a party of men were sent to kill some of those animals, but they returned at seven, without success. This piece, which comparatively speaking was but a small one, was evidently formed near the shore, as there was much dirt mixed with it. From eight to twelve we passed many loose pieces, and observed numbers of fulmars, and several arctic gulls. Our variation to-day was 28 deg. 14 min. E. and we had the pleasure of seeing the sun all round us, without setting; so that it might be said, we had a fine sun-shiny night in lieu of a moonlight one.

We had open cloudy weather till five the next morning, when it became thick and rainy; our course was N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and the wind S. E. by S. At six we saw ice a-head, and soon after descried part of the continent of America, extending from N. 45 deg. E. to N. 62 deg. E. Upon a nearer approach to the ice, we found it a firm body, and apparently joining to the land, the extremes of it in sight bearing from E. S. E. to N. W. As our farther progress to the eastward was now effectually stopped, we bore away to N. W. standing along the ice; our soundings being twenty-seven fathom. Our
latitu-

latitude by account was 68 deg. 5 min. N. In the afternoon we passed several pieces of loose ice, and at four the main body trended away to the N. E. but at six we found it again, extending to the N. W. The weather still kept cloudy, and the wind shifted to the westward; now and then we had a shower of sleet, with an icy horizon. At eight in the evening the thermometer fell to 33 deg. Our soundings were twenty fathom, and at eleven we saw more ice extending from N. E. to S. E. The winds now were light, and the weather hazy, with sleet showers. At twelve the thermometer stood at 31 deg.

Thursday, July 8th, the weather was thick, with showers of snow, and variable winds from the northward. At two in the morning we had nineteen fathom. At four we saw the ice from N. to S. S. E. and at half past tacked ship. At eight our soundings were twenty-two fathom. At three in the afternoon we descried a fresh body of ice, extending from N. by E. to S. W. by S. and soon after bore away, standing along the edge of it. At six we were passing great quantities of drift-ice, the firm body at that time bearing S. W. and E. N. E. and at half past hauled round a point of it, forcing our way through the drifting pieces. At eight we were obliged to bear away again, as the ice extended so far to the southward, our soundings being twenty-nine fathom. At twelve we were running along the field-ice, the extremes of which bore

bore S. S. W. and N. N. E. For several days past we saw no other birds than guillemots and gulls.

At four the next morning, the field-ice extended from S. W. by W. to N. and our soundings were twenty-eight fathom: the weather was hazy, with showers of snow, and the wind was in the N. quarter. At six, we had much snow, and fresh gales of wind from the N. N. W. we likewise passed a great quantity of drift-ice. At eight the extremes of the main body bore W. and N. E. and our soundings were thirty fathom. Our course to-day was from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. to W. S. W. keeping as near to the ice as we prudently could, without risking the ships. Our observed latitude was 69 deg. 12 min. N. and the variation 30 deg. 34 min. E. We found ourselves near a degree to the northward of our reckoning, which must have been occasioned by a current setting in that direction. At two in the afternoon, we were standing through the drift-ice, our depth of water being twenty-seven fathom, and at four twenty-five fathom, when the ice extended from S. E. to N. W. At five the ice became too thick for us to penetrate through, and soon after we bore away, keeping a S. E. by E. course, with the wind at N. W. At six, the weather became clear, though we now and then had a shower of snow; our depth of water was still twenty-seven fathom, but at twelve they deepened to twenty-eight.

Saturday the 10th, was cold, though fair, with a few showers of sleet, our wind and course as yesterday. At eight, we saw drift-ice a-head. Our latitude was 68 deg. 1 min. N. and the thermometer varied from 28 deg. to 37 deg. At one, we had light airs, and at four, being surrounded by a great deal of ice, upon which there were many herds of sea-horses, the pinnace and cutter were got out, and parties sent to attack them, as our stock of oil began to grow short. They returned at eight, with three old and a young one, and having hoisted in the boats, we made sail again. At twelve, being very near the ice, which though only in loose pieces before, appeared now to be formed into one firm solid mass, we tacked and stood to the northward; at this time the extremes bore E. by N. and N. N. W. and our soundings were twenty-eight fathom. We observed several whales about to-day, which seemed to be of a different species from those we saw in our last cruise to the northward, being destitute of the fin upon their backs. Those that came near us had a very disagreeable smell.

The next day we had moderate breezes from the E. N. E. quarter, with cloudy weather, but at four the wind shifted to N. E. At three we tacked ship, and once more stood E. S. E. with a view of getting through the ice to the southward. At six it became thick, with showers of snow and fresh breezes, and our soundings

ings

ings were twenty-eight fathom. At eight, we were running through the loose ice, some pieces of which were nearly half a mile in length; but at nine, finding it impracticable to get farther to southward at present, we tacked and stood N. by W.; indeed we were now so surrounded, that it proved a difficult matter to determine which way to proceed. At noon, we were forcing our way through the ice, with an intent of gaining the sea to the northward, which, from the mast-head, appeared to be tolerably clear; and at length, with much difficulty, accomplished it, but not without receiving some severe blows, which fortunately did no other damage. Our latitude to-day was 68 deg. 49 min. N. and our soundings twenty-eight fathom. At four in the afternoon, it cleared up, but at eight we had small rain, and at twelve fresh breezes from the N.

Monday the 12th, we had fresh gales from the N. N. W. with thick, hazy weather, our course W. and W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. At six in the morning, we tacked and stood to the N. E. and at eight our gale died away, and we had showers of small mizzling rain, our depth of water being thirty fathom. Some time after the jolly boat was got out to try the current, which we found setting from the S. E. by E. at the rate of half a knot per hour.

On Tuesday the weather became clear, and continued so till ten in the morning, when it again resumed its old appearance, and we had

a nasty wet fog, with now and then a shower of sleet. The wind was in the S. W. quarter till six, and then veered round to E. S. E. our course N. by W. At seven we saw ice a-head, on which account we hauled more up to the eastward, and at eight the extremes bore S. W. and N. E. At half past we tacked and stood to the southward, with an intent of working round the N. E. point of it, where there appeared to be a clear sea. We saw many fulmars and several arctic gulls, and at noon our observed latitude was 69 deg. 26 min. N. and the variation 26 deg. 10 min. E. At four in the afternoon the extremes of the ice bore W. by S. and N. by W. and we had fresh gales from the eastward, with a great head-sea going, which made the vessels pitch terribly. At nine our course was S. E. by E. with the wind at N. E. by E. and we had twenty-nine and thirty fathom.

The 14th, was foggy, thick, and moist, throughout the whole day; the wind varied from E. N. E. to E. and our course was N. and N. N. E. At four we had little winds, and at seven it became perfectly calm. In the afternoon we had light breezes, and at half past four we found ourselves close in with the ice: the weather being very thick, we tacked and made the signal to the Discovery to do the same.

At six the next morning, we saw the firm body of ice extending from W. by N. to N. N. E. our course was N. E. with light breezes from
the

the southward, and hazy weather. At noon our observed latitude was 69 deg. 47 min. N. and we saw the ice upon our larboard-bow, and soon after hauled up to N. W. At two in the afternoon we were tolerably near it, when we bore away again to N. E. and E. intending to trace it to the American shore. At eight the ice extended from N. N. E. to W. S. W. and we saw many arctic gulls, a few guillemots, and fulmars. During the afternoon and evening, we had thick snowy weather, but at twelve it cleared up, and the wind shifted to W.

We had moderate breezes from the S. W. the next day, with hazy weather, and showers of small snow. At four in the morning, the ice extended from N. by E. to S. W. by W. our course N. N. E. and at six the wind freshened into a gale, with snow-showers, our soundings being twenty-six fathom. Soon after we passed some packed ice, and hauled up to N. by E. At seven the wind shifted to W. and the weather became thick, but at eight it cleared up again, when we found ourselves to our great surprise surrounded with ice, the extremes bearing E. and S. W. Our latitude at this time was 70 deg. 7 min. N. and we immediately hauled our wind to the S. S. E. In the afternoon it blew so strong that we got down top-gallant-yards, close-reefed the fore-top-sail, double-reefed the main, and handed the mizen-top-sail, the weather too was very dark and cloudy, with

showers of fleet. In the course of the night it moderated a good deal, and our soundings decreased to twenty-three and twenty-one fathom.

In the first part of the morning, we had snow showers and hazy weather, with the wind W. by S. At four the weather cleared up, and we let up all the reefs, and at six got up top-gallant-yards. At eight our course was N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. but at nine we bore away again to N. N. E. Our observed latitude was 69 deg. 55 min. N. and in the afternoon the wind varied from W. to S. S. W. At seven in the evening it became nearly calm, and at ten we had a few showers of fleet, with a fog, which soon after cleared up. Our soundings were twenty-one and nineteen fathom.

Sunday, July 18th, we had open, cloudy weather, with light airs and calms till seven, when a light breeze sprung up from the N. E. our course N. N. W. and and N. W. by N. We got ground at nineteen and twenty fathom, and had apparently a clear sea all around us, neither land nor ice coming within the boundaries of our vision, though the horizon seemed to indicate our approach to the latter: and in fact at ten we descried ice a-head, the extremes of which at noon bore N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and W. by N. our observed latitude was 70 deg. 26 min. N. and the variation 31 deg. 19 min. E. At one we tacked and stood to the eastward, and continued to trace the ice with light breezes till eleven,

eleven, at which time a fog coming on, we again tacked ship and stood to the southward. The people on board the Discovery saw three white bears swimming by the ship. At twelve the weather became clear again, so we tacked and proceeded along the borders as before, and saw many herds of sea-horses sleeping upon various parts of it. Our soundings were from nineteen to seventeen fathoms.

At half past one the next morning we found ourselves embayed by the ice, which extended from S. E. to S. W. we accordingly bore away to the eastward, and continued that course till three, when we hauled up to S. S. W. the wind being west and the ice extending as far as S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At eight it became quite calm, and the extremes bore N. and S. At noon we had a breeze from the N. N. E. our course S. by W. the ice bearing from S. by W. to N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the nearest part distant about one mile. Our observed latitude to-day was 70 deg. 11 $\frac{1}{2}$ min. N. At two in the afternoon we saw two white bears swimming by us, and the jolly boat, which had been hoisted out to compare the time-keepers, being along-side, three or four of the gentlemen with musquets in their hands jumped into her, and went in pursuit of them, and soon returned with both. They were male and female; the former, which appeared to be a young one, was smaller than the other, the dimensions of the largest was as follows, viz.

	Feet.	In.
From the tip of the nose to the end of the tail - - - - -	7	1
From snout to the shoulder blade - -	2	3
Height - - - - -	2	3
Circumference near the fore legs - -	4	10
Ditto of the neck, close to the ears -	2	10
Breadth of the fore paw - - - - -	0	7

A quantity of sea-horse flesh was found in their stomachs, and the female had milk in her dugs. Their skins were taken off, and the flesh divided among the officers and men; it was however but indifferent eating, though better than the flesh of the sea-horse. At four our soundings were fourteen fathom, and the extremes of the ice bore S. by E. and N. by W. We continued tracing it till half past twelve, and then bore away along the edge of it, keeping a W. S. W. course. The birds we saw to-day were guillemots, and one or two large white gulls; which probably might be the *larus eburneus* described in Phipps's voyage to Spitsbergen.

On Tuesday morning the wind was in the E. N. E. quarter, and at four the extremes of the ice bore N. E. and S. W. We continued standing on to the eastward, and at half past eleven saw part of America to the S. S. E. which we immediately hauled in for. At noon it bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and S. about eight leagues distant, the southermost ice then bearing W. We soon after

after bore away to W. by N. with the wind E. S. E. our soundings being nineteen fathoms and half. In the afternoon we were sailing through great quantities of loose ice; the weather was hazy, with moderate breezes from the E. S. E. and S. E. our course S. W. by S. and S. S. W. our soundings from twenty to twenty-two fathoms. At ten we again saw the land bearing S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and observing a strong rippling upon the water, we tried the current, which was found setting to the westward at the rate of a knot an hour. At twelve we had light winds, and foggy weather. Our variation to-day was 28 deg. 59 min. E.

The first part of Wednesday morning was calm, but at four a light breeze sprung up from the E. by N. attended with a very thick fog, which at eight cleared up, and gave us another view of the land to the S. E. We hauled in for it, but at half past nine were brought up by the ice: the edges of it were broken and loose, but the interior parts appeared very firm, and from the mast-head it was seen evidently to join with the land, which then extended from S. 30 deg. E. to S. 64 deg. E. distant about six leagues. As our farther progress was now totally put a stop to on the American side, we at half past ten bore away to the westward, with the wind at E. N. E. standing along the borders of the ice, which we proposed tracing till we should fall in with the coast of Asia. In the fore part of the afternoon we had small rain,

and our depth of water was twenty-four fathoms. At six it became foggy, and we passed some large pieces of loose ice, and at half past ten saw the main body a-head, on which account we hauled up to N. by E. Some little time after it cleared up, and we found ourselves in a deep bight or bay which the ice had formed. We immediately tacked, and were employed till near twelve in clearing it, and had we not been fortunate in our weather, it would have caused us much trouble as well as danger in extricating ourselves out of this difficulty.

The next morning was hazy, with small rain, or rather mist, and we had fresh breezes from the E. and E. S. E. our course S. W. by S. At four it became somewhat clearer, and we had from twenty-six to twenty-nine fathoms, and at eight twenty-seven fathoms. We observed many puffins, guillemots, and fulmars about to-day, and more of the former than we had seen before on one day. Our observed latitude was 69 deg. and 29 min. N. and at four in the afternoon we saw the ice extending from S. S. W. to N. W. so hauled up to S. by E. with the wind E. by S. but at seven bore away to S. W. by W. At nine the weather came on somewhat hazy, and we passed much drift-ice, we therefore hauled up again to S. E. by S. the wind being E. by N. but soon after the haze dispersing, we saw the main body of ice extending from S. E. to N. W. so tacked ship with an intention to beat round the eastern point. At half past ten

ten we tacked again, our course being S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At twelve we had twenty-eight fathoms; a thick haze came on soon after with fresh breezes, and we passed much drift-ice. The thermometer varied to-day from 37 deg. to 42 min.

Friday July 23, at half past one in the morning, we were brought up by the main body of ice, the extremes of which bore S. E. and N. W. In working to get clear of it, we found our course to the N. N. E. and S. E. by S. stopped by the drift-ice, which had formed a very considerable barrier. Nothing was now left for us but to force a passage through it, which we endeavoured to do to the S. E. in which direction there appeared to be the fewest obstacles to encounter. We were engaged in this business till seven, during which time we received many severe blows from the ice, but at last got clear: our consort, however, who had proceeded in a different direction, still remained behind, apparently wedged in between the ice. At eight a thick haze came on, and the wind blew fresh from the E. by S. the ice then extending from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. to E. by S. and our soundings being twenty-eight fathoms. The remaining part of the day, which was foggy and rainy, was spent upon our tacks, waiting for the Discovery, of whom we now and then caught a glimpse. At nine in the evening she fired a gun from the westward, which was answered: we continued firing guns every half hour till twelve, when we saw her bearing down to us, the weather then

then being moderate and hazy, and soon after she joined us. She had split her main-top-sail and mizen, and received some damage in her bows. The thermometer to-day was from 34 deg. to 37 deg.

The next day the weather was alternately hazy, foggy, and clear, and the wind S. S. W. and S. At two in the morning we were working out of the ice, a great deal of which we discerned to the S. E. and southward. At ten it blew fresh, and we had several showers of small rain, but the sea was perfectly smooth, occasioned by the surrounding ice. At half past eleven we were under the necessity of tacking, being stopped by the ice, which bore from N. N. E. to S. E. our soundings were twenty-eight and twenty-nine fathoms. At noon our observed latitude was 68 deg. 51 min. N. and in the afternoon the weather became fine and clear. At three, being well in with the ice, we brought to, and having hoisted out our pinnace and cutter, sent them well manned and armed to kill sea-horses, many herds of which were seen: we also observed many arctic gulls, guillemots, and common gulls about. At eight our people returned with nine, and having hoisted them in, and secured the boats, we made sail. At twelve the extremes of the ice bore N. E. and W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.

Our course the next morning, Sunday 25th, was N. E. by N. and N. N. E. with the wind W. S. W. the weather being moderate and hazy.
At

At half past four in the morning we were again surrounded with ice: but as it all consisted of loose, though large pieces, we were determined to force through it, and with this view we bore away to S. E. by E. and having a fresh breeze, and a swell in our favour, and crouding all the sail we could, we at six were clear of all, receiving only a few blows, which were of very little consequence. At seven the wind shifted to S. S. W. our course S. E. and at eight we had small rain, our depth of water being thirty fathoms. Our observed latitude was 68 deg. 38 min. N. and in the afternoon we had the wind from the S. by W. and southward. At twelve the weather became fair, with fresh breezes, and we tacked and stood to the westward, having twenty-nine and thirty fathoms.

The next day we had pleasant weather, with strong breezes from the S. E. by S. our course S. W. by W. At two in the morning we observed many whales about, and likewise gulls, puffins, and guillemots. At ten we saw ice to the south-eastward, and soon after hauled our wind. At twelve the extremes bore S. E. and W. and we tacked ship. Our observed latitude was 67 deg. 59 min. N. and in the afternoon we saw several small birds, *tringa lobata*, Linn., and a large duck, the head, neck, back, and wings of which were brown, and the belly white. At six we had light airs and calms with rain, at ten passed much drift-ice, and at twelve a light breeze sprung up
from

from the N. W. quarter, attended with a fog. Our soundings were from twenty-seven to twenty-five fathoms, and the thermometer varied from 36 deg. to 41 deg.

The next day was thick and foggy, with squalls and fresh gales from the N. W. by W. our course S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At one in the morning we saw the ice from E. by N. to N. E. by N. and at half past hauled our wind to the S. W. by W. At three we were brought up by the field-ice, which extended from S. S. E. to S. W. so tacked and stood to the northward, with the wind W. N. W. At eight it became more moderate, though still thick and hazy. Our latitude by double altitudes was 67 deg. 47 min. N. and at one in the afternoon we saw the land, part of Asia, bearing from S. 25 deg. E. to S. 31 deg. E. and three quarters of an hour after descried the ice as far as N. E. At four the extremes of the land bore S. 19 deg. E. and S. 39 deg. E. and at half past, we were obliged to tack and stand to the N. E. by E. being close in with the ice. At eight the land extended from S. 20 deg. E. to S. 31 deg. E. and at twelve the only part we saw of it bore S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. our soundings twenty-four and twenty-five fathoms.

C H A P. XV.

Wednesday, the 28th, we had moderate and fair weather. At four in the morning the extremes of the land bore S. 35 degrees E. and S. 65 degrees W. the nearest part S. 2 degrees E. distant about five leagues. At six we had much drift-ice within us, and at eight the land extended from S. 25 deg. E. to S. 45 deg. W. distant about six leagues. At noon it was hazy over the land; our soundings being from twenty-four to twenty-six fathoms, and our observed latitude 67 deg. 8 min. N. At four the land bore S. S. E. and S. by W. and at eight we had fresh breezes, and saw some drift-ice to the westward, on which account we tacked ship and stood E. by N. with the wind S. E. by S. the land at this time extended from W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. to S. E. by E. the nearest part about three leagues distant. At ten the wind became light and variable, and there was a great head-sea going, and at twelve we had from twenty-two to twenty-four fathoms.

The weather the next day was fine, with flying clouds, and light breezes from the S. S. E. our course E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. At four in the morning the land bore from S. 45 deg. E. to S. 65 deg. W. about five leagues distant. At noon it became hazy over the land, our observed latitude was 66 deg. 49 min. N. In the afternoon we saw many sea-parrots, arctic gulls, puffins, guillemots and fulmars; and at four tacked ship,
and

and stood to the W. S. W. In the evening it fell nearly calm, and our depth of water was from twenty-one to twenty-three fathoms.

Our course the next morning was S. E. the wind N. W. and the weather hazy. At eight a thick fog came on, which continued till two in the afternoon, and then dispersed a little: our soundings were from nineteen to twenty-six fathoms. At half past four we saw land through the haze, the extremes of which bore S. and N. 74 deg. E. and at seven, the weather clearing up, we had both continents in sight, and the land a-head proved to be the isles of Disappointment, which we passed on the ninth of last August in the afternoon: the isles bore S. 25 deg. W. and S. 35 W. and the coast of America from S. 24 deg. E. to E. 16 deg. N. We soon after hauled to the westward of the isles; and at eight, that part of the coast of Asia which is called Serdze-Kamen bore S. 62 deg. W. and the isles of Disappointment S. 26 deg. W. At twelve the East-Cape, on the Asiatic shore, bore W. by S. distant about four leagues, and we had from twenty-four to twenty-six fathoms. We saw to-day great numbers of the usual birds, and many flocks of small birds of the awk tribe.

Saturday 31st, we had fresh gales from the N. N. W. and N. W. and clear weather, our course S. by E. At three in the morning the East-cape bore N. by W. and at four we saw the bay of St. Lawrence, which was the place we landed at on the 10th of last August, at which
time

time capt. Cook so denominated it; the north head of it bore S. 54 deg. W. about four leagues distant, and at eight it bore N. 7 deg. W. and the south point, which now came in view, W. distant about five leagues, the southermost land in sight bearing S. 59 deg. W. At noon our observed latitude was 65 deg. 7 min. N. and at four, we had light airs, and fair weather; the north-head of the bay then bearing N. and the south part of the land in sight, S. 52 deg. W. our distance off shore about eight leagues. At ten a thick fog came on, which continued almost the whole night. Our soundings throughout the day were from twenty-one to twenty-five fathoms, and the thermometer rose to 50 deg.

Sunday, August 1st, we had fine pleasant weather, with light airs from the S. S. W. and S. W. At four in the morning the extremes of the land bore N. 83 deg. W. and S. 50 deg. W. and we saw many whales about. At ten a thick fog made its appearance, but dispersed again at noon, when the extremes of the coast of Asia in sight, bore W. by N. and S. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. twelve or fourteen leagues distant, and an island to the eastward of the island of St. Lawrence, S. by E. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. Our observed latitude was 64 deg. 24 min. N. and we saw many fulmars, gulls, and smallawks. The afternoon and night were very foggy, which obliged us to tack frequently, being apprehensive of getting too near the land; our soundings were from seventeen

to nineteen fathoms, with a muddy bottom. The weather continued very foggy till two in the morning, when it became somewhat clearer, and we saw the island bearing W. by S. it however soon resumed its usual density, and continued so till five, when it again cleared up a little, and we saw what we supposed to be the island of St. Lawrence bearing S. 25 deg. W. and land to the eastward, which had the appearance of two distinct isles bearing S. 5 deg. W. and S. 55 deg. E. Our course was S. E. by E. and what little wind there was came from the S. by W. At eight the two supposed islands bore S. 15 deg. W. and S. 59 deg. E. and what we took to be the island of St. Lawrence S. 40 deg. W. We soon after saw more land to the S. E. by E. but the weather was so much against us, that we might now really be said to be lost in a fog. At noon we had light airs inclinable to calms, and the weather became more favourable, being fine, clear, warm, and pleasant; the land in sight, before supposed to form two isles, now appeared to be only one, the part set as the isle of St. Lawrence being the western extreme; and the eastern land we supposed to be Anderson's isle: the whole bore from S. 73 deg. to S. 49 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and the nearest part S. 14 deg. E. Our observed latitude was 64 deg. 3 min. N. In the afternoon we saw many birds, and one seal; and at twelve our soundings were from nineteen to fifteen fathoms.

The next day was cloudy, with calms; at eight in the morning the two extremes of the islands bore S. 56 deg. E. and S. 42 deg. W. and at noon we saw the coast of Asia bearing from N. 82 deg. W. to W. our depth of water being fourteen and fifteen fathoms. It was very thick and hazy over the land all the afternoon, and in the evening it became misty and foggy, our soundings increasing to twenty fathoms. We saw two seals to-day, and a few sea-parrots, fulmars, gulls, and small birds of the auk genus.

Wednesday, Aug. 4th, was cloudy, and at times foggy, our course S. W. by W. with light breezes from the S. by E. At eight we had twenty-five fathoms, and in the course of the afternoon it blew a fresh gale from the eastward, attended with rain, our course being S. by W. and the air raw and disagreeable, the thermometer rising from 38 deg. to 42 deg. Our soundings now deepened to twenty-eight fathoms.

The next day was a disagreeable one; and we had fresh gales from the N. E. with thick fogs, and drizzling rain. At nine the wind shifted to N. by W. and soon after to N. W. by N. and in the afternoon it blew fresh from the W. N. W. our course S. S. W. In the evening we found no ground with thirty fathoms of line.

The wind, the next morning, Aug. 6th, was W. S. W. our course S. and the weather cloudy. In the afternoon we had some intervals

of sunshine, but at five it became very foggy, with a nasty wet haze, and continued so till near twelve.

The next day we had fine clear weather with moderate breezes from the west, and W. by S. our course S. S. W. and S. by W. At noon our observed latitude was 59 deg. 35 min. N. and in the afternoon having very light airs and calms, we brought to, main-top-sail to the mast, and put our hooks and lines over-board; in the space of three or four hours near a hundred fine cod were caught, which afforded a most luxurious repast to all on board, for we wanted something more palatable than the trainy flesh of sea-horse and white-bear. At nine having a breeze from the S. E. we made sail, standing S. W. by W. The nights now began to proceed in their usual channel, it being dark from eleven to three.

August the 8th was cloudy, with fresh gales from the east; our course as yesterday. At nine we reefed our top-sails, and took in our top-gallant-sails, on the Discovery's account, who could not keep up with us; but at four in the afternoon we let them out again. The weather some time after came on thick and foggy, with showers of small rain, and in the night we had heavy gales from the S. E. with hard rain.

The best part of the following day was cloudy, with fogs and small rain, and moderate breezes from the S. S. E. and S. by W. our course S. W. by W. and W. by S. These winds how-

however unfavourable for our getting to the southward, enabled us to run down our longitude. At noon it cleared up, and we had an observation, which gave our latitude 58 deg. 49 min. N. In the afternoon the clouds began to collect again, and the wind shifted to S. by E. our course S. W. by W.

The next day the wind got into the E. N. E. quarter, our course S. W. by W. In the afternoon at five one of the seamen caught a martin, which had perched upon the after-part of the ship; it was almost reduced to a skeleton, and was quite exhausted with fatigue: a large curlew also flew round the ship, and we saw an albatross, some fulmars, small blue petrels, and arctic gulls.

Our latitude the ensuing day was 57 deg. 25 min. N. and at eight in the evening we sounded, but found no ground at sixty fathoms. The night was fine, but the atmosphere moist, which was a circumstance we had observed for several days past.

On Thursday the 12th, the wind was variable in the S. W. quarter. Our latitude was 56 deg. 29 min. N. and the afternoon was fine and pleasant. At four we passed a bunch of rock-weed.

The next day we had moderate breezes from the N. W. by W. our course S. W. by W. till five, when we altered our course to S. S. W. and at eight to S. the wind W. and W. S. W. We passed more rock-weed, and saw many sea-

parrots, gulls, and fulmars about. The afternoon was fine, but at half past six in the evening it became very cloudy, with a wet disagreeable haze.

Our latitude on the 14th was 54 deg. 50 min. N. and we passed many bunches of weed. We observed only the usual birds about to day.

Our wind and course was the same as yesterday till two in the afternoon, when we had fresh breezes from the S. W. our course W. N. W. At six we tacked ship and stood S. E. by S. and at nine wore ship, our course being W. by S. the wind S. by W. At twelve we had light winds, with thick hazy weather. In the afternoon we saw several black and white porpoises.

Monday the 16th we had thick weather, with calms, and a wet haze. At one in the morning a light breeze sprung up from the N. N. W. our course S. W. by W. and we saw many flocks of gulls, sea-parrots, fulmars, small blue petrels, guillemots, and arctic gulls.

Our course the next day was W. S. W. and W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and we had moderate breezes from the N. N. W. at five in the morning saw land bearing N. 40 deg. W. This we supposed to be one of Beerings Isles. At eight the extremes of it bore N. 18 deg. W. and N. 28 deg. W. we saw many whales about, and a small bird, like a water-wag-tail, flew round the ship. At noon the weather became fine, clear, and pleasant, and the wind shifted more to the westward.

ward. Our observed latitude was 53 deg. 48 min. N. but we had no land in sight. At five in the afternoon it became very cloudy, and appeared inclinable to snow or rain, but at six it cleared up again.

The following day was cloudy, the wind was in the W. S. W. quarter, and our course S. In the afternoon the weather became thick and dark, with showers of rain, which continued the best part of Thursday, with fresh gales from the E. our course W. At four in the afternoon the wind shifted to N. E. and it became more moderate, and at ten we had light airs.

During the night the wind very regularly veered round to S. W. our course W. N. W. At noon our observed latitude was 53 deg. 2 min. N. and we were in daily expectation of making the land. In the course of the day we saw many fulmars, small blue petrels, arctic gulls, and sheerwaters, and one whale.

On Saturday the 1st, our course was S. S. E. the wind S. W. At five in the morning we saw the land, which proved to be part of Asia, and at no great distance from the Bay of Awatschka, where we proposed staying some time: it made in a high hill, and bore N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At eight the extremes of the land bore N. and W. N. W. and at noon N. 2 deg. E. and S. 79 deg. W. our latitude being 53 deg. 45 min. N. and the weather fine and pleasant, but perfectly calm. At five we had a breeze from

the E. N. E. our course S. W. At seven the southermost land in sight bore S. 55 deg. W.

The next day we had warm and pleasant weather, the thermometer rising from 52 to 68 deg. but were rather unlucky in having no wind, it being nearly calm throughout the day. At four the extremes of the land bore N. and N. W. and at eight a remarkable cape, which the Russians denominate Cape Cheepoonskoi, bore S. 70 deg. W. two mountains to the northward of it, W. and S. 75 deg. W. and the northernmost extremes N. 18 deg. W. At half past eight, Captain Clerke departed this life after a long and tedious illness, which he had laboured under before our departure from England. At noon our observed latitude was 53 deg. 6 min. N. and Cape Cheepoonskoi bore S. 83 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At four in the afternoon it bore N. 75 deg. W. and at half past seven N. 66 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and the northernmost land in sight N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

Monday the 23d was cloudy and hazy, with light airs, inclinable to calm. At eleven we felt an unusual rumbling motion in the ship, which continued for about the space of ten seconds, an effect which we attributed to an earthquake; our distance from the nearest shore at that time was five or six leagues. At noon the haze dispersed, and we saw the Cape bearing N. 30 deg. W. the westernmost land in sight N. 40 deg. W. and the northernmost N. 19 deg. W. our latitude was 52 deg. 46 min. N. and we soon after had a fine breeze from the N. N. E.

our

our course W. At two in the afternoon there were many albatrosses, sea-parrots, and whales about, and at four the Cape bore N. 41 deg. E. the Awachinskoy mountain N. 46 deg. W. a mountain to the northward of it N. 15 deg. W. At six the Cape bore N. 56 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. thirteen leagues distant, and the north-head of the entrance into the bay N. 84 deg W. five leagues distant. At eight our breeze became considerable less; the north-head of the bay at that time bore W. N. W. and the extremes of the land in sight S. by W. and N. N. W. As it became dark we observed a light hung out at the house upon the hill, which is situated in the entrance, to direct us in our course. This was in consequence of major Behm's directions, who had given orders for lights to be placed upon various parts of the coast. The attention this gentleman paid us, and the care he took in supplying all our wants, laid us under great obligations to him. All the fore-part of the night we were standing through the entrance with very light airs, and our boats a-head towing.

The next morning at one we dropped our anchor in seven fathoms, the two points of the entrance bearing S. 45 deg. E. and S. 2 deg. W. the Awachinskoy mountain N. 13 deg. E. and a rock a-breast of us S. 62 deg. W. distant half a mile. At eight we weighed, and made the best of our way for the harbour, with the boats a-head towing. Some time after a favourable

breeze sprung up, and at one in the afternoon we came to, in the basin behind the Ostrog, in seven fathoms of water, about a cable's length from the village, and nearly the same distance from each shore. The serjeant shortly after came on board to pay his respects to the captain, and brought with him some berries, milk, and the spawn of salmon. After the vessels were moored, we set about repairing the rigging, and the Discovery prepared for caulking, and repairing the damage she received among the ice, which we found to be more considerable than was imagined.

C H A P. XVI.

The weather on Wednesday was warm and pleasant; the thermometer rising as high as 70 deg. and the country now exhibited an aspect so different from what it was before, as not to appear like the same place. All our hands were employed in erecting the tents and observatories on shore, and getting up the empty casks, and blubber to boil down, and the coppers to brew spruce beer from a species of pine, which the Russians call nantza. This morning the effects of the late captain Clerke were sold, and the following changes took place, viz. capt. Gore succeeded to the command of the Resolution, and Mr. King to that of the Discovery; Messrs. Burney and Rickman removed to the Resolution, and

and Mr. Williamson and Mr. Lanyon, masters mate, were appointed as first and second lieutenants of the Discovery. In the afternoon we hauled the seine, and caught plenty of salmon, cod, and trout.

On Friday afternoon a party were sent on shore to dig a grave for our late commander, and in the evening the priest arrived from Paratounka.

The caulkers, brewers, wooders, coopers, &c. were all busied in their respective departments; and we were employed on board in unstowing the fore-hold, and stowing away wood. The shore produced variety of excellent berries, among which were the mountain-ash, which the Russians call rabena; of these we made pyes and puddings: we also found raspberries, which, though small, were of a fine flavour.

At twelve the next day, Sunday 29th, the corpse of capt. Clerke was conveyed on shore in the pinnace, attended by the other boats, with the captains and officers of both ships, where it was decently interred. During the procession and service, minute guns were fired by both ships, and the marines fired three volleys at the grave, which was under a tree.

On Tuesday we had cloudy weather, with slight showers of small rain; most of our hands were employed as before, and a party were sent to fish for salmon, which were remarkably numerous, and salt them upon the spot for a
sea-

sea-stock; with the salmon they frequently caught very fine smelts, and now and then a particular species, which is called gorbusch by the Russians, on account of its having a kind of hump upon its back. In the morning our pinnace, in which went the serjeant, was dispatched to the mouth of the bay to assist a small vessel, which he told us had been in sight for two days past, but for want of a sufficient number of hands could not get in. This vessel, which was one of the empress's galliots, we found had been expected some time past from Ochotzk, with various articles for our use, such as pitch, tar, cordage, &c. and a supply of flour for this place, which was much wanted; the quantity we took with us when last here, having rather distressed them. In the evening she returned, having seen nothing of the vessel.

Saturday, September the 4th, a gentleman, who the serjeant told us was an ensign, and son to lieutenant Sindo, who made some discoveries upon the coast of America, arrived from Bolschaia-Reeka, with compliments from captain Wasilowitz Ismyloff, who succeeded major Behm as governor of Kamtschatka, informing the captains that he would be down in a few days, and that sixteen head of cattle were upon the road, for the use of the ships.

Tuesday the 7th, every body was very busily employed in endeavouring to ground the Resolution, for the more easily repairing the damage she received upon her cut-water, and in other parts

parts during our cruize among the ice. This business was not effected till the next morning, when the carpenters began their work. Our seine supplied us amply with fish, particularly salmon and smelts, and we found abundance of crabs near the shore, which were quite equal to those of England in point of flavour.

Thursday the 9th, in the afternoon, the galliot before mentioned was seen standing into the entrance of the bay; upon which the pinnace with the ensign, serjeant, and an officer from the ship were dispatched to inquire if she wanted any assistance. In the evening she came to an anchor, and the pinnace returned. Her lading consisted of flour, pitch, tar, cordage, tea, sugar, tobacco, and various other things for our use; for all which favours we were obliged to major Behm, who seems to have taken every method in his power to render us acts of civility.

At twelve the next day the vessel, with the assistance of our launch, pinnace, and cutter, was towed into the basin behind the village. The master of her attended the major to this place in May. There was on board a merchant from Ochotzk, who brought over with him a variety of articles, such as boots, shoes, knives, buckles, nankeen, damasks, silk handkerchiefs, butter, flour, spoons, and many things we were much in want of. The prices of his goods were in general high, but the handkerchiefs were immoderately dear, some of which he
asked

asked nine and ten rubles for, which is equal to forty-five shillings of our money. The duty which this man paid for his goods amounted, as he informed us, to upwards of two hundred rubles.

From the eleventh to the sixteenth nothing material occurred; our wooders, waterers, armourers, carpenters, &c. were constantly employed on shore, while those on board were busied in stowing the holds, &c.

On Wednesday, captain Ismyloff arrived at this place from Bolscheretskoi Ostrog, attended by our old friend Feodositch the merchant, and a gentleman who was banished hither thirty-six years ago. He is of a noble family, and was page to the empress, at which time he was only eighteen years of age; but having been guilty of some indiscretions, he was sentenced to be banished into Siberia, and his estate to be confiscated. Upon the arrival of the captain on board he was saluted with eleven guns; and having viewed the several parts of the ship, he returned to the shore, and dined in the tent with captain Gore. He was a tall, handsome, well made man, and appeared to be about thirty-six. The next day he dined with captain King, and was saluted with eleven guns from the Discovery, and the following day was entertained by the gentlemen of the Resolution's gun-room, and supped on shore in the tent.

On Sunday morning the captain and merchant returned to Bolschaia-Reeka, the banished gentleman remained with us till our departure.

We

We were employed these four last days in tarring our rigging, and the out-side of the ships, and stowing away wood and water, of both which necessary articles we proposed taking in a good stock. The five last days were very fine and pleasant, but the evenings and nights were remarkable cool.

On Tuesday afternoon we got off our brewers tent, and that of the sail-makers and coopers; and the following afternoon the sixteen oxen, we had been so long in expectation of, arrived. The whole day was heavy and cloudy, with much rain, and strong gales from the E. S. E. which continued all the following day; and in the afternoon we got all our tents, casks, &c. &c. on board, those of the Discovery remaining, as they had not yet finished brewing.

On Friday morning we got up our anchor and made sail, standing out of the basin, which we cleared with some difficulty about ten, but were once very near running a-ground. At twelve we dropped our anchor again, being distant about a mile from the Ostrog.

On Monday and Tuesday all the young women of the village were invited on board the Resolution by captain Gore, and in the evening they had a dance, at which the priest and all his family were present. The Russian dances are as dull and stupid as can well be imagined, but those of the Kamtschadales can be compared to nothing but the awkward motions of a bear, the gestures of which animal they frequently imitate.

On

On Thursday the 7th both vessels weighed and stood farther out, but the wind proving contrary, we were obliged to come to again. The next morning, however, we were more fortunate, and at eight got up our anchors, and stood out to sea.

The tide rises at this place five feet two inches and a half, and it is high water at thirty-six minutes after four in the afternoon, at the full and change of the moon.

When we arrived here a second time, we found the Russians at the hospital, nearly in as bad a state with respect to the scurvy as during our first visit; and as this was a time of year when berries and vegetables abounded, particularly those of the rabena, or service tree, which might be collected without any trouble, a stronger proof of their extreme laziness cannot be produced. They are in fact a strange set of beings, and totally void of humanity to each other, an instance of which we saw in a poor old man who had lost the use of his limbs, and was suffered to starve in one of their out-houses. In general, they are represented as jealous of their wives, but we found that a glass or two of rum would sometimes get the better of their natural disposition, and the wife of one man in particular was at the service of any one who would give him a bottle of it. The women have no aversion to spirits, but will drink them without adulteration, and in as great quantities as the men.

The

The Kamtschadales, though they have, in a great measure, adopted the religion of the Russians, cannot however totally divest themselves of their superstitious prejudices: several instances of which we had on opportunity of seeing, particularly in an excursion to the Awachinskoy mountain, near the summit of which, many smokes issued out in various places. These they would not come near, but said they were the habitation of evil spirits.

The language that prevails here is the Russian, and but very few, except the oldest of the Kamtschadales, can speak their native tongue, so that it is likely in the course of a few years to become extinct.

As this was the summer season they had retired into the balagans, which are their residence during that period of the year. They were also very busily employed in drying fish for their winter stock; so that the whole village was nearly surrounded by them, which by no means afforded an agreeable scent. They consisted principally of salmon and herrings; the latter being set aside entirely for their dogs: the bellies of the former, which they look upon as a delicacy, are divided from the body, and dried by themselves.

The dogs are always let loose in the summer season, during which time they frequently run wild in the woods, but return at the approach of winter, when they are secured again; and upon the first appearance of a sledge, they set

up a general howl, as being conscious of the labour they have to undergo for the remaining part of the year.

C H A P. XVII.

Sunday the 10th, 1779, was calm throughout the day.

The next day we had a breeze from the N. W. which in the course of the twenty-four hours shifted to N. E. Our business now was to trace the coast, and our course varied as the land fell back or projected. Our latitude was 52 deg. 5 min. N. and we saw a few gulls and fulmars.

We continued the best part of the following day, running along the coast: the land was very broken, but not high. Our weather was cloudy, with small rain, the wind N. E. our course S. W. At noon the Lopatka, which is the southermost extreme of this peninsula, bore about W. $\frac{3}{4}$ N. distant between three or four leagues, and our observed latitude was 51 deg. N. In the afternoon we had light winds, which freshened up a little towards five, and we saw Schumschu, the first of the Kurilskoy islands, bearing W. by S.

Wednesday, October 13th, we had several of the other isles in view, our course S. by W. the wind W. by S. they were in general high, and almost entirely covered with snow. We saw many albatrosses and gulls about, and several whales.

whales. Our latitude to-day was 49 deg. 48 min. N.

The next day our course was S. S. W. and S. W. and we had no land in sight; and on the 15th our latitude was 46 deg. 31 min. N. and our longitude 155 deg. 29 min. E. The weather was fine, clear, and pleasant, but rather cold, and in the afternoon the wind shifted to S. W. our course being S. E.

The 16th was fine, with light airs inclinable to calms. We observed many flocks of gulls, several albatrosses, fulmars, and arctic gulls, and in the evening a hen gold-finch flew on board. We also saw several of those fish the Russians call kafatki. Our latitude was 45 deg. 24 min. N. and the wind came round to N. N. W. our course W. in the night we had light breezes.

The 17th we had light airs, inclinable to calms, and fine weather, with flying clouds. At eleven a breeze sprung up from the N. W. our course W. S. W. and in the afternoon a small land bird flew on board.

The next day we had light breezes from the W. and at eleven from the S. S. W. quarter. We passed much sea-weed, and our observed latitude was 44 deg. 30 min. N. At three the wind came round to S. and in the night we had heavy gales from the S. E. by E. our course W. by S.

Tuesday the 19th was dark, thick, and rainy, with hard gales and puffs from S. E. by E. and a very heavy sea running, our course W.

by S. The wind handled us so roughly, that we were obliged to furl our mizen and fore-top-sails, and fet the fore-sail with the main-top-sail close reefed upon the cap. At ten it moderated, and we fet the main-top-sail, and at noon the wind shifted to W. so tacked and stood to the S. S. W. In the night we had light airs and calms. In these latitudes, particularly at this season of the year, the winds are very unsettled and variable.

The following day the weather was thick and hazy, with light airs, but at eight we had a breeze from the S. E. which at two in the afternoon veered round to N. N. W. and the weather became dark and cloudy, with rain.

Thursday the 21st. was fair, with flying clouds, and fresh gales from the W. N. W. our course S. W. and our observed latitude 42 deg. 40 min. N.

The ensuing day we had moderate breezes from the N. W. our course S. W. and latitude 40 deg. 59 min. N.

Saturday the 23^d. was pleasant, with light breezes from the S. W. by S. our course W. by N. At six in the morning we saw a shag, and at noon it became cloudy, and rather squally; our latitude was 40 deg. 35 min. N. and our longitude 146 deg. 52 min. E.

The weather throughout the next day was thick and cloudy, with small rain, and the wind light, and very variable. We passed much grass, and saw a duck, a shag, and a land bird. These
being

being certain indications of the proximity of land, we of course kept a good look out; besides we judged ourselves to be at no great distance from Japan.

Monday the 25th the weather was thick and cloudy, with showers of rain, and fresh breezes from the N. E. and N. N. E. our course W. S. W. In the forenoon a pigeon perched upon the rigging, and soon after we saw two small land birds. Our observed latitude was 40 deg. 18 min. N. and at two in the afternoon seven small land birds of the titmouse genus flew on board. In the evening we had light winds, and at ten moderate breezes from the southward.

On the twenty-sixth, we had fresh breezes from the S. S. W. with open cloudy weather, our course W. At half past five in the morning, we saw land, being part of the great island Nippon, or Japan, extending from N. 50 deg. W. to S. 25 deg. W. and distant about six leagues. At eight the extremes bore S. 11 deg. W. and N. 40 deg. W. the nearest part W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. three leagues distant. The land was moderately high; but not irregular or broken; consisting of double ranges of hills, many of which were covered with trees. The shores were steep, rocky, and straight, without the least appearance of a harbour: the northern extreme fell in a slope, the southern one made in a kind of bluff. The aspect of the country was in general barren, and rocky, at the distance we then were from it, but upon a nearer view, it ap-

O 3
pear-

peared more fertile and pleasant than we could have supposed. At noon our latitude was 40 deg. 4 min. N. and the variation one mile to the eastward; the extremes of land then bore S. 2 deg. E. and N. 43 deg. W. the north point being about six leagues distant, the nearest part bore S. 52 deg. W. three leagues. We saw many smokes upon the hills, which were made probably in consequence of our being upon the coast. At two in the afternoon we had a fresh breeze from the S. W. which at four increased to a gale, and at night we had light winds.

In the early part of the morning we had light airs, but at six a breeze sprung up from the N. E. our course being W. S. W. At noon our latitude by observation was 39 deg. 16 min. N. and at half past three in the afternoon we saw the land again, the southern extreme as set yesterday noon, bearing N. 22 deg. W. the southernmost land in sight N. 88 W. eight leagues distant. At five there were many small birds about the ship, some of which we caught. At eight we sounded, but found no ground with a hundred and fifty fathoms. At nine we hauled up to the southward, and at twelve again sounded with eighty fathoms, but without success.

At six the next morning the extremes of the land bore S. 66 deg. W. and W. by N. nine leagues distant. At seven we bore away to the S. W. and at eight the southernmost land making like an island, bore S. 76 deg. W. distant about seven leagues. At noon we were in latitude 38 deg.

deg. 13 min. N. when the land extended from N. 83 deg. W. to N. 36 deg. W. and at two in the afternoon from N. 34 deg. W. to N. 42 deg. W. and the extremes of the low isle N. 45 W. and N. 50 deg. W.

On Friday the 29th, we had fresh breezes from the southward, and at half past six saw the land at about four leagues distance, bearing S. 30 deg. W. and N. 35 deg. W. At seven we tacked and stood to the E. S. E. our soundings being twenty fathoms, with a bottom of sand and gravel. At eight saw a Japanese vessel standing along shore to the northward, and half an hour after we saw another standing towards us, right before the wind. At nine we brought to, main-top-sail to the mast, intending to wait for her, but at ten finding she endeavoured to avoid us, we wore ship, and pursued our course as before. She appeared to be about forty tons burthen, and had only one mast and sail, the latter very square at top, but narrow towards the bottom. By the help of our glasses we could perceive those on board to be in much confusion; no doubt they were apprehensive of being taken. This vessel was likewise making for the north part of the island. At noon we had hard gales, and cloudy weather, but towards the close of the evening it became more moderate, and we set our close-reefed top-sail, which we had been obliged to hand in the forepart of the afternoon. At night the wind veered farther round to the eastward.

The next day we had fresh breezes from W. and W. by N. with fine clear weather, our course S. S. W. and at half past nine saw the land at a great distance, bearing W. by N. At eleven the wind shifted to N. W. by N. our course S. W. by W. and at noon the extremes of the land bore W. by S. and N. W. by W. our latitude being 36 deg. 41 min. N.

The wind was very fresh throughout the next day, and we had many land birds about the ship, though no land was in sight. Our observed latitude was 35 deg. 40 min. N.

Monday, November the 1st, the weather was fine and clear, and the wind blew in moderate breezes from the E. S. E. our course W. S. W. At four in the afternoon we saw the land extending from W. S. W. to W. and a small isle like a hummock W. N. W. distant from both about sixteen leagues. The land we had hitherto seen was moderately high, but we observed a mountain to-day, making like a sugar loaf that was very lofty. At five we hauled up to S. W. with the wind S. S. E. and at six tried soundings with one hundred and sixty fathoms of line, but found no ground: at this time the southernmost land bore S. 73 deg. W. the mountain W. and the small isle N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At eight we tacked ship, and stood to the eastward, and again sounded with one hundred and fifty fathoms, but without success. At twelve we tacked once more, keeping a S. W. course. Our observed latitude to-day was 35 deg. 16 min. N.

Our

Our course the next morning was S. W. the wind S. S. E. At seven we saw the land bearing N. 69 deg. W. six leagues distant, and at eight tacked and stood to the eastward. At noon our observed latitude was 35 deg. 43 min. N. but by our reckoning we were much farther to the southward. In the afternoon it became cloudy, with fresh breezes, and as it had the appearance of increasing to a gale, we got down top-gallant-yards, and close-reefed the top-sails.

In the night we had fresh gales, just as was expected, but at eight in the morning the wind shifted to S. and in the evening we had moderate breezes, and fair weather. Our latitude at noon was 36 deg. 25 min. N.

Thursday, the 4th, was cloudy, with showers of rain, and light variable winds. We passed several pieces of pumice stone floating upon the surface of the water, to which we found a species of barnacle adhering. In the afternoon, having light airs and calms, we hoisted out a boat to try if there was a current, and to ascertain the rate of it; we found it setting to the eastward, at half a knot an hour.

The weather the next day was very pleasant, and we had moderate breezes, from the N. W. our course S. S. W. At noon we were in 55 deg. 16 min. north; and in the afternoon passed much pumice stone, which seemed to indicate our being in the neighbourhood of some volcanos. In the course of the night it became calm.

At six the next morning, however, we had a breeze from the N. N. E. our course S. S. W. and at noon our latitude was 35 deg 1 min. N. though by our account we ought to have been fifty miles farther to the southward; which was a proof that the easterly current still affected us. At eight in the evening the wind shifted to east, and at nine we were taken aback, soon after which it settled in the S. S. W. quarter.

The winds now became more variable if possible than before. In the early part of the morning we had a moderate breeze from the S. W. by S. but at ten it shifted to W. S. W. and in the afternoon to W. but at night it became calm, and continued so till three the next afternoon, when a breeze sprung up from the northward, our course S. W. We saw to-day a shark, and two tropic birds.

Tuesday, November the 9th, we had thick cloudy weather, with continued rain till noon, when it cleared up a little, and we got an observation, which gave us 31 deg. 46 min. north latitude. In the afternoon we passed much pumice stone, and saw a tropic bird.

The two following days were equally rainy and disagreeable; our course was S. W. and the wind N. N. E. At eight in the evening it became very dark and thick, on which account we hauled our wind to the eastward, and continued that course for the night.

Friday, the 12th, we had heavy gales from the N. N. E. our course east, till seven in the
morn-

morning, when we bore away. But at ten it blew so hard, that we were obliged to bring-to under our fore-sail, with our head to the westward, and as there was a very high sea running, the ships pitched terribly. At seven in the evening we wore and stood to the W. S. W. under our fore-sail and mizen-stay-sail, with the wind at N. W.

The next day the weather was cloudy, with moderate gales from the N. W. and W. N. W. At seven we bore away to the S. S. W. and at noon our observed latitude was 25 deg. 26 min. N. We saw many flying-fish about, and at six in the evening, the wind decreasing, we hauled up to S. W. by W. At ten we had the wind from the N. by W. our course W. by S.

Sunday, the 14th, we had fine pleasant weather, with flying clouds and smooth water, our wind and course as yesterday evening. At ten in the morning, the Discovery being about two miles a-head, made the signal for seeing land, which the Resolution answered, and soon after we descried it to the S. W. making like a high mountain; we directly bore away for it, steering S. W. with the wind N. N. E. This was one of those isles which are laid down to the northward of the Marian Islands. At noon we were in latitude 24 deg. 35 min. N. and longitude 141 deg. 15 min. E. and at one we hauled up to west. At half past two we saw more land to the N. W. by W. which we hauled up for; and at half past three descried more to the

the N. W. by N. but very low. At four the two above islands bore N. 54 deg. W. and N. 59 deg. W. and the mountain S. 27 deg. W. distant about three leagues. At eight we tacked, and stood off and on for the night, with an intent of taking a nearer view of them in the morning.

The next day the wind shifted to E. N. E. and we had fine and clear weather. At six we bore away for the Isles, which now proved to be only one, the extremes bearing N. 60 deg. W. and N. 80 deg. W. and at half past we saw a high hummock bearing N. 14 deg. W. At eight we were running along the south-side of the isle; off the north end there was a reef of rock which extended a considerable distance from it, and over which the sea broke violently. The south end was terminated by a high bluff rock, and upon the middle we saw some few trees or rather shrubs, for they were of a diminutive size, which probably might be owing to the scarcity of soil, the whole being an assemblage of rocky matter. As we approached the bluff-rock, we found it had the appearance of having once been a volcano; and we were confirmed in this opinion upon viewing the W. S. W. side, where the mouth or crater was very conspicuous, and upon its sides were large masses of sulphur, and other combustible matter, but the sulphur was most predominant. Being at this time to leeward of the island, we found a very strong smell of that mineral, the air being quite impregnated with it. The shore on this side

side was quite flat, over which a very heavy surf continually broke, and at some distance were two upright rocks, against which the sea dashed violently. Having seen thus much of this isle, and finding it too dangerous to attempt landing, we at nine bore away to the westward. Captain Gore called it Sulphur Island; the only birds we observed about it were boobies. At noon our latitude was 24 deg. 50 min. N. when its extreme bore N. 84 deg. E. and S. 82 deg. E. the mountain S. 37 deg. E. and the high hummock N. 18 deg. E. At three in the afternoon, Sulphur Island bore S. 73 deg. east.

Tuesday, the 16th, we continued our westerly course till noon, and then hauled up to W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. the wind being S. by E. and S. and the weather clear and pleasant; our latitude was 25 deg. 7 min. N. and longitude 138 deg. 10 min. E. In the night the wind veered regularly from S. S. W. to W. N. W.

The next day was cloudy, and at seven in the morning we had fresh breezes from the N. W. Our latitude was 24 deg. 48 min. N.

On the 18th we had moderate gales from the N. E. by N. our course W. S. W. and the weather which had been fine throughout the day, in the evening became cloudy.

We were the next day in latitude 22 deg. 47 min. N. and from the steadiness of the wind concluded we had fallen in with the N. E. trade; we still continued a westerly course.

On

On the 21st, our latitude by observation was 21 deg. 26 min. N. and we passed some pumice stone. The next day was cloudy, with heavy rain; and at six on the following evening we hauled our wind under the fore-sail, close reefed main-top-sail and mizen-stay-sail, having fresh gales from the N. E.

Our course on the 24th was N. N. W. with moderate gales from the N. E. and a heavy sea going. The weather was cloudy, which prevented our having an observation, but we were lucky enough during the night to get the altitude of a star, which gave our latitude 21 deg. 20 min. N.

The next day we had hard gales from the N. N. E. with cloudy weather, and at eight bore away to W. under our close reefed top-sails and fore-sail. At noon, being in latitude 21 deg. 25 min. N. by observation, we bore away to south, under our fore-sail, and close-reefed main-top-sail, with a view of making the Bashee Islands, mentioned by Dampier.

The 26th, was cloudy, with moderate breezes from the N. N. W. our course being W. Our observed latitude was 21 deg. 6 min. N. In the afternoon the wind freshened, at eight we hauled the wind, and at nine lay-to for the night.

At seven the next morning, we wore and made sail, proceeding in a west direction, with the wind at N. E. At ten we were in the longitude of the islands as they are laid down, but
having

having no land in sight, we concluded that by some means or other we had missed them, or that Dampier had committed some great error with respect to their situation. We however continued our course till six in the evening, and then hauled our wind.

The next day we had fresh gales and cloudy weather. In the morning, at four, we were alarmed by the noise of breakers under our lee, and soon after saw them extended from W. N. W. to S. S. W. we immediately wore ship, and stood to the eastward. At seven we wore again, and proceeded W. and at nine altered our course to S. and S. W. the shoal trending to westward. This remarkable reef or shoal, which the Spaniards denominate Pracel, is in most of the charts laid down wrong: according to our observations, it is situated in latitude 20 deg. 42 min. N. and longitude 117 deg. 15 min. E. which nearly agrees with Dalrymple, who is the most correct surveyor we have had in these seas. It is between four and five leagues in extent, and forms a kind of semicircle, near the N. E. point of which is a small low flat isle, upon which are a few shrubs. Having taken a view of it, we at once made sail, shaping our course for the island of Macao.

Our course the ensuing day, Monday the 29th, was N. W. by N. the wind N. E. by N. and rather fresh. At six in the morning we saw six Chinese fishing vessels, and at noon let out the reefs and made all sail, keeping a west and
W.

W. by N. course. Our latitude was 21 deg. 59 min. N. At one in the afternoon we saw many fishing vessels a-head, and at three descried the islands of Lema, bearing W. N. W. and W. At six our soundings were twenty-four fathoms, when we shortened sail and hauled our wind to the eastward till twelve; and then tacked and stood to the northward, our depth of water being thirty-two and thirty-four fathom, with a muddy bottom.

Tuesday, the 30th, was cloudy, with small rain. At half past six in the morning we bore away and made sail, our course W. and the wind N. E. by E. At noon, the Grand Ladrone, which is the loftiest of the islands, bore N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about three or four miles. We soon after hoisted our ensign and pendant, and fired two guns, as a signal for a pilot: our soundings were seventeen fathoms, and there were many fishing vessels about, none of which however took any notice of us. At one in the afternoon, a Chinese pilot came on board; and very soon after another arrived, and insisted upon conducting the ship, and without any ceremony began to order the sails to be trimmed. The first however would not give up the point, and a long altercation ensued, but at length they settled it, having agreed to divide the money which was to be paid, and which amounted to twenty-five dollars. We were employed all the afternoon in working to windward, and at six let go our anchor near the Grand Ladrone, in ten fathom.

At

At ten the next morning, December the 1st, we got up our anchor and made sail, the tide being in our favour. We continued working to windward all the morning, having ten, nine, and eight fathom. In the afternoon, two more Chinese came on board, one of whom had several certificates from the captains of ships which he had served as comprador. To this man the captain gave twenty dollars; to procure us fresh provisions for the next day, after which they departed, and we soon after anchored.

At seven in the morning, our comprador arrived, with four quarters of small and very lean beef, some eggs, and a few oranges and greens, the whole of which could not have cost above half the money he received. It was in vain however to think of getting any redress, and we were obliged to rest contented with our bad bargain. Some time after our pilots left us, being fearful, as they informed us, of the mandarines, who, if they saw them, would in all probability insist upon part of the money which had been paid. At two in the afternoon, we got up our anchors and made sail towards Macao, and the pinnace, with captain King and another officer, were sent on shore, with an intent of setting off immediately for Canton, being in want of several stores, which we hoped to be supplied with from the East India ships, several of which we found were taking in their lading at Wampo. Upon their landing at Macao, they were informed by some English gentlemen,

that they must first obtain a chop or passport, which would be at least five days before its arrival from Canton: upon which they for the present relinquished their scheme. At nine in the evening, we let go our anchor in three fathoms and a half, and about four miles distant from the town.

Every one now was anxious to be informed of the state of affairs in England, and late as it was when the pinnacle returned from the shore, all hands got up to hear the news. Among a variety of other articles, the war with France, some account of which we had received at Kamtschatka, was confirmed.

The next day, at seven in the morning, we weighed and stood towards the town, and at eight anchored again in three fathoms, about two miles from the town, and saluted the fort with thirteen guns, which returned an equal number. Being informed in the course of the day, by an English gentleman, that the Portuguese rather wished us to be farther from the town, we the following morning, Friday the 3d, at six got up our anchors, and made sail, and about noon dropped them again in the Typa, near the spot where the Centurion lay.

A day or two after two Portuguese ships came out of the harbour behind the town, and anchored in the Typa, to take on board the remaining part of their lading. All our hands were now very busily employed, some in watering, others in the holds, and the carpenters in

in putting the ships into a proper state of defence, by erecting barracadoes, and converting the cabins, which before were wood, into canvas ones. The Chinese too, as long as our money lasted, were very assiduous and constant in their visits: many of them came off in the night to avoid paying the usual duties, and several ran the risque of coming in the day, but one or other of them was always upon the watch, and no sooner did a mandarine's boat make its appearance than they instantly put off, or concealed themselves and their goods in various parts of the ship. Among other articles they brought off arrack, and a nasty, hot, disagreeable spirit, which they called sumchu; our seamen, who at any time would much rather spend their money in drink, than in purchasing more useful things, generally contrived to get so very intoxicated, as to be unable to proceed in their work, and at length it arrived to such a pitch, as to require severe treatment to get the better of it. From this time no liquor was suffered to be brought into the ship, and the Chinese boats were searched before they were permitted to come along side; but in spite of every precaution they found means to convey it on board. About a fortnight after our arrival two small Spanish ships from Manilla, laden principally with dollars, anchored in the harbour behind the town. They had been informed by the Portuguese of our being here, on which account they came in by night, being

apprehensive, no doubt, that we should molest them. But at that time we were ignorant that Spain had joined France, and had we known it, we could not with any propriety have attacked them.

From this time to our departure nothing occurred worth notice. Having got all our supplies, and increased our number of guns to sixteen, and the Discovery's to twelve, and taken in as much live stock as we could conveniently stow away, we made all ready for sea.

On Wednesday afternoon, January 12, 1780, we weighed our anchors and made sail, standing out of the Typa: towards the evening the tide became unfavourable, and we came-to again.

The next morning at day-light we got up our anchors and made sail, our course being S. and in company with a Swedish ship which had just arrived from Wampo, but being a fast sailer she soon left us. In the afternoon we had a fine breeze from the N. E. which increased the day next to a gale.

C H A P. XVIII.

On Wednesday January the 19th, we saw Pulo Sapota, distant about three or four leagues, and the next day, at one in the afternoon, descried Pulo Condor bearing W. S. W. about four leagues distant. Not being able to reach the harbour that night, we stood off and on till morning, and came to in the afternoon, not far from the spot where Dampier had anchored. Having furled our sails, the captain ordered several guns to be fired, to the intent that the inhabitants might know that were ships there. None however made their appearance that night, and the next morning a boat with an officer was dispatched to a small village on the other side the island, who returned in the afternoon with one of the natives. Wood being an article which we could not procure at Macao, a party was sent on shore to cut some: among a variety of other trees, we found the wild nutmeg-tree in abundance, but the nut was totally void of smell and taste.

The day following we bought three or four fish of some of the natives, who had been fishing; one of them was shaped much like the dolphin, the others were of the albecore tribe, but marked or striped on the back and sides with a blackish blue colour. The chief man of the island, or the capitano, as they called him, came on board in the course of the day, when the captain informed him, as well as he could

by signs, that we were in want of fresh provisions. He appeared to understand him very well, and the next day, Tuesday the 25th, set off in one of our boats to procure us some buffaloes, which were the only beasts he could furnish us with. Several other natives came on board, and brought a few trifling things to dispose of, but all, not even excepting their chief, were very poor and ragged. Every one wore turbans, if an old dirty piece of cloth wrapped round their heads deserved that name, and chewed the betel and areka. In the evening the boats returned with three or four young buffaloes, and were dispatched again the ensuing day in quest of more, and a party was sent to cut down some cabbage trees, to boil with the meat for the ship's company. Our sportsmen too made an excursion into the country, but met with very little success, having seen only a few monkies, squirrels, and a cock and hen, the latter of which they shot. According to Linnaeus this island is their native place.

Thursday the 27th, in the evening, our boats returned with more buffaloes, but much older than the others. The flesh of all was very coarse, without the least particle of fat.

On Friday the 28th, at noon, we took up our anchor and made sail: when out of the harbour we shaped our course for the straits of Banca.

On the afternoon of Tuesday, February the 1st, we passed Pulo-Timoan, and Pulo-Pisang; and at half past nine in the evening were a-breast
of

of Pulo-Aro. Thursday the 3d, at six in the morning, we saw the Seven-islands and Monopinhill, which are situated near the entrance into the straits, our soundings varying from fourteen or nineteen fathoms, decreasing and increasing alternately. At noon our observed latitude was 1 deg. 48 min. S. and at nine in the evening a boat, which we supposed to be a fishing boat, passed us; we hailed her, but received no answer that we could understand. At twelve we came-to in thirteen fathoms, with a clayey bottom, and found the tide passed us at the rate of four miles an hour.

At six the next morning we weighed and made sail; having light breezes, our course E. by S. and E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. varying according to the winding of the passage. We found the heat very troublesome, the thermometer rising as high as $83\frac{1}{2}$ deg. and 84 deg. and two or three of the Discovery's people fell ill of fevers. That part of the straits which is formed by Sumatra is low, and covered with trees to the very edge of the water, the whole forming to appearance an impenetrable wood: the island Banca composes the outer side, and is also low near the sea-side, but the interior parts are in many places hilly.

Saturday, February the 5th, at one in the afternoon, we were a-breast of the island Lucipara, which lies near the south entrance of the straits. Our observed latitude was 3 deg. 9 min. S. and on Sunday, about seven in the even-

ing, we let go our anchors about three leagues from the Brothers, two small islands so called, and during the night had much thunder and lightning, with a heavy atmosphere, and almost perfect calms.

The next morning, Monday the 7th, at six we weighed and made sail, standing through the straits of Sunda, to a small high isle called Cracatoa, which lies to the S. W. The Discovery, in the interim, was dispatched to a Dutch East Indiaman, at some distance, to procure some arrack, as our stock of spirits was nearly exhausted, and to enquire if there was any particular news from Europe, after which she was to proceed to Prince's Island, and there wait our arrival. We continued our course to Cracatoa, off the west end of which we saw another Dutch East Indiaman at anchor; and having let go our anchor, and secured the ship, the pinace, with a proper officer, was sent on board, to learn if we could be supplied with any arrack. In the evening the boat returned, with an account that the captain would furnish us with three or four legers, which was nearly as much as we required. This ship had been as far as Japan, and was very richly laden.

The next day shooting parties went out, but met with nothing worth notice; the inhabitants, who were all dressed in the Malay fashion, behaved with civility. This island is governed by a radja, who is subject to the court of Bantam: the present one is a youth about fourteen or
fifteen

fifteen years old. The town, which consists of twelve or fourteen houses, is situated in a pleasant spot, about half a mile from the shore, and surrounded with trees of various kinds, among which were the coco-nut and plaintain trees; the latter were the largest we had ever seen. All the houses were elevated upon posts, about two feet from the ground, and were built upon the same plan as those of Prince's Island. They saw three or four of their women, who were beating paddy, but they retired immediately into their houses. The whole island produced variety of trees, and appeared like a perfect wood, which afforded a fine retreat for the birds, many of which were remarkably beautiful; and insects, particularly of the butterfly kind, were exceeding numerous.

Having taken our stock of spirits on board, we proceeded to Prince's Island, where we staid three or four days; during which time we bought many very bad turtle, a great number of monkies, some of those small animals which we call hog-deer, and a few fowls. The heat was very great, and not a little troublesome, the thermometer being seldom lower than 84 deg. and frequently some degrees higher.

From hence we made the best of our way to the Cape of Good Hope, during which passage nothing particular occurred, except our meeting with a small vessel belonging to the East India Company, which was cruising with instructions for the company's ships. A few

days after, we made the Cape, and the next day we were standing into False Bay, but night coming on before we could reach our proper birth, we anchored at no great distance from a rock called the Noah's Ark. The next morning at day-light, we weighed and made sail, and about noon dropped our anchors, and soon after moored ship, and fired thirteen guns as a salute to the governor, for as yet there was no fort erected; they contrived however to return an equal number, having a few pieces of cannon fixed before the store-houses. We found riding here, the Nassau and Southampton East Indiamen. We continued at this place till near the middle of May, when having completed our stock of water, and taken in stores of various kinds, and as much live-stock as we could find room for, we took up our anchors and made sail, but our wind failed us before we could clear the bay, and we were obliged to come-to again. The following day we were more fortunate; and having stood out to sea, pursued a southerly course for some time to avoid falling in with any ships of the enemy, which, notwithstanding the edict that was issued, might give us more trouble than we wished to experience.

After a passage of near sixteen weeks, we arrived at Stromness, where we were detained near a month by contrary winds; at last a favourable one came on, which we immediately took the advantage of, and having cleared the

the

the Orkney Isles, we proceeded along the coast of Scotland, &c. On the 5th of October anchored at the Nore; and the day following moored alongside the hulk, after a long and tedious absence of four years, and near three months.

F I N I S.



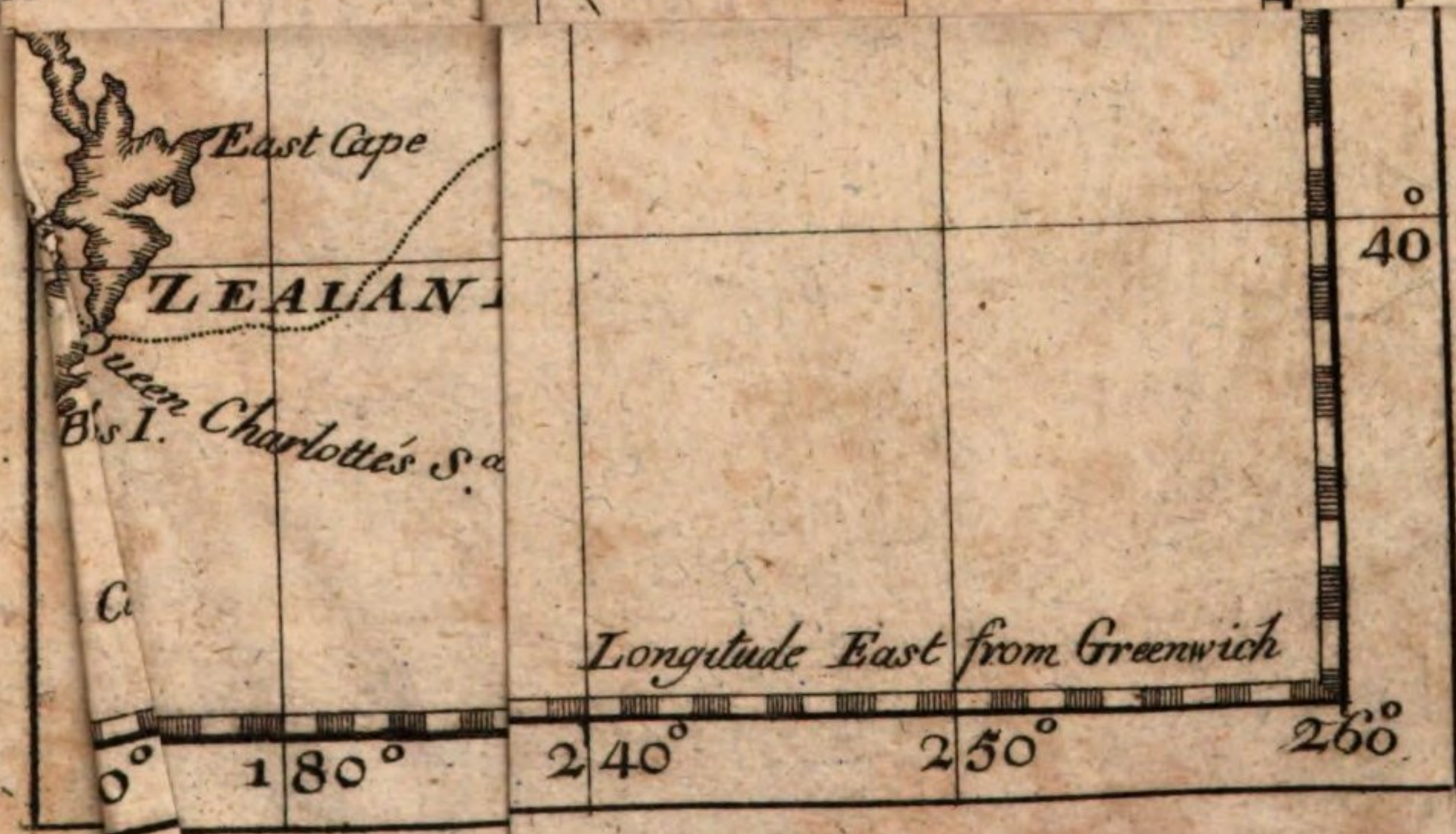
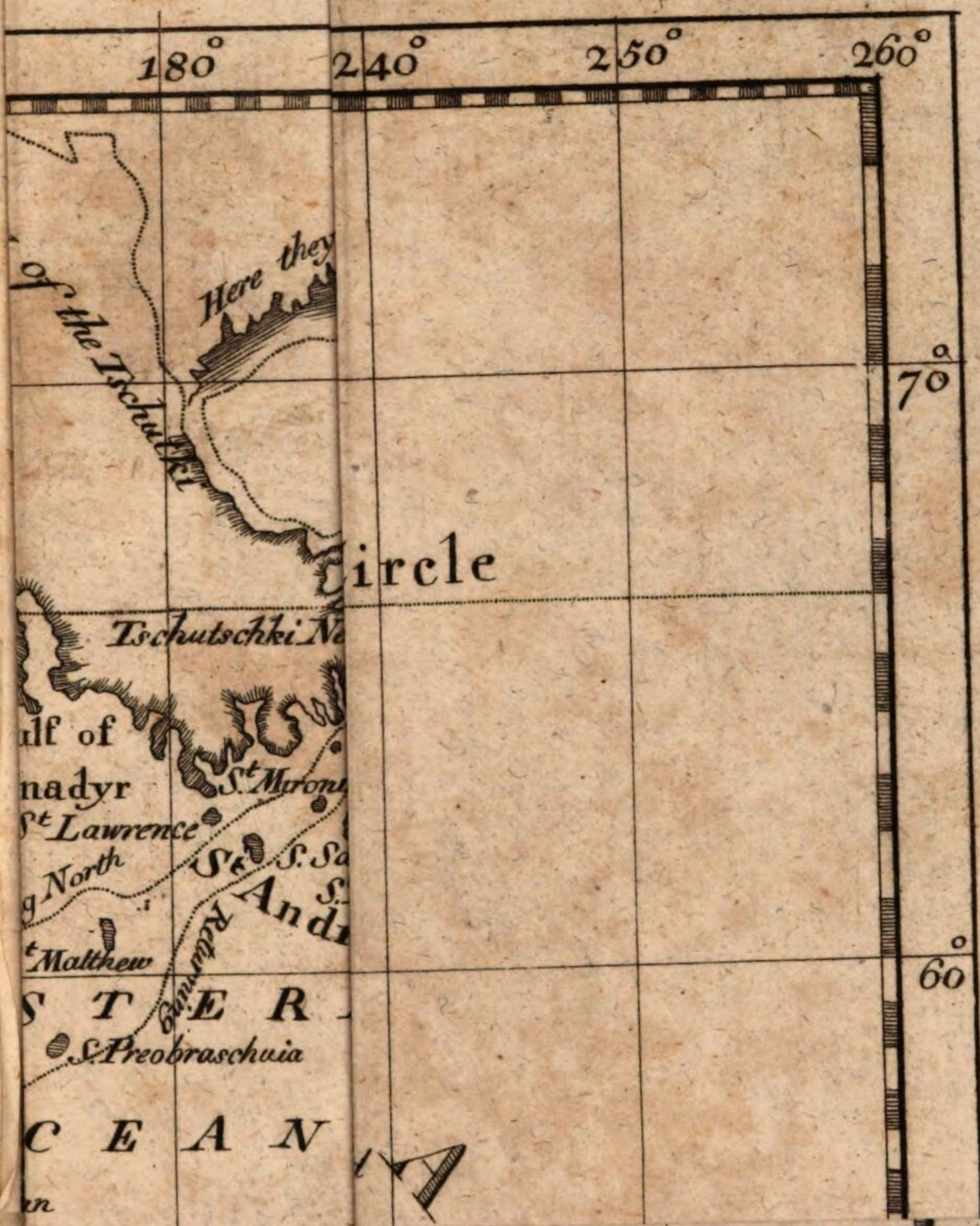
B O O K S

fold by

G. E. R I C H T E R.

The Life of Tristram Shandy, 6 Volumes 8	3 Rthlr.
	12 Gr.
Gay Fables, gr8	18 Gr.
Goldsmith Poems, with decorations. gr8	20 Gr.
The Beauties of Magazines, 2 Vol. gr8	2 Rthlr.
Goldsmith Essays, gr8	20 Gr.
Sterne Letters by Medaille, and Yorick Letters, gr8.	1 Rthlr. 16 Gr.
Sterne Sermons, 6 Vol. gr8	2 Rthlr.
Yorick Journey, gr8	1 Rthlr.
Jones Poems, gr8	18 Gr.
Thompson Poems, 8	12 Gr.
Aikin miscellaneous Pieces, 8	12 Gr.
The Expedition of Humphry Clinker, 8	1 Rthlr.
	12 Gr.
Moore Fables, 8	5 Gr.
Collection of new Plays, 4 Vol. 8	4 Rthlr.
Shakespears plays, 12 Vol. with Cuts gr8	12 Rthlr.
Milton Paradise lost. 8	12 Gr.







An Authentic Narrative Of A Voyage Performed By Captain Cook and Captain Clerk In His Majesty's Ships Resolution And Discovery During the Years 1776 , 1777, 1778, 1779 and 1780 ; In Search Of A North-West Passage Between the Continents of Asia and America. Including A faithful Account of all their Discoveries, and the unfortunate Death of Captain Cook. Illustrated
Bd.: Vol. I.

Altenburg 1788

44.1069-1/2

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10703738-2

VD18 90773772